



ENGLISH
ENGLISH
ENGLISH

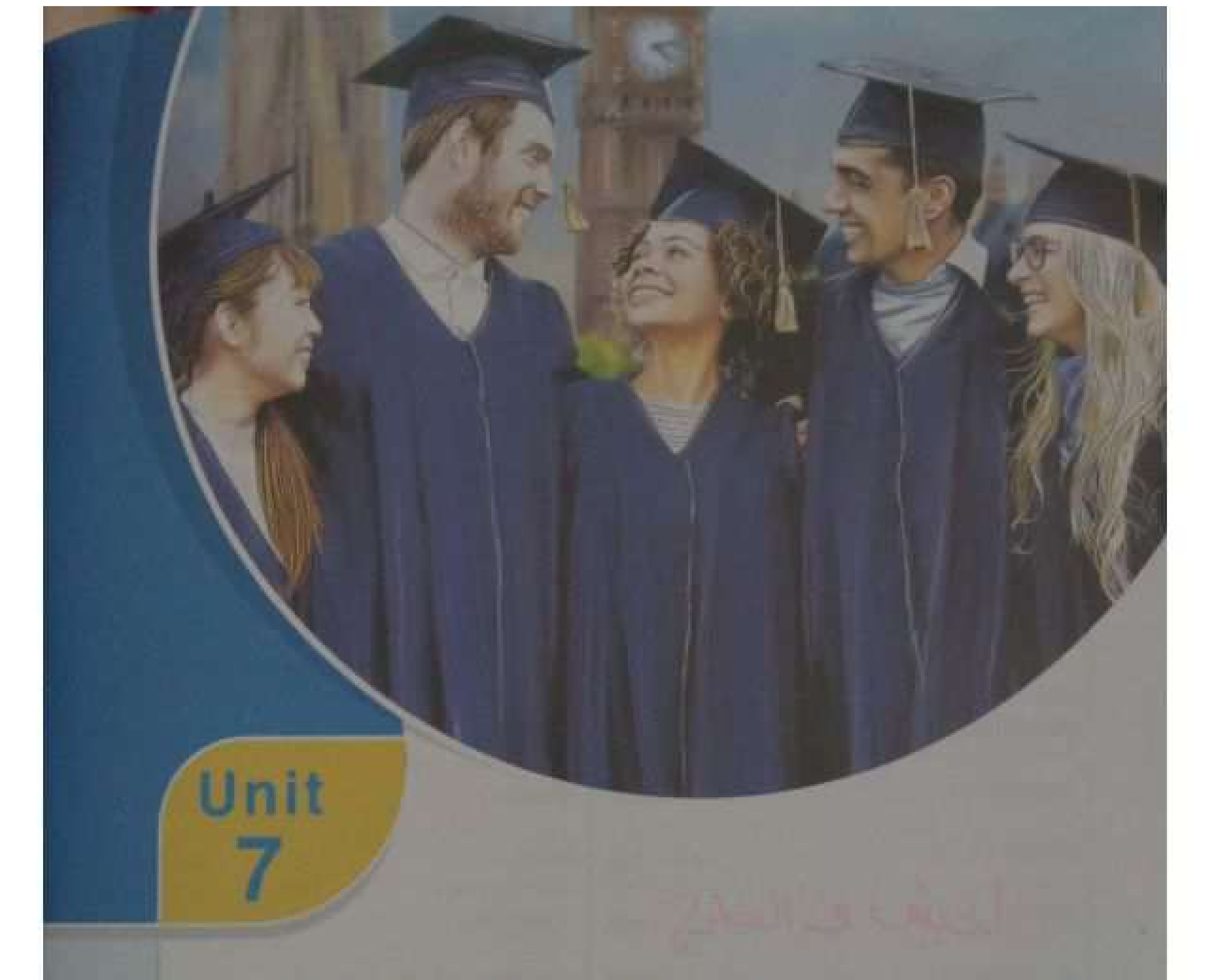
NEW HELLO! 2023

ENGLISH

2nd Secondary

second term 2 second term

King Lear



Unit 7

Living abroad

Objectives

- Reading : An extract from the novel *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett
- Writing : A diary entry by a student who is living abroad
- Listening : Voice messages from students who are studying abroad
- Speaking : Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad
- Language : Present continuous; Stative verbs
- Life Skills : Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures



Lessons 1 & 2



You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

determination (n)*	تصميم/عزيمة	independent (adj)	مستقل
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	pick ... up (v) (ed)	يحضر (شخصًا) من مكان
get used to	يعتاد على	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح/يناضل/يعانى
host family (n)	أسرة مضيفة		

* We all respect the disabled athlete's determination to win medals.

Vocabulary on Reading

activity (n)	نشاط	lonely (adj)	وحيد
annoy (v) (ed)	يزعج/يضايق	maid (n)	وصيفة/خادمة
bell (n)	جرس	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
character (n)	شخصية	publish (v) (ed)	ينشر
course (n)	برنامج دراسى	ring (v)	يدق
creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن	secret (n) (adj)	سر/سرى
current (adj)	حالى/جارى	servant (n)	خادم
die (v) (d)	يموت	specific (adj)	محدد
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف	understandable (adj)	يمكن فهمه
extract (n)	مقتطف/جزء مقتبس	whistle (v) (d) (n)	يصفر/صافرة
gardener (n)	بستانى/جناينى		

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	confident (adj)	واثق
accommodation (n)	إقامة/مكان إقامة	confused (adj)	مرتبك
afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك	degree (n)	درجة جامعية
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	distract (v) (ed)	يشتت الذهن
celebration (n)	احتفال	noisy (adj)	صاخب
certificate (n)	شهادة	normal (adj)	طبيعي
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدى/يتحدى	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	helpful (adj)	معين/مساعد
climber (n)	متسلق	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
conditions (n)	ظروف/أحوال	lamb (n)	صغير الخروف/الماعز
drought (n)	جفاف	mountain (n)	جبل
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
harbour (n)	ميناء	weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do/perform activity	يقوم بنشاط	instead of	بدلًا من
get distracted	يصبح مشتت الذهن	have experience	لديه خبرة
have a break	لديه راحة/فسحة	on his own	بمفرده
come across	يمر بـ/يقابل (بالصدفة)	look around	ينظر حول/يتجول
come into	يأتى/يدخل إلى	look out of	ينظر من خلال
difference between	اختلاف بين	move to	ينتقل إلى
different to/from	مختلف عن	travel across	يسافر عبر
have a great time	يتمتع بوقت رائع		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy	يزعج/يضايق	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying annoyed	مزعج منزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
confuse *	يربك	confusion	إرباك/ارتباك	confusing confused	مُربك مرتبك
determine	يصمم	determination	تصميم	determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم
distract	يشتت الذهن	distraction distractor	تشتت الذهن مشتت للانتباه	distracted	مشتت الذهن
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافى
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
publish	ينشر	publication publisher	منشور ناشر	published	منشور
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد/تخصيص	specific	محدد
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressful stressed	مُجهِد/ مُتعِب مضغوط
struggle	يكافح	struggle	كفاح/معاناة	struggling	مكافح
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty	ثقيل

* - These unclear instructions can confuse everyone.
- The announcement caused a lot of confusion among the students.
- I'm really confused. Can you explain that again?

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
activity	نشاط	action/movement	laziness/idleness كسل
concentrate	يركز	focus	ignore/ disregard يتجاهل
confused	مرتبك	distracted/puzzled	clear minded صافي الذهن
current	حالي/جاري	contemporary/ongoing	past/old ماضٍ/قديم
determination	تصميم/عزيمة	persistence/dedication	indifference/hesitation عدم اهتمام/تردد
distract	يشتت الذهن	confuse/disturb	calm/clarify يهدئ/يوضح
drought	الجفاف	dryness	abundance غزارة flood فيضان
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing	discouragement عدم تشجيع
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose	disregard/ignore يستبعد/يتجاهل
independent	مستقل	self-reliant	dependent معتمد
secret	سر	mystery/obscure	known/obvious معروف
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular	common/ordinary عادي/شائع
struggle	يكافح	toil/strive	surrender/yield يستسلم

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mohamed Salah showed great .... to succeed and became one of the best footballers in the world.
a) encouragement b) determination c) avoidance d) accommodation

2 Everyone needs .... from parents and friends to achieve their goals.
a) discouragement b) degree c) conditions d) encouragement

3 I quite like living alone. It makes me more ....
a) dependent b) noisy c) independent d) specific

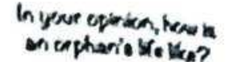
4 The survivors were picked .... by fishing boats from nearby villages.
a) up b) on c) away d) for

5 I didn't think I could ever .... used to living in a big city after living in the country.
a) grow b) get c) fall d) turn



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text



The Secret Garden



The ***Secret Garden*** is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid[1] had come into her room.

"Are you my servant?" she asked.

"I'm Mrs. Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?"

Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked.

"You can be independent[2] and go out by yourself. My brother is always exploring on his own," said Martha. "There are some gardens, but it is winter so nothing is growing now. Oh, now Mrs. Medlock's bell is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later, Mary was in the gardens when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall. When she asked an old gardener[3] about the bird, he whistled and the bird flew to him.

"He was lonely and we became friends," the old man explained.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will struggle[4] at first, but you will get used to[5] the people here soon," said the gardener. Suddenly, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's decided to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.

(1) وصيفة/خادمة

(2) مستقل

(3) بستانى/جناينى

(4) يكافح

(5) يعتاد على

- *Do you think that Mary is happy in her new house? Why/Why not?*

What difficulties would you face if you studied abroad?

Listening Text

Narrator: 1

Teen boy: Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm having a great time here in Sydney. Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be shining here! It's so wonderful! Every day – after I've finished my lessons – I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and smell the sea air. I have a few good friends here now, so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to concentrate[1] on my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach afterwards[2]!



(1) يركز
(2) بعد ذلك
(3) صاخب
(4) تجربة
(5) مرتبك

Speaker: 2

Teen girl: Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo – everything is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the time. It's always noisy[3] because of the cars on the roads – day and night! But the most difficult thing about this experience[4] is that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so I'm always feeling confused[5]. I hope things will get better!

Speaker: 3

Teen boy: Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day- today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch! I came home feeling really good!

What is the teen girl's first impression of her stay in Japan?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The family is staying in temporary .... until their house is rebuilt.
   a) concentration b) determination c) accommodation d) course
2. This guarantee ضمان .... is an important document. Keep it in a safe place.
   a) degree b) course c) essay d) certificate
3. Mariam has finished university with a/an .... in engineering.
   a) character b) degree c) extract d) challenge
4. I think this cold weather is .... for this time of the year as it is winter.
   a) normal b) specific c) confused d) independent
5. .... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.
   a) History b) Botany c) Biology d) Mathematics

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

determination (n) تصميم/عزيمة
- the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult

encouragement (n) تشجيع
- when you encourage someone or something, or the things that encourage them

host family (n) أسرة مضيفة
- a family that can host a foreigner or a stranger in their country or house

independent (adj) مستقل
- confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way

pick ... up (v) (ed) يحضر (شخصنا) من مكان
- to collect someone from a place

struggle (v) (d) يكافح/يناضل
- to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

1

explore يستكشف شيئًا أو مكانًا/يدرس معالمه
- Marco Polo was the first European sailor to explore China.

invent يخترع شيئًا أو جهازًا لم يكن موجودًا من قبل
- Thomas Edison invented many devices in the field of electricity.

discover يكتشف شيئًا كان موجودًا ولم يعرف
- The pharaohs were able to discover many metals such as iron and gold.

2

drought جفاف
- Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the drought.

draught تيار هواء يدخل إلى غرفة
- Can you close the window? I'm in a draught.

3

current

- In its current state, the car is worth 50,000 pounds. — ١. حالى/جارٍ
- Strong currents can be very dangerous for swimmers. — ٢. تيارات ماء
- Some birds use warm air currents to help them fly. — ٣- تيارات هواء
- Check all your wiring before switching on the current. — ٤- تيار كهربى
- There was a current of anger within the company. — ٥- تيار سائد (رأى أو اتجاه)

4

loud صاخب/عالى الصوت (تستخدم لوصف الأصوات والموسيقى)
- The child was talking in a very loud voice.
- The music was so loud that we couldn't hear each other.

noisy صاخب/مزعج (تستخدم لوصف الناس والآلات والأماكن)
- The traffic in the city centre was very noisy.
- Our new neighbours are noisy and are always having quarrels.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid had come into her room.

- لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام (had come) بعد أداة الربط (because) للتعبير عن الحدث الأقدم.

- .... when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) للتعبير عن الحال بمعنى (مغنيا).

- Suddenly, the small bird started singing.

- يتبع الفعل (start) صيغة (verb + ing) أو (to + infinitive)

- I'm having a great time here in Sydney.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل (having) فى زمن المضارع المستمر لأنه لا يعبر هنا عن الملكية.

- Every day – after I've finished my lessons – I go down to the beach.

- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع التام ('ve finished) بعد أداة الربط (after) مع زمن المضارع البسيط (go) وذلك للتعبير عن تكرار الحدثين.

- .... and they spend all of their time learning about that subject or subjects.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend) والمعنى يقضى الوقت فى أداء عمل ما.

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr. Jones spent three hours .... the city as this was his first visit to it.
   a) exploring b) inventing c) discovering d) devising
2. As I was going home, I came across a little boy .... in the street.
   a) sleep b) sleeping c) slept d) sleeps
3. A severe .... has caused most of the corn crop to fail due to lack of water.
   a) draught b) current c) drought d) flood
4. On surfing beaches, strong .... are common especially during competition time.
   a) droughts b) floods c) currants d) currents
5. The chandelier نجفة fell to the floor with a .... bang and we were scared.
   a) loud b) noisy c) relaxing d) normal

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive ....
a) determination b) encouragement c) reflection d) challenge

2 To become a professional musician, you need to have a lot of .... and hard work.
a) accommodation b) celebration c) appliance d) determination

3 Secondary school students should be trained to become more .... of their teachers.
a) independent b) specific c) current d) confused

4 Our friends will book our tickets, but we have to .... them up an hour before the show.
a) pack b) get c) pick d) grow

5 At the summer camp, the children were encouraged to take part in several different ....
a) inventions b) labour c) experiences d) activities

6 My younger brother's constant متواصل joking was beginning to .... all his friends, so I advised him to stop.
a) employ b) deploy c) apply d) annoy

7 We share the earth with all living .... and have a duty to preserve its riches.
a) areas b) creatures c) regions d) products

8 The hotel's .... financial situation is not good after the Covid-19 crisis.
a) current b) past c) luxurious d) noisy

9 The collection includes .... from the works of several well-known authors.
a) shapes b) formulas c) extracts d) recipes

10 The .... was changing the sheets when we got back to our hotel room.
a) boss b) coach c) guard d) maid

11 Public companies have to .... an annual report and accounts.
a) struggle b) devise c) publish d) distract

12 The message was written in a/an .... code that only our soldiers could read.
a) noisy b) secret c) obvious d) literate

13 The teacher gave each group in the class a .... topic to talk about.
a) specific b) vague c) search d) product

14 These pills should give you .... relief from the pain, just until you can get to a dentist.
a) permanent b) constant c) specific d) temporary

15 The greatest .... facing the new government is unemployment.
a) challenge b) change c) plan d) success

16 Stop shouting loudly; all that noise makes it hard to ....
a) duplicate b) replicate c) investigate d) concentrate

17 Both clocks are still in good working .... although they are old.
a) force b) form c) condition d) direction

18 She's .... to bring up a family alone after the death of her husband.
a) struggling b) relaxing c) explaining d) whistling

19 People are .... about all the different labels on food these days as they contain a lot of data.
a) certain b) developed c) imaginative d) distracted

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20 The job interview proved to be much worse than I had imagined. The synonym of the verb "imagine" is "..................".
a) fancy b) explain c) accept d) apply

21 While tidying the room, my mother came .... some old photographs in a drawer.
a) for b) up c) across d) about

22 Experts advise young people not to .... distracted easily and focus on their goals.
a) have b) take c) give d) get

23 Changing the name of the company will only lead to ....
a) confuse b) confusion c) confusable d) confused

24 After his ship sank, the sailor was left .... his own, with no help from anyone.
a) at b) on c) for d) with

25 The young writer wrote an .... story about life on the planet Mars.
a) imagine b) imagination c) imagines d) imaginative

26 There's no difference .... the two houses. They look exactly the same.
a) on b) among c) between d) inside

27 Although he was injured, the tennis player struggled to win the match. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is ....
a) suffer b) surrender c) fight d) gain

28 I told my friend that I .... used to living in the countryside when I was younger.
a) gave b) made c) got d) did

29 The company's .... financial situation is not good, so they will apply for a bank loan.
a) past b) current c) future d) popular

30 My grandfather can't .... many activities as he is very old.
a) perform b) repair c) make d) reform

Study 



Lessons 1 & 2

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

B Language

1 Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form

Subj.+ am/is/are + v-ing ▶ • The baby is sleeping at the moment.
• The boys are playing football now.

Negative

Subj.+ am/is/are + not + v-ing. ▶ • I'm not cooking dinner now.
• They aren't watching us at the moment.

Interrogative

Am/is/are + subj. + v-ing?
Wh-question + is/are + subj. + v-ing? ▶ • Is he doing his homework?
• What are you doing?

Passive

Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P. ▶ • Look! The thief is being chased.

Usage
الاستخدام

1. **For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action:** يستخدم للأحداث التى تحدث الآن لنقول إننا فى منتصف الحدث.
   - I'm waiting for the train. (I'm in the station now.)
   - They are playing football. (The match is not over yet. لم تنته المباراة حتى الآن)
2. **For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking:** يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة فى وقت الكلام.
   - She is working hard these days. (تعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هى الآن تأكل أو تقرأ أو تنام)
3. **A current situation which is different to a past situation:** موقف حالى أو حاضر ومختلف عن موقف فى الماضى.
   - Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.
4. **For fixed arrangements in the near future:** للأحداث التى تم الترتيب لها لتحدث فى المستقبل
   - Ahmed is leaving for Luxor in an hour. (It's been arranged.)
   يستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.
   - Ali is meeting Mr. Amgad next Saturday morning.
5. **An action that people do: again and again:** يستخدم مع كلمة always إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شىء يحدث كثيرًا وأحيانًا يضايق.

- He is always forgetting the car keys at home.
- She is always asking a lot of questions.
- Why is he always playing his guitar?

- **The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:**

يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

- Now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look!, Listen!, Take care, etc.
- He is still working.
- It's raining at the moment.

Check your understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ahmed .... his car himself now. He seems to be in a hurry.
a) polishes b) is polishing
c) will polish d) has polished

2 I .... my uncle next week. I've arranged it.
a) visiting b) will visit
c) am visiting d) visit

3 The newly-married couple .... for another flat these days.
a) are looking b) look
c) had looked d) are being looked

4 Look! Those boys .... flowers from our garden.
a) pick b) are picking
c) were picking d) picked

5 She hasn't cooked the meal yet. This means that she ....
a) still cooking b) has cooked
c) still cooks d) is still cooking


Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 State/stative verbs أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- تصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة للشخص وليس الشيء الذي يفعله وهي أفعال غير حركية فمثلا الفعل go به حركة لكن الفعل own بمعنى "يملك" ليس به حركة وهذه الأفعال لا تستخدم بعد v. to be ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

(1) Thoughts and opinions	أفعال تعبر عن الآراء والاعتقادات	think, know, etc.
(2) Feelings and emotions	أفعال تعبر عن المشاعر والعواطف	like, love, etc.
(3) Perception and senses	أفعال تعبر عن الإدراك والحواس	hear, see, etc.
(4) Possessions and measurements	أفعال تعبر عن الملكية والمقاييس	belong يخص, have, weigh etc.

- الأفعال الآتية لا تأتى مع صيغة المضارع المستمر (أفعال تصف الحالة):

dislike	يكره	notice	يلاحظ	feel	يشعر بـ	contain	يحتوى على
hate	يكره	remember	يتذكر	taste	يتذوق	fit	يلائم
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	understand	يفهم	look	يبدو	include	يتضمن
prefer	يفضل	realise	يدرك	smell	يشم	own	يملك
believe	يعتقد	seem	يبدو	sound	يبدو	want	يريد
mean	يقصد	need	يحتاج	imagine	يتخيل	measure	يقيس
appear	يظهر	surprise	يدهش	miss	يفقد	join	يلتحق بـ
cost	يتكلف	weigh	يزن	wish	يتمنى	owe	يدين

- فإذا استخدمنا هذه الأفعال فى المضارع نستخدم المضارع البسيط ولو كانت فى الماضى نستخدم الماضى البسيط .

- This bag belongs to my mother. (Not ~~this bag is belonging~~)
- I like this new TV show. (Not ~~I am liking~~)

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This sauce .... wonderful.
a) is tasting b) isn't tasting c) tastes d) taste

2 Most people .... in the existence of magic.
a) aren't believing b) don't believe c) are believing d) believes

3 People all over the world .... Mohammed Salah well.
a) knew b) were knowing c) are knowing d) know

4 This computer .... to Ahmed.
a) belongs b) belong
c) is belonging d) isn't belonging

5 .... people should work in their 70s or 80s?
a) Are you think b) Do you think
c) Are you thinking d) Did you thought



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Advanced points

Some verbs have both a stative and an active meaning:

بعض الأفعال لها كل من المعنى الحركى والمعنى غير الحركى وإذا استخدمت فى الاستمرار يكون لها معنى مختلف:

Verb	State	Action
think	I think English is easy. هذا اعتقاد وليس تفكير	I'm thinking about your plan. = I'm considering. يدبر أمرًا/يفكر مليًا فى أمر
have	My brother has a nice car. أخى يملك سيارة لطيفة وليس يتناول.	He's having dinner now. = He is eating now. يتناول العشاء وليس يملك
feel	I feel you should take more time. الشعور والإحساس هنا ليس حركيًا ولكنه مثل الاعتقاد.	She is feeling her way in the dark. = She is finding her way in the dark. تحسس الطريق باليد أو النظر جيدًا
see	His eyes are so bad. He sees a little. الفعل see هنا بمعنى يرى وليس يقابل.	I'm seeing my lawyer tonight. = I'm visiting/meeting my lawyer tonight. أزور/أقابل
love	I love going on holidays to relax. الفعل love يدل على المشاعر لا حركة فيه.	I'm loving this holiday. = I'm enjoying; specific محدد الاستمتاع بالإجازة فى وقت معين (وسط الحدث)
look	He looks tired = seems الفعل look هنا بمعنى يبدو.	She's looking at some old photographs. = She's examining some old photographs. تتفقد/تفحص/تنظر بدقة
be	Ali is a kind man. الفعــل "يكون" فعل حالة وهو ليس فى وقت معين ولكنه دائم.	Ramy is being very kind to me these days. = He's behaving kindly. يتصرف معى هذه الأيام فقط.
smell	The food smells nice. رائحة الشيء تكون هى حالته.	Why are you smelling your food? = Trying the smell of. يحاول شم رائحة شيء.
weigh	the meat weighs 2 kilos. يبلغ في الوزن	He is weighing the meat. يزن

ولنفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيدًا نتأمل المثال الآتى:

- The soup tastes nice.
- I'm tasting the soup now.

فالحالة التى عليها الشــوربة هى أنها جيدة ولها مذاق جميل وهذا شــيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر منى حدث وليس حالة وهو أنى أقوم بالتذوق لكى أعرف حالة الشوربة وهنا يكون الاستمرار.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She .... to her boss. I'll tell her you phoned.
a) talked b) talks c) talking d) is talking

2 Turn the TV off. No one .... it!
a) watches b) isn't watching c) is watching d) watched

3 **A:** Where's Nada? **B:** She .... a tennis match.
a) played b) is playing c) has played d) plays

4 Most scientists .... that the world is getting hotter.
a) believe b) are believed c) are believing d) will believe

5 Mariam is busy at the moment. She .... her hair.
a) wash b) washes c) is washing d) has washed

6 I like reading science fiction stories, but my brothers .... sport.
a) like b) are liking c) likes d) has liked

7 Look! How fast that lorry ....
a) go b) went c) goes d) is going

8 They're hungry. They .... something to eat.
a) wants b) want c) are wanting d) were wanting

9 The kids .... each other around the kitchen table at the moment.
a) chased b) chasing c) are chased d) are chasing

10 Stress .... high blood pressure.
a) cause b) causes c) is causing d) has caused

11 Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. This means I .... next Saturday.
a) travel b) will travel c) am travelling d) was travelling

12 The sky .... grey and the wind is blowing. I think it is going to rain.
a) looks b) is looking c) has looked d) will look

13 You haven't said a word all morning. What .... about?
a) you think b) do you think c) are you thinking d) you do think

14 The famous footballer is coming to visit our village, and I .... he's very rich.

a) hearing b) hear c) am hearing d) will hear

15 You .... computer games. You should do something more active.

a) always played b) are always play
c) always playing d) 're always playing

16 Tarek's good at golf, but he .... very often.

a) doesn't play b) won't play
c) didn't play d) isn't playing

17 If you .... this comic book, I'd like to see it.

a) don't read b) aren't reading
c) read d) were reading

18 He .... more money than he can afford to pay.

a) is owing b) owed c) was owing d) owes

19 Something .... different - Are you wearing a new suit?

a) seem b) had seemed c) seems d) is seeming

20 We .... for my brother's birthday party. Do you want to help?

a) are preparing b) prepare c) have prepared d) prepared

21 He said he .... gas when he entered the room.

a) smells b) was smelling c) smelt d) is smelling

22 When my brother has a bad cold, he .... nothing.

a) tasting b) is tasting c) tasted d) tastes

23 Kareem's a policeman, but he .... a uniform today.

a) isn't wearing b) wears c) doesn't wear d) no wear

24 How many children ....?

a) are you having b) do you have
c) are you have d) do you have got

25 Sohila is very clever. She .... seven different languages.

a) is speaking b) was speaking c) speaks d) has spoken

26 I .... a shower every morning.

a) have b) am having c) have got d) was having

27 I .... the fish now. It .... five kilos.

a) am weighing/is weighing
b) weigh/is weighing
c) weigh/weighs
d) am weighing/weighs

28 Which sentence of the following is grammatically correct?

a) I'm usually brushing my teeth at the moment.
b) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.
c) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.
d) I don't eat breakfast this morning.

29 Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?

a) Are they having a good time?
b) He's having a huge house.
c) They are designing a robot.
d) They are looking at the photo album.

30 One of the following is grammatically correct?

a) I'm knowing that he came yesterday.
b) I'm thinking of taking a vacation.
c) "Enormous" is meaning "very big".
d) "2 + 2" is equaling "1 + 3".

31 The verb .... can work as both a stative and a dynamic verb.

a) study
b) have
c) believe
d) sleep

32 Some men are waiting outside for you ....

a) at that time
b) at the moment
c) yesterday
d) recently

33 Please, be quiet. My baby ....

a) is slept
b) sleeps
c) slept
d) is sleeping

34 My mother is busy at the moment. She .... her favourite programme.

a) watches
b) has watched
c) watched
d) is watching

35 A: "What is Osama doing at the moment? B: ....

a) He is tasting the food.
b) He weighs the fish he has just bought.
c) He is looking ill.
d) He is thinking that his teacher is genius.

Test Yourself 20 min



Unit 7
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... and hard work led the businessman from poverty to success and wealth.
   a) Affectation b) Determination c) Deterioration d) Condensation
2. For a holiday ...., you need a valid passport and a visa from the destination embassy.
   a) broad b) board c) abroad d) aboard
3. Stop that noise, please. You're .... me from my work.
   a) distracting b) dispensing c) respecting d) distressing
4. Damietta has a new fine modern .... for all ships that helps the local economy.
   a) warehouse b) harbour c) store d) garage
5. The charity depends on unemployed .... who give much time and effort.
   a) employees b) spectators c) engineers d) volunteers
6. My friends and family have all .... me through my sports career; they are really helpful.
   a) endangered b) threatened c) supported d) ignored
7. The doctors are .... that the patient will make a full recovery after the successful operation.
   a) secret b) confident c) desperate d) ignorant
8. Students who do studies in England sometimes live with .... families who help them for free.
   a) guest b) helpless c) strange d) host
9. .... the capital city of Spain?
   a) Are you know b) Do you know
   c) Are you knowing d) Do you knowing
10. The university .... for a qualified doctor at the moment.
    a) is advertising b) advertised c) advertises d) advertise
11. I am having a great time in Japan these days, but I .... my friends, especially you.
    a) missing b) misses c) am missing d) miss
12. .... that our team will win the next match?
    a) Do you believe b) Are you believing
    c) Will you believe d) Were you believing
13. I'm angry because you .... the door open.
    a) always leave b) are always leaving c) leaving d) are left
14. Leila .... that she will be better at maths.
    a) is being hoped b) is hoping c) hopes d) hoping

15 'Hurry up! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I..................'

a) am come
b) come
c) coming
d) am coming

16 They are visiting the zoo on Saturday. This means that they ....

a) are in the zoo now
b) haven't decided yet
c) have arranged everything
d) are still thinking of going there

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants are important to us. All the food that we eat comes either directly or indirectly from plants. However, the question is, what do plants eat? Well, they do not actually[1] eat the way we do, but they make their own food. The process[2] by which this takes place[3] is called photosynthesis[4].

Plants make food in their leaves. The leaves contain a pigment[5] called chlorophyll which gives the leaves their green colour. Besides chlorophyll, plants also need the light from the sun to help in their food production. Besides the sun, plants can also make food with the use of other light sources such as a light bulb[6]. For photosynthesis to take place, plants also need carbon dioxide that is found in the air. Animals and people help in providing carbon dioxide for the plants to make food when they breathe out[7].

Lastly, but just as important, plants make use of their roots to absorb[8] the nutrients [9] found in the soil to help them make food. When all these different things are present, plants can then make food. In the process of making food, plants release oxygen, which is beneficial[10] to animals and people. Plants, animals and people are dependent[11] on one another to survive, plants provide oxygen for animals and people to breathe and animals, and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to make food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Where does photosynthesis take place?

a) In the plants' leaves.
b) In the plants' trunk.
c) In the plants' roots.
d) In the plants' fruit.

2 What does the pigment in the tree do?

a) It gives chlorophyll.
b) It gives the leaves their colour.
c) It gives the tree its food.
d) It gives us oxygen.

3 Animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to ....

a) kill them
b) absorb nutrients found in the soil
c) colour the leaves
d) help them make their food



(1) بالفعل/حقًا (2) عملية (3) يحدث (4) البناء الضوئي (5) صبغة (6) المصباح الكهربائي (7) يزفر (8) يمتص (9) مواد مغذية (10) مفيد (11) اتكالي/معتمد على

4 The antonym of the word "providing" is "..................".

a) offering
b) delivering
c) withdrawing
d) making available

5 Plants can use .... to make food.

a) the sun and other light sources
b) the sun only
c) oxygen
d) lunar soil

6 Although animals eat plants, they are necessary to give them ....

a) photosynthesis
b) carbon dioxide
c) nutrients
d) oxygen

7 The function of the root system is to absorb the nutrients found in the soil and ....

a) keep the tree strong through high winds
b) absorb carbon dioxide
c) give off oxygen
d) give their green colour

8 Plants, animals and people are .... one another to survive.

a) independent of
b) getting rid of
c) in need of
d) afraid of

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Travelling abroad has many benefits for young people. It can help them experience a different lifestyle, modern methods of education and explore the world around them.

a) للسفر للخارج بعض الفوائد للشباب فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجنب نمط حياة مختلف وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

b) للسفر للخارج الكثير من الفوائد للشباب فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مختلف وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

c) للسفر للخارج الكثير من الفوائد للمراهقين فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مناسب وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

d) للسفر للخارج الكثير من العيوب للشباب فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مختلف وطرق تقليدية للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

2 Learning critical thinking skills helps young people to face the challenges of the modern age. It also helps them not to fall prey to misleading groups.

a) إن تعلم مهارات التفكير الناقد يساعد الشباب على مواجهة تحديات العصر الحديث كما يساعدهم على عدم الوقوع كفريسة للجماعات المضللة.

b) إن تعلم حرفة التفكير الناقد يساعد الشباب على مواجهة تحديات العصر الحديث كما يساعدهم على عدم الوقوع كضحية للجماعات المضللة.

c) إن اكتساب مهارات التفكير الناقد يساعد الشباب على مواجهة تحديات البيئة الحديث كما يساعدهم على عدم الوقوع كفريسة للجماعات المضللة.

d) إن تعلم مهارات التفكير الإيجابي يساعد الشباب على مواجهة تحديات العصر الحديث كما يساعدهم على عدم الوقوع كفريسة للجماعات الضائعة.

3 We all owe much to scientists who are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.

a) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بصعوبة لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى تأقلم الناس مع تقليل المعاناة.

b) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لتطوير أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المتاعب.

c) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المعاناة.

d) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المزمنة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الأطباء لتقليل المعاناة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 يعرض بعض الشباب حياتهم للخطر بالهجرة غير الشرعية للوصول إلى بعض الدول الأوروبية من أجل البحث عن حياة أفضل و مع ذلك البعض منهم يفقدون حياتهم قبل الوصول لهدفهم.

a) Some young people expose their lives to danger by illegal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.

b) Some young people expose their lives to danger by legal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their jobs before reaching their goal.

c) Some young people expose their families to danger by illegal immigration to reach some European villages in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.

d) Some young people expose their lives to safety by illegal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a harder life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.

2 في الماضي، اختار العديد من الطلاب الجامعات الأجنبية لإكمال دراستهم في الجامعات الشهيرة. ومع ذلك، تم إنشاء جامعات حديثة لإتاحة نفس الفرص.

a) In the past, many students chose European universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to prevent the same opportunities.

b) In the past, few students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, national universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.

c) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their tasks at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same works.

d) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.

3 يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادى الرياضية التى تسهم فى توجيههم للطريق الصواب وتحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

a) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.

b) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to serving them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of tourism and terrorism.

c) We should discourage young people to join sports clubs which mislead to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the risks of extremism and terrorism.

d) We should encourage young people to avoid sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and develop them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary | I used the right structure | I used a topic sentence | I wrote the conclusion | I used the right punctuation



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
accent (n)*	لهجة
conversation (n)	محادثة
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
diary (n)	يوميات
entry (n)	مدخل/تدوين
local (adj)	محلى

Word	Meaning
Londoners (n)	أهل (ساكنو) لندن
meal (n)	وجبة
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
phrase (n)	عبارة
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
text message (n)	رسالة نصية

* The Russian ambassador spoke English with a foreign accent.

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل
culture (n)	ثقافة
Greek (adj) (n)	يونانى/اللغة اليونانية
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
include (v) (d)	يشمل
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر

Word	Meaning
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
price (n)	سعر
share (v) (d)	يشارك
skill (n)	مهارة
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	منحل	passport (n)	جواز سفر
especially (adv)	بخاصة	price (n)	سعر
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	storm (n)	عاصفة
miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد	voice mail (n)	بريد صوتى
Parthenon (n)	بارثينون (معبد إغريقى فى أثينا)	weather (n)	الطقس

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

all in all	على العموم	keep in touch by	يكون على اتصال بـ
find it hard to	يجد من الصعوبة أن	make sure	يتأكد
from the beginning	من البداية	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
get better at	يتحسن فى	until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)
famous for	مشهور بـ	similar to	مشابه لـ
learn about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	stay with	يقيم مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش/ينحل	amazement	دهشة/نحول	amazing	مدهش/منحل
----------		culture	ثقافة	cultural	ثقافى
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
organise*	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة/تنظيم منظم	organised	منظَّم
present	يقدم	presentation	عرض	presentational	تقديمى
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	مختصر

* - They hired a professional to help organise their wedding.
- Our class is responsible for the organisation of the school party.
- In order to do this job well, you have to be very organised.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
amazing (adj)	مذهل	astonishing/awesome	ordinary/insignificant عادى/عديم الأهمية
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	declare/name	conceal/ignore يتجاهل/يخفى
organise (v) (d)	ينظم	arrange/regulate	ruin/disturb يدمر/يزعج
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص	sum up	enlarge/expand يوسع

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After 9 years in London, Jack lost his French .... and you can say he is a Londoner.
   a) nationality b) degree c) accent d) note
2. My mother makes the most .... and delicious cakes you can ever taste.
   a) terrible b) amazing c) amazed d) awful
3. Modern computers can .... large amounts of data very quickly.
   a) organise b) dispatch c) snatch d) recognise
4. No one is allowed to read my .... It's very personal.
   a) diary b) book c) article d) title
5. I tried to make a .... with the three people around the table as I knew no one at the party.
   a) debate b) connection c) question d) conversation



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- The company always announces that in all its products the .... is on quality.
  a) accent b) decision
  c) experience d) presentation

Reading Text (1)

How would you feel if you are studying abroad away from your family?

28th November 2020



(1) لهجات
(2) اهل لندن
(3) رسالة نصية
(4) ينظم

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been easy. When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents(1) now. I enjoy listening to Londoners(2) and trying to have conversations with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing?

Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family that I'm staying with are really nice. They really look after me! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

All in all, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss my family, but we keep in touch by text message(3). I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to organise(4) a lot of things on my own and make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba

In your opinion, does Heba enjoy her stay in London? Why/Why not?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Dalida's Diary

Monday

Dear diary

I'm very excited. My parents have bought our tickets to Greece, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in Athens. I'm going with Adam. He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

Tuesday

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always forgetting things and nearly left his passport behind! But we arrived at the airport on time. I believe the flight was longer than usual because there was a storm, but all in all the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the Parthenon! I think it is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Judy loves Athens now and showed us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to write more now. Until tomorrow.

What good things would you enjoy if you worked abroad?

Listening Text (1)



Teen girl: Hello everyone. In this presentation, I'm going to talk about the pros and cons of working abroad.

When you first think about working abroad it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's culture. Imagine[1] trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture celebrate[2].

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be.

Finally, I think a further argument for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills[3], especially language skills and probably also communication[4] skills. These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and miss your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

Unfortunately[5], it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

(1) يتخيل
(2) يحتفل
(3) مهارات
(4) اتصال/تواصل
(5) لسوء الحظ

According to the girl, what is the serious advantage of working abroad?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Judy: Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm helping here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing[1] a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I suppose[2] I'm becoming more independent though.

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek[3] music, and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices[4] of things in the shops!

I'm trying to learn Greek, but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English!

So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss my friends, especially you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

يشارك (1)

يفترض/يظن (2)

يونانى (3)

أسعار (4)

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My elder brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to ....
   a) recuperate b) calibrate c) reward d) celebrate
2. The report about the new project .... that the cost is higher than expected.
   a) remembers b) mentions c) improves d) reforms
3. I .... that we'll do some sightseeing while we're here in Luxor.
   a) refuse b) reject c) suppose d) recognise
4. During the sale on Black Friday only, all the carpets in the shop were sold at half ....
   a) price b) size c) weight d) place
5. Television, the internet and other forms of mass .... have made the world a global village.
   a) connection b) collection c) communication d) affection



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Focus on Vocabulary

accent لهجة
- the way someone pronounces the words of a language

culture ثقافة
- the beliefs, way of life, art, and customs that are shared and accepted by people in a particular society

diary يوميات
- a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day

entry تدوين
- a piece of writing in a diary, or in a book containing information such as a dictionary

phrase عبارة
- a group of words that have a particular meaning when used together

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

1

Word	Arabic	Example
diary	يوميات/مذكرات	Mary kept a diary while she was travelling in Europe.
dairy	ألبان/منتجات الألبان	You'll find yogurt in the dairy section of the grocery store.

2

Word	Arabic	Example
flight	رحلة جوية	The air hostess of the plane helped me to enjoy my flight to London.
voyage	رحلة بحرية	The explorer's voyage on the ocean was amazing.
trip	(رحلة قصيرة) لغرض معين	My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.
journey	رحلة طويلة (غالبًا برية)	Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.
picnic	نزهة خلوية	City people usually enjoy picnics to the countryside.

3	conversation	محادثة	The servant overheard our conversation about the children.
	discussion	مناقشة	The two companies have been having discussions about a possible takeover.
	chat	دردشة	I've just had a chat with my friend on the phone.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, ...

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (has) مع (everyone) لكن إذا استخدمنا ضميرًا يكون ضمير جمع.

- The host family that I'm staying with are really nice.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة الجمع (are) مع (family) لأن المقصود أفراد العائلة، لكننا نستخدم الفعل فى صيغة المفرد إذا قصدنا العائلة ككل.

In the war, every family has its own story to tell.

- .... but I'm too tired to write more now.

- تستخدم (too ... to) بمعنى جدًا لدرجة أن لا ويتبعها فعل فى صيغة المصدر.

- I've just been really busy in my new job ...... and most of the food tastes really good!

- لاحظ استخدام (really) قبل الصفات للتأكيد عليها بمعنى (جدًا).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The plane was badly damaged during the .... from Japan to America.
   a) voyage b) flight c) picnic d) expedition
2. There was a long .... between my father and my mother about where the money was going to come from.
   a) presentation b) discussion c) challenge d) research
3. My elder sister wastes a lot of time on Facebook .... with her friends.
   a) conversations b) discussions c) chats d) researches

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The new coach of the team speaks English with a French .... as he is from Switzerland.
a) accent b) language c) conversation d) presentation

2 The last .... the soldier made in his diary was on October 10th, the day before his death.
a) enter b) entry c) culture d) skill

3 My uncle's factory produces, shoes and other leather goods for .... and overseas markets.
a) general b) private c) local d) whole

4 Students need to learn how to .... their work well to get the best results.
a) imagine b) celebrate c) waste d) organise

5 My friend sent me a text .... saying that she'll be late.
a) massage b) passage c) message d) messenger

6 The writer .... the essay's main arguments in the final paragraph.
a) damaged b) summarised c) realised d) puzzled

7 Children should be taught to respect different .... in order to be tolerant.
a) cultures b) economies c) accents d) phrases

8 A security officer's duties .... greeting visitors and directing them to the appropriate department.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

9 In her speech, the young actress .... the help of her parents, husband, and fellow actors.
a) reminded b) mentioned c) recommended d) expected

10 Twenty people were killed when a violent .... struck the American Coast.
a) air b) draught c) breeze d) storm

11 There are only three .... a day to New York Airport from Cairo.
a) flights b) voyages c) picnics d) fights

12 Many games were cancelled because of last week's bad .... conditions.
a) climate b) weather c) atmosphere d) warming

13 To celebrate passing the exam, father took my sister out for a .... in her favourite restaurant.
a) mail b) post c) tour d) meal

14 Hackers may call a company employee and reach their voice ....
a) mail b) note c) passage d) device

15 The conference will begin with a .... by a leading company manager to show the new trends.
a) decision b) revolution c) presentation d) deviation

16 I .... that all the tickets of the new movie have been sold now.
a) dislike b) suppose c) permit d) reply

17 The patient has been .... pain in the left shoulder after the operation.
a) curing b) experiencing c) healing d) hearing

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 We suffered much at the company last year, but all .... all it had been a success.
a) at b) in c) for d) off

19 My little brother .... it hard to learn swimming although he has been training for two weeks.
a) finds b) takes c) gets d) devices

20 I like my colleague at the office because his/her ideas are quite similar .... mine.
a) in b) of c) in d) to

21 The school organised the students' seats according to health measures إجراءات صحية. The synonym of the verb "organise" is "..................".
a) explain b) waste c) damage d) arrange

22 France is famous .... the Eiffel Tower and the French food.
a) about b) of c) for d) at

23 My teacher told me that I have an .... ability to learn new languages.
a) amaze b) amazing c) amazed d) amazement

24 In the end, I had to make the difficult .... to retire early because of my health problems.
a) decide b) decided c) decision d) decisive

25 The visit to Aswan was really amazing as I liked it much. The antonym of the adjective "amazing" is "..................".
a) ordinary b) fantastic c) puzzled d) accepted

26 After two months at the course, my friend is .... better at English.
a) having b) taking c) giving d) getting

27 At the music festival, you can have fun and learn .... music at the same time.
a) at b) out c) about d) at

28 .... the beginning of my career as a journalist, I've been writing about politics.
a) From b) At c) Through d) By

29 I believe that most students can .... better if they are given much support.
a) improvise b) devise c) make d) get

30 The scientist mentioned his wife's name in his letter. The verb "mention" is opposite of the verb ....
a) ignore b) name c) honour d) uncover

Study  Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

1 Present Continuous and Present simple

وللوصول للفهم الحقيقى لأزمنة المضارع يجب التفرقة بين زمنى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر لأن الأفعال غير الحركية لا تأتى فى المضارع المستمر وتأتى فى المضارع البسيط.

Present continuous	Present simple
Now الآن	**Always** دائمًا
It's raining at the moment. I'm watching this programme. Look! This man is taking a photo of you.	It always rains in winter. I watch television most weekends. He takes lots of photos. He's a photographer.
Temporary مؤقت	**Permanent** دائم
I'm working at a sports shop for six weeks. They are living in a small flat these days.	I work at a sports shop. It's permanent. They live in a very nice flat.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- He usually .... dinner at home. His mother is a good cook.

a) eat b) eats

c) is eating d) was eating

الإجابة (b) لأن الجملة تتحدث عن عادة، نستخدم معها المضارع البسيط.

2 Stative verbs

1. Most stative verbs are not usually used in the present continuous even when they describe a situation that is happening now:

١- لا تُستخدم معظم أفعال الحالة عادة فى المضارع المستمر حتى عندما تصف موقفًا يحدث الآن:

- He wants fish for dinner.
- He needs to buy a large flat.

- ويمكن تقسيم أفعال الحالة حسب نوعها كالآتى:

Category						
Perception and senses الإدراك والإحساس	feel	يشعر بـ	see	يرى	observe	يلاحظ
	hear	يسمع	smell	يشم	perceive	يدرك
	notice	يلاحظ	taste	يتذوق		
Emotions العواطف	like	يحب	admire	يعجب بـ	detest	يمقت
	love	يحب	adore	يعشق	envy	يحسد
	hate	يكره	appreciate	يقدر	fear	يخاف
	dislike	يكره	care	يهتم	trust	يثق فى
	regret	يندم	respect	يحترم	pity	يشفق
Mental states الحالات العقلية	agree	يوافق	expect	يتوقع	suppose	يفترض
	disagree	يعترض	guess	يخمن	suspect	يشك
	believe	يعتقد	hesitate	يتردد	think	يعتقد
	disbelieve	لا يصدق	imagine	يتخيل	understand	يفهم
	know	يعرف	mean	يعنى	wonder	يتساءل
	mind	يمانع	presume	يفترض	see	يرى
	find	يجد	realise	يدرك	doubt	يشك
	consider	يعتبر	recognise	يتعرف على	forget	ينسى
	estimate	يخمن/يقدر	remember	يتذكر		
Appearance and value المظهر والقيمة	appear	يظهر	resemble	يشبه	represent	يرمز
	be	يكون	seem	يبدو	look	يبدو
	cost	يكلف	signify	يشير/يفيد	matter	يهم/يؤثر
	equal	يساوى	sound	يبدو	weigh	يزن
	exist	يوجد				
Possessions الملكية	belong	يخص	have	يملك	possess	يمتلك
	contain	يحتوى على	own	يمتلك	include	يتضمن
	lack	ينقص				
Wants and preferences الإرادة والتفضيل	hope	يأمل	prefer	يفضل	wish	يتمنى
	need	يحتاج	want	يريد	desire	يرغب

2. Some verbs of feeling can be used in both the simple and continuous with no change in meaning:

٢- يمكن استخدام بعض أفعال المشاعر فى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر دون تغيير فى المعنى:

- My back hurts/is hurting again. I must go to the doctor.
- Do you feel/Are you feeling Ok. Today?

3. With verbs which describe a sense, we use the simple form or can/could + verb.

٣- مع الأفعال التى تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط أو can/could + inf.:

- I can smell the fertiliser. Are we in the countryside now?
- I can hear someone screaming outside. What is happening?

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We always eat out because we .... cooking at home.
   a) hating b) hate
   c) are hating d) don't hate
2. I'll be with you in a minute. I .... something in the living room.
   a) am just finishing b) finished
   c) had finished d) can finish
3. Hany always .... jeans, but today he is wearing a suit.
   a) is wearing b) had worn
   c) wears d) wearing
4. I never have anything to write with because I'm always .... my pens.
   a) lost b) loses
   c) lose d) losing
5. This milk .... fresh enough. I think I will throw it out.
   a) isn't smelling b) doesn't smell
   c) smells d) can't smell





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She can't do her shopping at the moment because it .... heavily.
a) is raining b) rains c) will rain d) raining

2 I bought my new camera last week. I .... a photo of you now.
a) take b) took c) 'm taking d) had taken

3 My uncle .... as an engineer. It is his permanent job.
a) is working b) work c) had worked d) works

4 My father .... hard these days as he needs money for our school fees.
a) worked b) is working c) had worked d) works

5 He can't make a sound decision as he .... of many things.
a) is thinking b) thinks c) was thinking d) thought

6 I .... it's too late to apply for that job now.
a) supposes b) supposing c) am supposing d) suppose

7 I need my CD player if you .... it at the moment.
a) don't using b) use c) aren't using d) don't use

8 I know that our team are practising hard these days. They .... to win the cup.
a) want b) are wanting c) wanting d) wanted

9 Why don't you wait for Ali in the living room? He .... a shower.
a) had had b) is having c) have d) has

10 You aren't careful; you .... the same mistake again.
a) are always making b) making
c) had made d) won't make

11 I .... to know more about the job before I decide whether to apply for it.
a) am needing b) have needed c) need d) needing

12 **A:** Have you found a house yet?
B: No, I .... with my uncle at the moment.
a) will stay b) stayed c) stay d) 'm staying

13 More and more people .... their rubbish nowadays.
a) recycling b) are recycling c) recycled d) will recycle

14 .... on the phone? No, he is doing his homework right now.
a) Does Ramy talk b) Has Ramy talked c) Is Ramy talking d) Can Ramy talk

15 I know Hala's flat, but I .... her phone number.

a) don't remember
b) remember
c) am not remembering
d) remembering

16 Hoda's little sister .... very helpful today. That's nice!

a) is
b) is been
c) was been
d) is being

17 Look! The girls are running to catch the bus. They .... to be in a hurry.

a) seemed
b) seem
c) are seeming
d) are seemed

18 My daughter .... fond of eating fast foods.

a) always is being
b) is always being
c) always is
d) is always

19 Don't phone him now as he .... lunch.

a) is having
b) has had
c) has
d) was having

20 Asmaa .... very happy at the moment.

a) isn't seeming
b) is seeming
c) doesn't seem
d) seemed

21 He .... his glasses, so he can't watch the match on TV now.

a) wears
b) isn't wearing
c) doesn't wear
d) is wearing

22 I .... of going to London and visiting my old friends this month.

a) am thinking
b) was thinking
c) am thought
d) thinking

23 Mona is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She .... a really good time.

a) will have
b) had
c) is having
d) has

24 A: I am thinking of visiting Hazem this afternoon.

B: Don't bother. I .... he's on a business trip.

a) am thinking
b) thinking
c) thought
d) think

25 My father .... an apple now. He .... an apple every day.

a) is eating/eats
b) eats/is eating
c) eating/eats
d) ate/is eating

26 He always .... while he .... a bath.

a) sing/has
b) sings/is having
c) is singing/has
d) sang/is having

27 A: Why .... the sauce? Does it need more pepper?

B: No. It .... great the way it is.

a) do you taste/tastes
b) do you taste/is tasting
c) are you tasting/tastes
d) are you tasting/is tasting

28 One of the following questions is grammatically correct:
a) Is he waiting for the bus on the corner every day?
b) Is he often going to the park yet?
c) Is he having a beautiful house by the Nile?
d) Is he having a meeting at the office now?

29 One of the following is correctly structured:
a) They hate to get to school late.
b) Is she liking to go shopping?
c) I'm hating to drink coffee.
d) Nader works at a hotel for a week.

30 One of the following is incorrectly structured:
a) The house smells very good when we bake cakes.
b) I'm smelling the milk now, and it doesn't smell bad.
c) I taste the soup now to see if it needs salt.
d) What does "terrific" mean?

31 I .... tired these days and I want to have a rest.
a) am feeling b) felt c) can feel d) was feeling

32 My friend .... pleased. Something good must have happened.
a) is seeming b) looks c) was looking d) is looking

33 A: What is the matter with you?
B: ....
a) I am thinking that Ali will come to the party next week
b) I'm needing some money to buy a new shirt
c) I can't study well and I'm forgetting everything
d) I have a bad cold and I'm seeing the doctor tonight

34 Can you go downtown with me right now?
a) No, I eat lunch.
b) No, I take care of my son.
c) No, I'm waiting for a phone call.
d) No, I'm understanding my lessons.

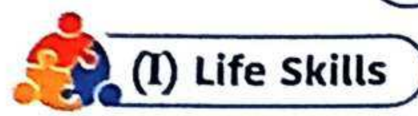
35 A: What is Ahmed doing there?
B: He ....
a) is finding the doctor's clinic
b) looks ill and is trying to find a doctor
c) looks for the doctor's clinic
d) finds the doctor's clinic



Lessons 3 & 4



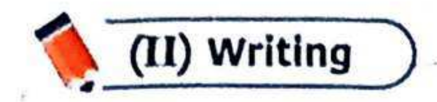
C Communication Skills



Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures

One of the best things about people is that we're all different. Each person you meet is their own individual self, complete with their own thoughts, opinions, and beliefs. We're all part of a multicultural world, full of exciting and often surprising differences. With such diversity, it helps when we all respect and understand other people's cultures. Here are some tips on how to do just that.

- Know your own culture in order to fully appreciate others'.
- Read books by authors from other countries can expand your cultural understanding.
- Watch movies.
- Listen to radio shows and podcasts.
- Talk with individuals from different cultures.
- Travel to other countries.
- Appreciate the differences.



A diary entry تدوينة مذكرات

Imagine that you are going to visit or have just visited a place for the first time. Write a diary entry for three days as follows:

- Write about the day before you go to the place.
- Describe the day you arrive at the place.
- Write about the next day.

Thursday

I'm very excited to start our holiday in France. My father has just bought the ticket to Paris. I have already packed my bag before that. I'm travelling with my parents and my brother. This is my first trip abroad and I have been looking for this trip for a long time.

Friday

We arrived in Paris late at night. The hotel where we are staying is very nice. Although it isn't a five-star hotel, the rooms are nice and the staffs are all friendly. Tomorrow, we are starting our tour. We are going to the Eiffel Tower. I can't wait until tomorrow.

Saturday

We visited the Eiffel Tower this morning. We climbed the tower and enjoyed the view of Paris from the top. Isn't that amazing? The lunch we had at the restaurant at the tower was marvellous. We took a lot of photos there.

Test Yourself in 20 

Unit 7

Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 On the 6th of October, ... to the Military Museum is free celebrating the Victory Day.
a) enter b) entry c) exit d) existence

2 The .... recorder should help to establish why the plane suddenly crashed.
a) voyage b) manual c) flight d) picnic

3 I hung up the phone as I saw no point in continuing the .... with the customer service clerk.
a) intention b) acceptance
c) intonation d) conversation

4 The report about the new system .... a number of recommendations to make it better.
a) consists b) includes c) researches d) encloses

5 In our ...., it is not proper to ask anyone how much they earn.
a) culture b) adventure c) capture d) texture

6 My neighbour seems very proud of his son as he .... his name in all his talks.
a) reminds b) mentions c) calls d) teaches

7 I asked the teacher to .... the most important points in the grammar lesson.
a) nationalise b) provide c) summarise d) realise

8 The weather wasn't very good during our trip, but all .... all, we enjoyed it.
a) at b) for c) about d) in

9 Ramy .... his music very loud. I can't sleep.
a) plays b) played c) has played d) is playing

10 **A:** Why is Hamdy being so rude today?
B: I have no idea. He .... usually very polite.
a) was b) is being c) is d) being

11 Hany is never satisfied. He ....
a) 's always complaining b) complain
c) complaining d) is complain

12 **A:** I see you .... a new mobile phone.
B: Yes, but I am having trouble understanding how it works.
a) are having b) having c) has d) have

13 Look! That man .... to open the door of your car.
a) tries b) is trying c) was trying d) trying

14 A: Why are you looking at the sky?
B: It .... as if it's going to rain.
a) looks b) looking c) looked d) is looking

15 I .... the meaning of that word.
a) not understand
b) don't understand
c) am not understanding
d) understanding

16 I must go now. It .... late.
a) is getting b) gets c) getting d) get

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The hall was already full. The judges(1) had taken their places at the table in front of the stage(2). There was a thunderous(3) applause(4) as the compere(5) walked on the stage. He announced the start of the finals in the school singing competition(6). Backstage(7), the finalists(8) were all nervously waiting for their turn to perform.

From an initial(9) group of 24, the judges had eliminated half and chosen these remaining contestants(10) to take part in the finals. The competition soon began. Each contestant came out and gave his or her best performance. There were some who did not sing as well as they wanted to. When all the finalists had performed, they went back on stage again, this time to perform as a group. Then they went backstage to await the results. They were all so nervous. Some of them burst into tears. The judges took quite a long time to decide. They were all so good.

Finally, the compere went on stage to announce(11) the top three winners who will win lots of attractive(12) prizes. There were screams of joy as well as tears of disappointment(13). The students filed out of the hall when it was all over. All the school staff; teachers and the headmaster congratulated the winners on their efforts and took photographs with them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The above passage describes ....
a) a national singing competition
b) an inter-school singing competition
c) a school singing competition
d) a community singing competition

2 There were .... contestants at the finals.
a) 12 b) 20 c) 22 d) 24

(1) الحكام
(2) مسرح/منصة
(3) رعدى
(4) تحليل/هتاف
(5) مذيع
(6) منافسة
(7) وراء الستار
(8) صاعدين للدور النهائى
(9) استهلالى/أولى
(10) متنافسين
(11) يذيع/ينادى
(12) جذاب
(13) خيبة الأمل

3 The contestant performed .... during the finals.

a) with the judges
b) as a group only
c) individually only
d) individually and in a group

4 'Tears of disappointment' means ....

a) the contestants who lost cried
b) the contestants were disappointed with the prizes
c) the contestants who won cried
d) the contestants were disappointed with the judges

5 Because all the contestants performed well, ...

a) the judges took a long time to arrive at their decision
b) they were given valuable prizes
c) the school staff took photographs with them
d) all of them were confident and sure about winning

6 The synonym of the word "eliminated" is "..............".

a) announced
b) declared
c) excluded
d) included

7 The completion was about ....

a) a masterpiece of writing
b) a piece of art
c) literature and poetry
d) sports

8 All the school staff; teachers and the headmaster ....

a) were happy to take part in the competition
b) were disappointed with the losers
c) didn't show any feelings towards the students
d) were happy with the winners

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 The Project of the New Administrative Capital is a massive project which will move Egypt to new horizons. It also will create a great number of jobs for young people.

a) مشروع المدينة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشروع ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضـا سيخلق عددًا مناسبا من فرص العمل للشباب.

b) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشروع ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضـا سيخلق عددًا كبيرًا من فرص العمل للشباب.

c) مشـروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو برنامج ضخم سـينقل مصر إلى آفاق واسعة. وأيضـا سيخلق عددًا كبيرًا من فرص العمل للشباب.

d) مشـروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو فكرة ضخمة سـينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضـا سيخلق عددًا كبيرًا من فرص العمل للأجيال.

2 Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists. Thus, we should make good use of them to develop this important industry.

a) تشتهر مصر بآثارها القديمة التى تجذب آلاف السياح. وبالتالى، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل دقيق لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.

b) تشتهر مصر بآثارها الحديثة التى تجذب ملايين السياح. وبالتالى، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه التجارة المهمة.

c) تشتهر مصر بآثارها القديمة التى تجذب ملايين السياح. وبالتالى، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.

d) تشتهر مصر بمبانيها القديمة التى تجذب ملايين السياح. وبالتالى، يجب أن نروج لها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الصناعة المحلية.

3 While studying abroad is an excellent opportunity to learn a new language, you may at first have some problems with language and cultural barriers.

a) فى حين أن الدراسة فى الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تواجه فى البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية والثقافية.

b) فى حين أن الدراسة فى الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة أجنبية، فقد تواجه فى البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية البيئية.

c) بسبب أن الدراسة فى الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تواجه فى البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز الفكرية والثقافية.

d) فى حين أن الدراسة فى الخارج فرصة متاحة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تتجاوز فى البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية والثقافية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 يعتقد بعض الخبراء أنه يجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التى تناسب قدراته ومواهبه لأن ذلك سوف يمكنه من يتفوق فيها و تحقيق أعلى الدرجات.

a) Some experts believe that the student must join the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.

b) Some experts believe that the student must enjoy the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.

c) Some specialists believe that the student must join the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.

d) Some experts believe that the student must join the colleague that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest degrees.

2 تعمل الحكومة على تطوير الرعاية الصحية للمواطنين؛ لأن ذلك سيؤدى إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد لكن ذلك قد يستغرق سنوات من أجل إصلاح النظم الصحية.

a) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to decreasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to inform health care systems.

b) The government is working on developing health care for tourists because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this would take years to reform health care systems.

c) The government is working on producing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform health care styles.

d) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform health care systems.

3 تمثل مؤتمرات الشباب فرصة جيدة لالتقاء الشباب بالمسئولين المهمين والبحث عن حلول للمشكلات التى تواجههم، كما تمثل فرصة لتبادل الآراء من أجل غد أفضل.

a) Youth conferences are a good chance for young people to meet important officials and look for suggestions to the problems they face. Moreover, they can be a chance to challenge opinions for a better future.

b) Young conferences are a good chance for young people to neglect important officials and look for solutions to the problems they face. Moreover, they can be a chance to exchange opinions for a better future.

c) Youth conferences are a good chance for young people to meet important officials and look for solutions to the problems they face. Moreover, they can be a chance to exchange opinions for a better future.

d) Youth conferences are a good chance for young people to meet important managers and look for solutions to the problems they avoid. Moreover, they can be a chance to exchange opinions for a better future.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of women in developing societies"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation. ....

Study



King Lear
Act III, Scenes v-vii

Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على	madness	جنون/حماقة
authority	تفويض/سلطة/نفوذ	prove	يثبت
betray	يخون/يفضح/يفشى سراً	punish	يعاقب
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول	rest	استراحة/راحة
cruel	قاسى القلب	revenge	انتقام/ثأر/يثأر/ينتقم
cure	يعالج/يشفى/يتداوى	spy	جاسوس
deceive	يخدع/يضلل	stupid	أحمق/غبى
enemy	عدو	thief	لص
guilty	مُذنب	traitor	خائن
interrupt	يقاطع	trust	ثقة/يثق
kneel	يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه	truth	حقيقة
loyalty	إخلاص/وفاء	wound	جرح/يجرح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

stand for	يسمح بـ/يدافع عن	take revenge for	ينتقم لـ
get rid of	يتخلص من	pick...up	يلتقط



King Lear Exercises

Act III, Scenes v-vii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The tests .... the new vaccine to be effective against the virus.
   a) improved b) provided
   c) proved d) conducted

2 I was glad to .... rid of my old car when I finally sold it.
   a) get b) give
   c) take d) do

3 The Queen has a special .... with beautiful decoration which she rides in special ceremonies and occasion.
   a) plane b) monument
   c) carriage d) statue

4 A team of doctors .... the child of a rare blood disease.
   a) planned b) damaged
   c) healed d) cured

5 Some people say that talking to yourself is the first sign of .... !
   a) sanity b) madness
   c) security d) courage

6 The soldier was a .... who betrayed his country by selling military secrets to the enemy.
   a) traitor b) commander
   c) hero d) champ

7 I complained to the hospital .... about the bad behaviour of the nurse.
   a) care b) treatment
   c) authority d) laboratory

8 The businessman had been .... by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
   a) presented b) honoured
   c) relieved d) deceived

9 It is believed that cats and dogs have always been natural .... to each other.
   a) mates b) enemies
   c) bosses d) prey

10 The spokesman says that it is better not to .... the minister's speech with any comment.
   a) attract b) consult
   c) interrupt d) rehearse

Unit 7



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15

1 The President made a speech expressing his .... to rebuild the economy.
a) appearance b) determination c) avoidance d) facilitation

2 You must read the dictionary .... carefully to know the distinction between these two words.
a) enters b) entries c) exits d) indexes

3 The businessman has two big flats in Sharm El Sheikh, not to .... his villa in 6th October city.
a) remember b) remind c) mention d) study

4 The secretary wrote down the conference date in the manager's ....
a) diary b) book c) article d) title

5 It is easy to .... distracted if you are working with children playing around.
a) have b) do c) gain d) get

6 The police report mentioned some of the criminal's helpers. The synonym of the verb "mention" is ....
a) doubt b) deny c) name d) improve

7 I'm so happy, Emad! My parents and I ....on holiday next week.
a) have gone b) are going c) go d) went

8 Galal .... to go home right now.
a) wants b) want c) is wanting d) has wanted

9 Mr Hossam .... accurate. He gives the correct and true details.
a) is always being b) always is
c) is always d) has always

10 I .... that the situation is out of control.
a) 'm seeing b) will see c) sees d) see

11 Samy and Waleed .... hard these days.
a) study b) are studying c) have studied d) will study

12 I .... something outside. Are the doors locked?
a) am hearing b) hearing c) hears d) can hear

13 I .... taking early retirement. This is something I'm thinking about now.

a) 'm considering
b) considering
c) considered
d) consider

14 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?

a) They are having a nice house.
b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

15 He can't come tomorrow as he .... a meeting with a foreign delegation at his office.

a) has
b) had to have
c) is having
d) always has

8

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess[1]." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling[2] each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving[3] and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud[4] followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted [5] out. The boy was whimpering [6] in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal [7] took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their heads in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.



) فسحة
) تزاحم
(3) تدافع
(4) صوت الخبط
(5) خرج من مكانه
(6) يصرخ
(7) مدير

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?

a) Physics. b) English.

c) Math. d) Chemistry.

17 What caused the loud thud?

a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.

b) Some stairs fell over.

c) There was a fight on the stairs.

d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

18 The boys didn't follow ....

a) the school rules b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice

c) the traffic rules d) the right stairs

19 The antonym of the word "sternly" is "................".

a) firmly b) severely

c) strictly d) softly

20 As soon as the principal took one look at the injury, he ....

a) called for the ambulance b) blamed Mrs. Fareeda's

c) screamed loudly d) did nothing

21 The boys realised that they were .... and apologised for their behaviour.

a) innocent b) happy

c) guilty d) brave

22 As the boy was screaming, it's thought that ....

a) he was punished by his teacher

b) his arm was broken

c) he had been informed about something bad

d) something bad happened to one of his friends

23 The story teaches us ....

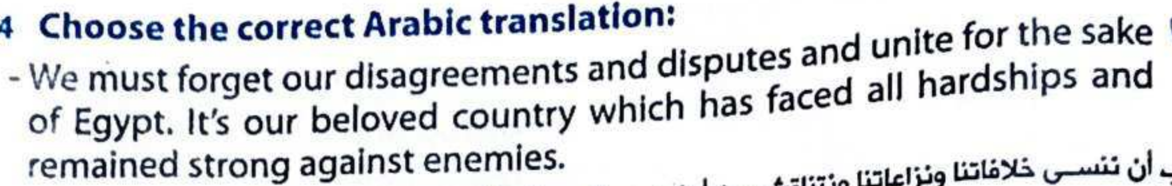
a) to follow other people's advice especially the elderly

b) not to walk down the stairs

c) to keep casts at schools for emergencies

d) walk quickly or run

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation: (2)


- We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

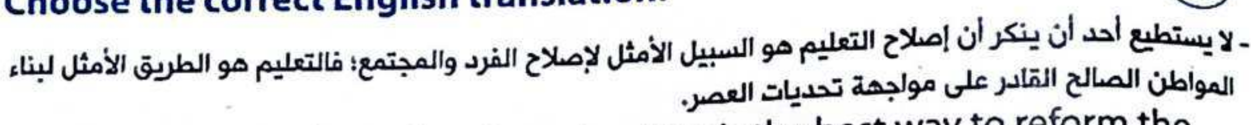
a) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتناقش من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الصراعات وبقى قويًا أمام أعدائه.

b) يجـب أن ننسـى خلافاتنـا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجـه كل الصعوبات وبقى قويًا أمام أعدائه.

c) يجـب أن ننسـى خلافاتنـا و توقعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الـذى واجه كل الإنجازات وبقى قويًا أمام أعدائه.

d) يفضل أن ننسـى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الصعوبات وبقى قويًا أمام حدوده.

25 Choose the correct English translation: (2)


- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريق الأمثل لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

a) No one can deny that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

b) No one can mention that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to invent the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

c) No one can deny that reforming learning is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to avoid the challenges of the age.

d) No one can deny that mending education is the best way to reform the individual and environment. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.



26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: (5)

"The way advertisements can affect people"

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit
8



High-tech transport

Objectives

- **Reading** : A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network
- **Writing** : A speech for or against an argument; An email to the local government about public transport
- **Listening** : A talk show debate about the future of transport
- **Speaking** : A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport; Asking and answering questions about a schedule
- **Language** : Future perfect
- **Life Skills** : Critical thinking; Problem solving; Respect for diversity





Lessons 1 & 2

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

expansion (n)	مد/تمديد	network (n)	شبكة
facilities (n)*	إمكانيات/تسهيلات/مرافق	public (adj)	عام
high-tech (adj)	ذو تكنولوجيا عالية	transport (n)	نقل/مواصلات

* The hotel provides excellent facilities for children.

Vocabulary on Reading

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	line (n)	خط
addition (n)	إضافة	metro (n)	مترو
advantage (n)	ميزة	notice (n)	ملاحظة/إشعار
authority (n)	سلطة/هيئة	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
central (adj)	مركزى/متوسط	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
complete (adj) (v) (d)	كامل/يكمل	precise (adj)	دقيق/محدد
connect (v) (ed)	يربط/يصل	schedule (n)	جدول
disadvantage (n)	عيب	size (n)	حجم/مقاس
equipment (n)	معدات	system (n)	نظام
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	take place (v)	يحدث/يتم
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن	total (adj)	كلى/إجمالى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يتحسن	tram (n)	ترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة	underground (adj) (adv) (n)	تحت الأرض/مترو الأنفاق
length (n)	طول/مدة		

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

affordable (adj)	يمكن تحمل نفقته
available (adj)	متوفر
check in (v) (ed)	يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر
damage (v) (d)	يتلف
driverless (adj)	بلا سائق
electric (adj)	كهربى
environmentally (adv)	بيئيًا
gas (n)	غاز
gate (n)	بوابة
importance (n)	أهمية
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
organisation (n)	منظمة
polluting (adj)	ملوث
private (adj)	خاص
production (n)	إنتاج
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى/يقى من
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
security controls	إجراءات تحكم أمنية
vehicle (n)	مركبة

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى
close (adj)	قريب
coast (n)	ساحل
construction (n)	إنشاء/تشييد
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق/اعتراض
doubt (n) (v) (ed)	شك/يشك
emphasise (v) (d)	يؤكد على
exactly (adv)	بالضبط
first-aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
form (n)	شكل
Greater Cairo (n)	القاهرة الكبرى
interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
monorail (n)	قطار كهربائى معلق
networks (n)	شبكات
New Administrative City	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة/يخطط
pollution (n)	تلوث
railway (n)	سكك حديدية
series (n)	سلسلة/مسلسل (تليفزيونى)
suburb (n)	ضاحية
tunnel (n)	نفق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

along the coast	عبر الساحل	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
around the world	حول العالم	over the next ten years	خلال السنوات العشر القادمة
forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	take a test	يمتحن
agree with	يتفق مع	increase in	زيادة فى
bad for	سيئ لـ	part of	جزء من
close to	قريب من	plan for	يخطط لـ
give up	يقلع عن	travel around	يتنقل
go down	ينخفض	work for	يعمل لدى
importance of	أهمية لـ		

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images.

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يربط/يصل	connection	صلة/ارتباط	connected	متصل
construct★	ينشئ/يشيد	construction	إنشاء/تشييد	constructive	بناء
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	إبداع/خلق مبدع	creative	مبدع
emphasise	يؤكد على	emphasis	تأكيد	emphatic	مؤكد
expand	يمد/يوسع	expansion	مد/تمديد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسيع
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	محسن
increase	يزيد	increase	زيادة	increasing	متزايد
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمى
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع/إقناعى
produce	ينتج	production product producer	إنتاج منتَج منتِج/ القائم على الإنتاج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمى/يقى من	protection	حماية/وقاية	protective	واقٍ
transport	ينقل	transport	نقل/مواصلات	transportable	قابل للنقل

★ - In the past, all houses were constructed of local materials.
- Work has begun on the construction of the new airport.
- Our manager welcomes any constructive suggestions.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
central	مركزي/متوسط	main/basic	additional/extra إضافي
connect	يربط/يصل	link/join	disconnect/divide يفصل/يقسم
construction	إنشاء/تشييد	development/building	disarrangement/destruction عدم ترتيب/تدمير
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert	deny/ignore ينكر/يتجاهل
expansion	توسيع/مد	growth/enlargement	decrease/reduction تقليل/خفض
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	develop/promote	deteriorate/corrupt يتدهور/يفسد
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	bother/disturb	assist/aid يساعد
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/abandon يستبعد
persuade	يقنع	convince/urge	discourage/ prevent يثبط (لا يشجع)
precise	دقيق/محدد	exact/accurate	imprecise/indefinite غير دقيق/غير محدد
protect	يحمي/يقي من	defend/save	destroy/endanger يدمر/يعرض للخطر
total	كلي/إجمالي	complete/whole	partial/ incomplete جزئي

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Egyptian government is carrying out a major .... of the underground systems.
   a) damage b) application c) expansion d) pressure
2. Our company has recently installed the latest .... system that cost a lot of money.
   a) outdated b) degraded c) old-fashioned d) high-tech
3. The motorway .... in Egypt links all the areas in Greater Cairo.
   a) line b) network c) discipline d) authority
4. These advertisements are intended to increase .... awareness of the risks of smoking.
   a) public b) special c) accepted d) awful
5. Modern .... systems have been a severe threat to the environment causing a lot of pollution.
   a) security b) computer c) transport d) education



Check the answers at the end of the book.



What do you think the expansion of Cairo Metro will be?

Cairo Metro network: Expansion work



We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3. This expansion[1] of the Cairo Metro[2] adds seven kilometres and six new stations to our underground network[3].
Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to work faster and more easily because it connects Heliopolis and the central station of Adly Mansour. We expect that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year.

High-tech[4] systems were used to build this 21st Century public transport[5] system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six. We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will connect[6] the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short periods of time.

Although we don't have a precise schedule[7] for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your understanding while the building work is taking place. We hope that you will enjoy using the improved[8] underground network.

(1) تمديد / توسيع
(2) مترو القاهرة
(3) شبكة
(4) ذو تكنولوجيا عالية
(5) النقل العام
(6) يربط / يوصل
(7) جدول
(8) محسن / متطور

Why will they close some metro stations for short periods of time?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

(Public transport) projects for the future

Public transport[1] networks everywhere will improve a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans to create the first public transport connection from both New Administrative City and 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

(1) النقل العام

(2) مترو الأنفاق

(3) نظام

(4) ركاب

The Cairo Monorail will involve the construction of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative City to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. Using the latest technology, the underground[2] Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the suburb of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be high-tech. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel in Australia's history.

The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system[3]. The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along the coast of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers[4] a year.

How do you think people will be able to travel in the future?

Listening Text (1)



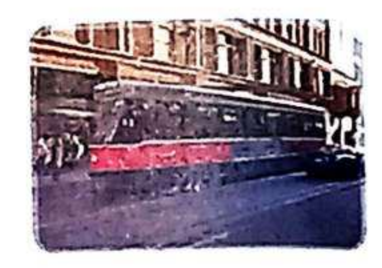
Talk show host : So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two guests. We have Karima, who works for an organisation[1] that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes electric cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?

(1) منظمة
(2) غازات
(3) يتلف
(4) متوفر/متاح
(5) بلا سائق
(6) خاص

Karima : Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases[2] that cars produce are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.



Nadiya : I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that damage[3] the environment. They're very environmentally friendly. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric vehicle.



Karima : I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think that all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.

Talk show host : Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport available[4] to us will have changed completely – don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought driverless[5] cars. What would you say to that?

Nadiya : Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles, because they are a private[6] space. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally friendly.

Talk show host : Karima?

Karima : Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

In your opinion, will private cars disappear in the future? Why? Why not?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Huda : Which is the best way to travel?

Injy : I think the answer is quite clear. Flying.

Huda : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

Injy : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

Huda : Can I just say something here? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

Injy : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hurry up! You must .... in at least one hour before your flight.

a) get b) look
c) apply d) check

2 When she got off the plane, her mother was waiting for her at the airport ....

a) gate b) hole
c) dock d) store

3 The e-mail has largely .... the business letter.

a) placed b) positioned
c) replaced d) reflected

4 One of the main disadvantages of cars is the .... gases which damage the environment.

a) valuable b) polluting
c) effective d) impressive

5 The information about the new vaccine is freely .... on the internet.

a) avoidable b) secret
c) available d) affecting



Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

expansion (n) مد/تمديد/توسيع
- when something increases in size, range, amount, etc.

facilities (n) مرافق
- places or buildings used for a particular activity or industry, or for providing a particular type of service

high-tech (adj) عالى التكنولوجيا
- using high technology

network (n) شبكة
- a system of lines, tubes, wires, roads, etc. that cross each other and are connected to each other

public transport النقل العام
- buses, trains, etc. that are available for everyone to use

Notes on Vocabulary

تستخدم (notice) كاسم بمعان مختلفة

notice ملاحظة/انتباه/اهتمام	This problem may not have received your notice so far.
notice = sign إشعار (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير)	The notice on the wall says 'No smoking'.
notice = warning تحذير من شيء مستقبلي	The authorities closed the factory, giving the workers only a week's notice.
notice = review نقد أو رأى عن فيلم/قصة مطبوعة في جريدة	The new play got mixed notices in the newspapers.

لاحظ أيضا أن (notice) يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يلاحظ)

- He noticed a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.

1

2	**public** عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)	▸ You now have to pay to use the public toilets at the park.
	general عام (غير محدد)	▸ They gave a general description of the new site of the company.
3	**take place** يحدث	▸ *Treasure Island* took place in nineteenth century England.
	take someone's place شخص يحل محل ...	▸ I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad.
4	**electric** كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)	(used about something that works using electricity) ▸ Is your cooker electric or gas?
	electrical كهربائى (يستخدم الكهرباء - يعمل بإنتاج أو تصليح الكهرباء)	(used about things in general that use electricity, or people whose job is to make or repair these things) ▸ I work for a company manufacturing electrical goods. ▸ My uncle works as an electrical engineer.
	electronic إلكترونى (خاصة بالتقنيات الحديثة)	(used about systems or things that work using computers or smartphones) ▸ Most kids love electronic games. ▸ Email is the short word for electronic mail.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six.

- لاحظ استخدام (have + P.P.) بعد الفعل (expect) وليس المصدر كالمعتاد والمعنى هنا (نتوقع أن نكون أكملنا بناء)

▸ We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (enjoy)

- The 50-km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground.

- The 270-km-line will be finished in 2030.

- لاحظ استخدام المفرد بعد العدد وليس الجمع (km) بسبب استخدامه قبل اسم بمعنى الصفة

- The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers.

- استخدمنا (including)

هنا بمعنى (مشتملا على أو متضمنا) وقد تكون اختصارا لضمير وصل تتبعه جملة مبنية للمعلوم فالجملة يمكن أن يكون أصلها

The project involves 10,000 workers who include engineers.

- And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves ....

- لاحظ استخدام (do) مع المصدر فى جملة خبرية للتأكيد على الفعل بمعنى (بالفعل - حقًا)

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I check the hotel list to get a .... idea of what activities to plan.

a) general b) public
c) private d) careful

2 These books are also available in an .... form.

a) electricity b) electric
c) electrical d) electronic

3 The accident received little .... in the national media.

a) note b) notice
c) sign d) signal

4 The satellite signals were affected by an .... storm and lightning.

a) electricity b) electric
c) electrical d) electronic

5 There was a notice on the board saying the class had been cancelled. The word "notice" here means ....

a) attention b) review
c) sign d) observation

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Practice makes perfect!

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The clothes company is planning a great .... of its outlets in Alexandria to sell more.
a) deterioration b) authority c) expansion d) notice

2 The leisure .... in this hotel include a sauna and a gym.
a) authorities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) schedules

3 The machines which the new factory uses are very .... which are the latest in the country.
a) outdated b) central c) public d) high-tech

4 A .... of veins and arteries الأوردة والشرايين carries the blood around the body.
a) transport b) gate c) network d) station

5 By law, smoking is no longer allowed in indoor .... places.
a) general b) public c) private d) available

6 Investment in .... infrastructure has increased greatly in the last few years.
a) transport b) transfer c) transfuse d) transplant

7 The government has the .... to regulate the economy.
a) irresponsibility b) authority c) validity d) expiry

8 The canal was built to .... the city with the port.
a) contact b) communicate c) connect d) create

9 Conditions in hospitals have .... greatly in Egypt in the last few years.
a) proved b) involved c) persuaded d) improved

10 The president's .... includes a two-day visit to a foreign country.
a) column b) speech c) schedule d) seminar

11 The .... cost was far higher than we had expected.
a) vague b) avoidable c) available d) total

12 Vitamin B12 may have a role in .... us from heart disease.
a) hurting b) infecting c) protecting d) healing

13 The report .... the importance of improving safety standards.
a) emphasises b) improvises c) appears d) disrupts

14 The scientists will hold a/an .... of meetings over the next few weeks to discuss the new medicine.
a) team b) amount c) series d) deviation

15 More and more people are moving to the .... of Cairo such as New Cairo City every year.
a) districts b) villages c) shores d) suburbs

16 .... work on the new road is expected to take two years.

a) Construction b) Destruction c) Damage d) Waste

17 The Giza Metro line runs in a .... under the River Nile.

a) funnel b) tunnel c) pipe d) road

18 The young actress's expensive dress and jewellery attracted much .... at the party.

a) review b) notice c) sign d) warning

19 The boy was badly hurt when he had a/an .... shock from one of the sets at the kitchen.

a) electronic b) electrostatic c) electric d) static

20 A .... is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.

a) tunnel b) monorail c) loop d) lane

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Prevention also plays a central role in traditional medicine. The word "central" is similar in meaning to the word "..........".

a) far b) main c) partial d) heavy

22 As he read the reports, the manager .... careful notes about them.

a) ran b) gave c) made d) invented

23 The tourist company's income went .... as a result of the coronavirus pandemic last year.

a) off b) down c) in d) into

24 After a brief .... by the manager, the staff meeting began.

a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

25 The metro lines made it easier to travel .... Greater Cairo and the new suburbs.

a) on b) at c) away d) around

26 Through the national projects, the government plans to .... more jobs for young people.

a) create b) creation c) creator d) creative

27 The test will involve answering questions about a photograph. The verb "involve" can be the opposite to the verb "..........".

a) include b) invent c) exclude d) consist

28 All candidates have to .... a test in language and computer skills.

a) give b) make c) devise d) take

29 The precise cause of the disease is unknown. The synonym of the adjective "precise" is "..........".

a) accurate b) ancient c) written d) imaginary

30 My little brother usually agrees .... my view about spending our free time.

a) for b) at c) in d) with





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

Future perfect
المستقبل التام

Form

Subj. + will have + P.P. ▶ • I will have finished this report by midday.

Negative

Subj. + won't have + P.P. ▶ • I won't have finished this report until 5 o'clock.

Interrogative

will + subj. + have + P.P. ▶ • Will you have typed all these letters by the time the boss arrives?

Passive

Obj. + will have been + P.P. ▶ • Our car will have been repaired by tomorrow.

Usage
الاستخدام

1. **For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future.**
يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد فى المستقبل.
   - By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll have sent all these invitation cards.
   - By next October, the new metro line will have been built.

2. **For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future.**
يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر فى المستقبل.
   - I will have read the book before I return it to the library.
   - By the time my father arrives, I'll have finished my homework.

The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Before, by + فترة فى المستقبل (2100), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time

- My wife won't have finished preparing the lunch till 4 o'clock.
- In a week's time, we'll have finished our exams.

لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل التام.

Future perfect (will have + P.P.)	before, till/until, by the time, by	Present simple Present perfect

- Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.
- By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.

لاحظ

- يستخدم by/by the time/before للتعبير عن حدث سيكتمل قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.
- We will have taken the test by/before June.
- I won't have done all of my homework by the time/before you get home.
- ويستخدم in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time للتعبير عن حدث سيكتمل في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.
- In five years, I will have started work.
- How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?

Extra points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيًا عند استخدامها في صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

وعند استخدام to بعدها نستغنى عن will وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده to have + P.P. وفي المجهول to have been + P.P.

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.	+ to have + P.P. .... معلوم	I expect to have written 3 reports by next week.
want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.	+ to have been + P.P. ... مجهول	I expect 3 reports to have been written by next week.

- By 2030, we expect to have built flats for all people in Egypt.
- We expect to have started building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.
- The food is expected to have been prepared by 6 p.m. today.

Check your understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By this time next week, I .... my test results.
   a) will have received b) will be receiving
   c) will receive d) am going to receive
2. In an hour's time, Ola .... home with her father.
   a) will be reached b) reaches
   c) has reached d) will have reached
3. We want .... into our new house by the end of this month.
   a) will move b) will be moving
   c) to have moved d) will be moved





Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Wake me up by nine o'clock. I .... long enough by then.
a) will sleep
b) will have slept
c) will be sleeping
d) will be slept

2 Phone me after 8 o'clock. We .... dinner by then.
a) will finish
b) will be finishing
c) will have finished
d) have finished

3 Will she .... enough Spanish to communicate before she moves to Madrid?
a) have learnt
b) be learning
c) learn
d) has learnt

4 Rana .... the night shift by the time you get up in the morning.
a) won't be finished
b) won't be finishing
c) won't finish
d) won't have finished

5 Maher .... a good job in Cairo by the time he's twenty-five years old.
a) will get
b) will have got
c) is getting
d) will be got

6 Could you please return in 10 minutes? Your room will .... by then.
a) have been cleaned
b) be cleaned
c) be cleaning
d) have cleaned

7 Our guests are expected to .... by 4 o'clock this afternoon.
a) be arrived
b) have arrived
c) have been arrived
d) will arrive

8 We .... all our needs in a week's time.
a) will buy
b) will have bought
c) going to buy
d) are buying

9 Will my workplace .... when I come to the office tomorrow morning?
a) prepare
b) have been prepared
c) have prepared
d) be preparing

10 It's a big course. We .... it by the time the vacation begins.
a) won't finish
b) won't be finishing
c) won't have finished
d) aren't finishing

11 By the time your children are in university, will e-books .... traditional books?
a) have replacing
b) have replaced
c) replaced
d) have been replaced

12 Call me tomorrow at eleven. I'll know more because the meeting ....
a) will have finished
b) will finish
c) will be finishing
d) won't finish

13 He hopes the conference .... before he arrives because he'd like to hear the final speech.

a) will have ended
b) will end
c) won't have ended
d) won't end

14 I hope a cure for COVID-19 .... by the end of this year.

a) will have been discovered
b) will discover
c) will be discovering
d) will be discovered

15 I .... to sleep before 8 p.m.

a) won't be going
b) will be going
c) will have been gone
d) won't have gone

16 By the time I get home, my wife .... supper.

a) prepares
b) is going to prepare
c) will have prepared
d) will prepare

17 Will he .... the message by the time your flight takes off?

a) have received
b) receive
c) be received
d) has received

18 I took my car to the service centre, but I think it won't .... even by Friday.

a) be fixing
b) be fixed
c) fix
d) have been fixed

19 By 10 o'clock, we .... half the way to Australia.

a) will fly
b) will be flown
c) will have flown
d) are flying

20 By the time I get up in the morning, I .... for 10 hours.

a) will have slept
b) will sleep
c) will be sleeping
d) will be slept

21 I think they .... all of their homework when they go to bed.

a) finish
b) won't have finished
c) have finished
d) are finishing

22 After Dalia .... this test, she will have answered all the exercises in the book.

a) has answered
b) had answered
c) will have answered
d) will be answered

23 Will the documents .... by Thursday?

a) have sent
b) be sending
c) be sent
d) have been sent

24 They .... the expansion of the rail line to the west until 2040.

a) aren't completing
b) complete
c) won't have completed
d) will complete

25 By the time we get to Assuit, we .... for 5 hours.

a) will have driven
b) will drive
c) are driving
d) drive

26 Will he .... all the English verb tenses by tomorrow?

a) be studied
b) has studied
c) be studying
d) have studied

27 In two years' time, I'll be studying medicine, but in five years' time, I .... studying it.

a) will be finished
b) 'll have finished
c) finish
d) will have been finished

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) In two hours' time, I'll be booking the tickets.
b) In two hours' time, I will have booked the tickets.
c) By yesterday, I had booked the tickets.
d) By tomorrow, I'll book the tickets.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) After my father comes home, I'll be doing my homework.
b) After my father comes home, I'll have done my homework.
c) After my father will come home, I will do my homework.
d) I won't have done my homework until my father comes home.

30 One of the following sentences is incorrectly structured.

a) I hope I will pass my driving test next week.
b) I hope I have passed my driving test next week.
c) I hope I will have passed my driving test by next week.
d) I hope to have passed my driving test by next week.

31 By the end of the first term, we .... many English books.

a) shall read
b) will be reading
c) will have read
d) will be read

32 When he reaches his town, he .... 3 kilometers.

a) will have walked
b) will be walking
c) will have been walking
d) will walk

33 I expect .... much experience by the time I'm fifty years old.

a) to have been gained
b) to have gained
c) will gain
d) that I will gain

34 They won't have received the new machine .... next Friday.

a) before b) when c) as soon as d) after

35 By the time he .... his exams, he will have spent 200 days studying.

a) finished b) finishes c) is finishing d) finish

Test Yourself in 20



Unit 8

Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In order to finance .... on transport, the government has relied on local investments.
a) intention b) expansion c) affection d) reduction

2 The hotel has special .... for welcoming disabled people such as lifts and wheelchairs.
a) talents b) gifts c) activities d) facilities

3 The oil company is establishing a .... of pumps and pipelines to move the oil.
a) network b) labour c) discipline d) arrangement

4 The .... date and place of birth of this famous writer are unknown.
a) expected b) hidden c) precise d) indefinite

5 The Olympics take .... every four years in a different city.
a) part b) place c) in d) off

6 This mobile model is relatively نسبيا .... at just 800 pounds.
a) accessible b) unavailable c) avoidable d) affordable

7 The writer's story has been made into a TV .... of three parts.
a) series b) cast c) channel d) podcast

8 The young actress didn't give .... work when she had the baby.
a) in b) at c) off d) up

9 When he finishes his course, he thinks he .... 2000 new English words the end of the month.
a) will have learnt b) learns
c) is going to learn d) will learn

10 By 2040, I think the price of electric cars .... down so much that everyone can buy one.
a) won't go b) will go c) won't have gone d) are going

11 By the end of this week, we hope all the thieves will ....
a) have caught b) have been caught
c) catch d) be catching

12 By the time you get home, I .... the house from top to bottom.
a) will have cleaned b) will be cleaning
c) will clean d) will be cleaned

13 Nancy .... to a new apartment by this time next year.
a) will move b) moves
c) is going to move d) will have moved

14 They .... a new high-tech hospital by the end of next year.

a) will open
b) will have opened
c) will be opening
d) are opening

15 Whatever happens in the future, in ten years, we .... up on driving our own vehicles.

a) won't have given
b) won't be given
c) are giving
d) will be given

16 The writer's new story will .... by the time the Book Fair starts.

a) be printed
b) be printing
c) have printed
d) have been printed

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have lived here since I retired last year. My house has a good, clear view of a lake. It's only about a hundred metres from the lake. The road is between my house and the lake. Now I've never been interested in the lake monster(1), until last Tuesday, I thought it was just a good story to attract tourists. But I've had to change my mind after last Tuesday's experience.

I got up as usual at about 7 and went into my garden. Something attracted my attention(2) to the lake. There was almost no mist(3) that morning, and I could see there was something moving quite fast, going north, in the middle of the lake. It looked like a giant snake, with its head and part of its body above water. It was about thirty metres long. I rushed into the house to get my camera, but when I was back it had gone.

I waited and it appeared again, this time nearer the road and my house. I could see it clearly. I managed to take several photographs of it. They haven't come out very well, but one or two of them show the creature(4) quite clearly. At one point it swam straight(5) towards me, but then a lorry passed on the road and perhaps it heard the noise of the engine because it disappeared again. I reckon the whole incident(6) lasted for about fifteen minutes, because it was a quarter past seven the last time I looked at my watch. I've never seen anything so strange in my life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How long has the writer been retired?

a) A week. b) A month. c) A year. d) Two years.

2 What is there between the house and the lake?

a) Another lake. b) A lorry. c) A monster. d) A road.



(1) وحش (2) انتباه (3) ضباب (4) مخلوق (5) مستقيم (6) حادث

3 The monster disappeared the second time because it ……………… .

a) heard a lorry passing
b) saw the writer
c) saw the camera
d) saw a snake

4 The synonym of the word "reckon" is ……………… .

a) know
b) suppose
c) realise
d) grasp

5 The writer first thought that the monster was a/an ……………… .

a) reality
b) imaginary story
c) non-fiction
d) truth

6 The writer could see the monster because ……………… .

a) there was no mist
b) he got up early
c) the monster moves fast in front of him
d) he was waiting to see it eagerly

7 If you saw a monster one day, you would be ……………… .

a) impressive
b) amazing
c) frightened
d) surprising

8 The writer could take ……………… clear photos of the monster.

a) a lot of
b) several
c) many
d) few

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 The expansion of the underground lines is one of the biggest challenges that Egypt faces nowadays. However, the Egyptians have always proved that they are able to carry out such great projects.

a) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى تواجهها مصر فى الوقت الماضى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه البرامج الكبيرة.

b) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى تواجهها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

c) إن تحديث خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى واجهتها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

d) إن توسيع خدمات مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى تواجهها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على إصلاح مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

2 Egypt hosted a United Nations conference about the world climate last November. Many world leaders and organisations attended it to make serious decisions about the climate change problem.

a) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للطقس فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لإصدار بيانات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.

b) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من المسئولين والمنظمات المحلية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.

c) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لمناقشة قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة الاحتباس الحرارى.

d) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.

3 Private schools and universities can play an important role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than governmental ones.

a) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورا هاما فى تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديها تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

b) لابد أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورا هاما فى تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديها رأسمال أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

c) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الدولية دورا هاما فى تطوير التعليم تعطيل قدرات الطلاب فلديها تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

d) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورا ثانويا فى تطوير التعلم تعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديها تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم فى كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية؛ لذلك يجب البحث عن حلول لها.

a) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles of development and progress in few world countries, especially developed ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.

b) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles of investment and progress in many world countries, generally developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.

c) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles of development and progress in many world countries, especially developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.

d) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles of development and progress in many world communities, especially developing ones. So, we may look for solutions to them.

2 تولى الحكومة أولوية كبرى لمشروعات النقل العام؛ وذلك لأنها أحد أهم الطرق لمكافحة التلوث، لكن تلك المشروعات تتطلب استثمارات كبيرة ووقتا طويلا لتنفيذها.

a) The government gives great priority to the projects of general transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight population. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.

b) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.

c) The government takes great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big treatment and a long time to carry out.

d) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the least important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects develop big investments and a long time to carry out.

2 حماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن فى مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط، فعلينا جميعنا أن نشارك فى ذلك ولو حتى بحملات التوعية.

a) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monuments officials. We all should take part in this even through awareness campaigns.

b) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monuments managers. We all should take part in this even through awareness companies.

c) Predicting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the environment and monuments officials. We all should take part in this even through awareness campaigns.

d) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a tour done only by the government and monuments offices. We all should take part in this even through awareness campaigns.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Ways to help the people with a disability or people with special needs to be useful citizens."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the punctu...




Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	possible (adj)	ممكن
convenient (adj)	مناسب	provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	respond (v) (ed)	يرد/يستجيب
effect (n)	تأثير	satisfactory (adj)	مُرضٍ
governorate (n)	محافظة	solution (n)	حل
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	style (n)	أسلوب
issue (n)*	قضية	timetable (n)	جدول المواعيد

* The famous doctor spoke on the issue of private healthcare in her last programme.

Vocabulary on Listening

alternative (n) (adj)	بديل	pause (v) (d) (n)	يصمت/صمت
argument (n)	جدال	point (n)	نقطة/رأى
environmentally-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	popularity (n)	شهرة/ذيوع
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	significant (adj)	هام/ذو مغزى
flying vehicle (n)	مركبة طائرة	stress (n) (v) (ed)	ضغط/يضغط/يؤكد على
impossible (adj)	مستحيل		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

appropriate (adj)	مناسب/ملائم	disability (n)	إعاقة
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	lead (v)	يقود/يؤدى
decrease (v) (d)	ينخفض/يقل	level (n)	مستوى

planet (n)	كوكب	region (n)	إقليم
playground (n)	ملعب	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
present (adj)	حالى		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at least	على الأقل	make ... better	يجعله ... أفضل
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	on behalf of	بالنيابة
keep in mind	يتذكر/يبقى فى ذهنه	point of view	وجهة نظر
alternative to	بديل لـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
arrive at	يصل إلى	possible for	ممكن لـ
decrease in	تقليل فى	respond to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision provider	تزويد مقدم/موفر	provisional	مؤقت
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
satisfy★	يرضى/يقنع	satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	satisfactory satisfied	مُرضٍ راضٍ
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مضغوط مجهد
conclude	يختم/يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة/استنتاج	concluding	ختام/مستنتج

★ - The company was unable to satisfy demand for the product.
- Good people find satisfaction in helping others.
- Although my son didn't get full marks, his exam results were satisfactory.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation الزام
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable غير مناسب
grateful	شاكر/ممتن	appreciative/thankful	ungrateful/rude غير ممتن/وقح
present	حالى	current/existing	distant/previous بعيد/سابق
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply/present	deprive يحرم
respond	يرد/يستجيب	answer/reply	question/request يستجوب/يطلب
satisfactory	مُرضٍ	sufficient/adequate	inappropriate/unsatisfactory غير مرضٍ/غير مناسب
significant	هام/ذو مغزى	important/noteworthy	insignificant/unimportant غير هام

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The menu at this restaurant offers several vegetarian .... for people who don't eat meat or fish.
   a) affections b) alternatives c) attentions d) attributes
2. Many people in Alexandria say that fish is a/an .... part of their diet.
   a) useless b) poisonous c) significant d) valueless
3. There was a big .... about whether they should build the new factory near the park or not.
   a) argument b) arrangement c) replacement d) involvement
4. The teacher asked a question, but the student didn't ....
   a) learn b) refer c) prefer d) respond
5. My parents are .... buying a new car because our old car always breaks down.
   a) availing b) reminding c) considering d) assisting



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Do you think that young people can have a role in solving transport problems? Why? Why not?



Dear Sir or Madam,

A I am writing on behalf[1] of myself and the other students in my class at school.

B We would be very grateful if the governorate would consider organising the expansion to our town's public transport network. The current network is not satisfactory[2] because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.

C I have done some research and some children arrive at school much earlier[3] than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.

D I would suggest that the governorate office either provides more buses at the time when students travel to school or it changes the bus timetable so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes earlier.

E I would be very happy to discuss this issue further at any time that would be convenient[4]. Then we could discuss which solution(s) would be possible for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond[5] to this email.

Yours faithfully,

Sara Abdelaziz

(1) بالنيابة
(2) مُرضٍ
(3) مبكرًا
(4) مناسب/ملائم
(5) يرد/يستجيب

What do you think of the solution Sara offered to solve the problem?

Reading Text (2) Workbook

I'd like to make the argument[1] that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because there will be lots of inexpensive and environmentally -friendly[2] forms of public transport. Another significant point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives[3] to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and cycle. It's important to keep in mind that these ways of travelling will lead to a significant[4] decrease in levels of pollution.

(1) جدال
(2) صديق للبيئة
(3) بدائل
(4) هام / ذو مغزى

Reading Text (3) Workbook

Join us to help your community!

We are a group of volunteers who are working for the local government and we help out with local problems. Would you like to work with us?

Our present project is improving the local playgrounds. These are great places for local families, but some of the equipment is not good enough.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is safe and fun to use for children of all ages.

We will be at the town hall all day on Tuesday 6th July. Come and join us at a time that is good for you!

Is the car your favourite means of transport? Why? Why not?



Listening Text

Presenter: I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050. The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere, everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard – perhaps impossible[1] – to imagine that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

مستحيل (1)
نقطة/رأي (2)
مركبات طائرة (3)
شهرة/شيوع (4)
يتوقع (5)

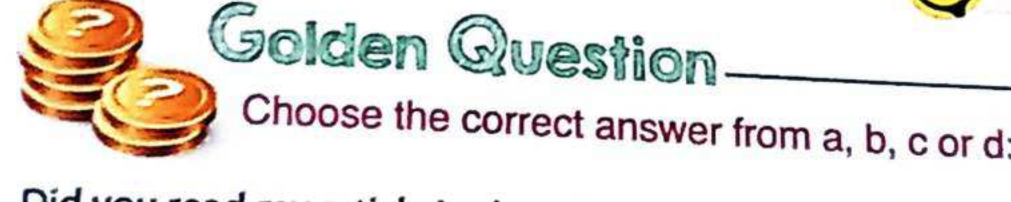
Another very significant point[2] that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles[3] by 2030, but I doubt that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally friendly. Just look at the popularity[4] of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect[5] that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.

In the presenter's opinion, why aren't there alternatives to cars?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many experts warn of the bad effects of the .... of violent video games on children and young people.
   a) ability
   b) popularity
   c) exploration
   d) avoidance
2. I .... to do well on the exam. I have studied very hard.
   a) refuse
   b) accept
   c) expect
   d) reject
3. The spokesman .... for drinking some water before continuing his speech.
   a) acquired
   b) offered
   c) called
   d) paused
4. Mild exercises and relaxation can help you reduce the .... of daily life.
   a) stress
   b) amusement
   c) pleasure
   d) cost
5. Hyundai has plans to show its first .... vehicle that could be seen in the sky in a few years.
   a) steam
   b) flying
   c) revised
   d) explored

Check the answers at the end of the book.



Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

– Did you read my article in the weekly .... of "Al-Ahram"?
   a) conclusion
   b) issue
   c) style
   d) timetable

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

alternatives بدائل
- describing things you do or use instead of something else

argument جدال
- the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong

environmentally friendly صديق للبيئة
- when something is not bad for nature

significant هام/ذو مغزى
- important

Notes on Vocabulary

1

effect تأثير (يتبعه حرف الجر on/of)
- Burning petrol and gas has a bad effect on the environment.

affect يؤثر على (لا يتبعه حرف جر)
- Burning petrol and gas affects the environment badly.

2

pause صمت/توقف شخص عن الكلام أو فعل شيء (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)
- There was a short pause before the minister continued his speech.

silence صمت/سكوت (لفترة طويلة)
- Nothing disturbed the silence of the night.

hesitation تردد (التوقف عن الحديث/فعل شيء لعدم الاطمئنان أو التأكد)
- After some minutes of hesitation, we continued our way through the forest.

3

present (adj) حاضر/حالي/موجود
- Carbon dioxide is one of the harmful gases present in the Earth's atmosphere.

present (n) هدية
- I was given this book as a present from my father.

present (v) يقدم
- The computer centre presented a cheque for £500 to cancer research.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... some children arrive at school much earlier than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.

- لاحظ استخدام (much) قبل صفة المقارنة (earlier) للدلالة على الدرجة الكبيرة فى المقارنة بمعنى (بكثير)

- Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond to this email.

- لاحظ استخدام (Should + subj. + inf.) فى بداية الجملة بديلًا لأداة الربط (If) للتعبير عن الشرط فى الحالة الأولى

- ...., because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives to using trains and buses, too.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) وليس المصدر بعد (to) لاستخدامها كحرف جر بمعنى (لـ).

- Our present project is improving the local playgrounds.

- لاحظ استخدام (improving) بعد الفعل (is) كمفعول بمعنى (تحسين).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We do not have much information about the earthquake at the .... time.
a) central b) present c) presented d) gifted

2 The group finished their meal in total .... after hearing the bad news.
a) rejoice b) pause c) hesitation d) silence

3 Eating junk food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.
a) affect b) effect c) infect d) defect

4 Your opinion will not .... my decision about joining university.
a) affect b) effect c) infect d) defect



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 We do not .... this film suitable for young children as it has many violent scenes.
a) consider b) accept c) pause d) lead

2 My secretary will call you to arrange a/an .... time to meet.
a) crowded b) convenient c) extensive d) unsuitable

3 There are twenty-seven .... in Egypt, and Cairo is the biggest one.
a) governors b) regions c) governorates d) districts

4 I'm so .... for all the help and support my family gave me.
a) ungrateful b) convenient c) reliable d) grateful

5 The conference discussed a number of important environmental .... such as global warming.
a) governorates b) conclusions c) reasons d) issues

6 The exhibition .... an opportunity for local artists to show their work.
a) responds b) provides c) prevents d) pauses

7 Sameer got .... grades and was offered a place at university.
a) grateful b) inexpensive c) satisfactory d) unsuitable

8 There are no simple .... to the problem of overpopulation.
a) effects b) issues c) solutions d) timetables

9 The defender's aggressive عدوانى .... of play sometimes gets him in trouble.
a) point b) popularity c) attack d) style

10 We worked very hard for four hours without a .... to complete the report.
a) pause b) silence c) trouble d) state

11 Please, inform us if there are any .... changes in your plans.
a) sighted b) available c) significant d) useless

12 Many children with mild .... are integrated with general education.
a) arguments b) conclusions c) reasons d) disabilities

13 The water should be treated to reduce the .... of pollution in it.
a) steps b) grades c) levels d) ranks

14 The rainforests are important .... habitats for animals of many kinds.
a) humans b) wildlife c) biology d) crop

15 The memory of her brother's death is still .... in her mind.
a) present b) current c) dead d) available

16 This tropical forest .... is characterized by frequent heavy rainfall.

a) district b) planet c) region d) level

17 All energy companies are seeking .... to fossil fuels.

a) relatives b) representatives c) preservatives d) alternatives

18 I think it is more .... to use a calculator, rather than adding the numbers yourself.

a) considered b) appropriate c) arranged d) moved

19 Egypt plays an important role to achieve peace in the Middle East ....

a) district b) planet c) region d) land

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20 The drug has had no significant effect on the disease. The antonym of the adjective "significant" is ....

a) aspired b) appropriate c) suitable d) unimportant

21 You must .... in mind that the price does not include flights.

a) take b) give c) keep d) miss

22 The government announced a 25% decrease .... the price of fuel.

a) out b) about c) for d) in

23 On .... of the department, I would like to thank you all.

a) account b) behalf c) expense d) grade

24 There is real .... in helping other people to overcome their problems.

a) satisfy b) satisfied c) satisfactory d) satisfaction

25 Michael didn't respond to any of her emails. The synonym of the verb "respond" is ....

a) send b) reply c) receive d) question

26 Customer service department try to be .... to the needs of the customer.

a) respond b) response c) responsive d) responded

27 Eating too much sugar can lead .... health problems.

a) in b) to c) at d) away

28 We have a limited amount of money to spend, and we need to .... that in mind while we're planning our holiday.

a) keep b) change c) design d) damage

29 Some scientists are planning to .... some research into the genetic causes of the disease.

a) carry b) run c) make d) do

30 Solar energy is a safe alternative to fossil fuels such as oil and gas. The word "alternative" is similar in meaning to "..........".

a) mission b) obligation c) necessity d) substitute



Lessons 3 & 4

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar



B Language

Future perfect (extra points)

- الجملة التي بعد الروابط الزمنية لا يستخدم فيها المستقبل من أي نوع ولكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام

NOT

- I am going to travel when I have finished my studies.
- I am going to travel when I ~~will have finished~~ my studies.

- إذا كان الحدث لن يقع في المستقبل بل ستكون بدايته بحلول وقت معين نستخدم المستقبل البسيط وليس التام
- By 2050, most drivers will use solar energy in their cars.
- In 10 years' time, robots will do everything instead of man.

- عند استخدام for مع التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل التام فيكون الزمن مستقبل تام مستمر مثل:
- By next week, I'll have been living here for 10 years.
- When he comes, I'll have been waiting here for 2 hours.

- ولكن إذا كان الفعل stative فنستخدم المستقبل التام فقط مثل:
- By next October, I'll have been a teacher for 30 years.
- By next week, I'll have had this mobile phone for 3 years.

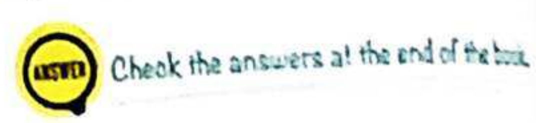
- ومع الأفعال الآتية work, live, learn, study, stay يمكن استخدام المستقبل التام أو التام المستمر.
- By next week, I'll have lived here for 10 years.

Check Point 4



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By five o'clock tonight, he .... for 3 hours.
   a) will have been driving b) will have driven
   c) will drive d) had driven
2. By next June, I .... to Spain.
   a) will be going b) will go c) will have gone d) am going to go
3. How many cities will you have visited by the time you ....?
   a) are retiring b) will have retired c) will retire d) retire
4. By next month, he .... a teacher for 20 years.
   a) will have been being b) will have been
   c) is d) has been
5. I will have been in Tokyo for three months before you .... us.
   a) have joined b) joined c) will have joined d) will join



Future forms (Revision)

1) Will

Usage الاستخدام

Usage	Examples
Future facts حقائق المستقبل	▸ Tomorrow will be 28 February, 2023.
Prediction without evidence التنبؤ بدون دليل	▸ It will rain tomorrow. ▸ I think you will pass the test.
On-the-spot decision قرار فورى	▸ This bag is nice. I'll buy it.
With sure, think, expect, hope, probably, perhaps, promise, predict	▸ I'm sure my father will buy me a new mobile. ▸ He will probably come early tomorrow. ▸ I promise you that I'll phone you tonight.
Hoped, thought + would	▸ I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
Offer العرض يكون جملة خبرية	▸ Since you are ill, I'll clean the room for you.
Request الطلب	▸ Will you fetch me my umbrella, please?
Warning التحذير	▸ If you don't study hard, you won't get high marks.
Threat التهديد	▸ I'll punish you if you insult your friend again.
Promise + to + inf.	▸ I have promised them to come early tonight.

2) Be going to

Usage الاستخدام

Usage	Examples
Prediction with evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شىء يرى)	▸ The wall is moving. It's going to fall. ▸ He is driving fast. I think he is going to have an accident.
مع أفعال مثل: **Decide, intend, plan**	▸ She's decided that she is going to buy a new dress.
Ambitions الطموحات	▸ I'm going to be a doctor. This is my ambition.

Look out! Be careful! Watch out! دلالة على قرب حدوث الفعل	Look out! The dog is going to bite you. Be careful! The wall is going to fall.
Be careful + will تحذير من شيء ربما يحدث	Be careful and save money or you will suffer in summer.
Be careful + present cont. التحذير من شيء يحدث بالفعل	Be careful! A car is coming.

3 Future continuous

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
will (won't) + be + v. ing	التكوين
may (may not) + be + v. ing	في الاحتمال نستخدم may
	يعبر عن حدث سوف يستمر لفترة في المستقبل.
At + وقت في المستقبل	I'll be watching the final match at 7 pm tomorrow.
From ... to + وقت في المستقبل	From 3 to 5 tomorrow, I'll be visiting my relatives.
This time + وقت في المستقبل	This time next week, we will be travelling to Luxor.
In + مدة + time	In a week's time, Ali will be sitting for the final exam.
All ... + وقت في المستقبل	You have a lot of homework. You will be doing it all day tomorrow.
A routine in the future	Don't invite Samy by phone. I'll be meeting him tomorrow.
	المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر للأحداث المرتبة في المستقبل.
Future continuous	I'll be meeting my old friends tomorrow.
Present continuous	I'm meeting my old friends tomorrow.
	إذا كان الحدث يستمر في المستقبل ولا يكون مرتبًا نستخدم المستقبل المستمر فقط.
Future continuous	Don't phone me after 11 p.m. I'll be sleeping. النوم لا يرتب

4 Present simple

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + v + s, es, or ies
You, We, They, اسم جمع + inf.

التكوين

Usage الاستخدام

Usage		Examples
Timetables	جداول المواعيد	▸ The plane reaches London at 9 p.m.
	بعد الروابط الدالة على المستقبل	▸ Before the police arrive, I'll leave everything as it is. ▸ After he finishes his work, he will help me. ▸ When she writes the reports, she will give them to her boss.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- The sky is cloudy. It ....

a) will rain
b) will be raining
c) is raining
d) is going to rain

الإجابة (d) لأن هناك دليل على حدوث الفعل فى الجملة فنستخدم .be going to + inf

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train from Aswan .... at Giza Station at 12:30.
   a) will have arrived
   b) arrives
   c) will arrive
   d) will be arriving
2. We .... dinner at a seaside restaurant next Sunday.
   a) will have had
   b) will have been having
   c) are going to have
   d) have
3. I promise Ali that I .... him with his homework.
   a) will help
   b) am helping
   c) will have helped
   d) would help
4. When you get off the train, I .... for you by the ticket machine.
   a) will be waited
   b) will be waiting
   c) wait
   d) am waiting
5. It's arranged. Ali .... for Paris next Friday.
   a) leaves
   b) will have left
   c) will leave
   d) is leaving

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She .... her exams by 6 o'clock, so we can go out for dinner.
a) will finish b) is finishing
c) will have finished d) is going to finish

2 Do you think you .... children by the time you are 30?
a) will have b) will have had
c) are going to have d) are having

3 When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.
a) show b) will be showing
c) will have shown d) will show

4 By the time he gets home, she .... the entire house.
a) will have cleaned b) will be cleaned
c) will have been cleaning d) will have been cleaned

5 We will wait at the station room until the train ....
a) will come b) came c) had come d) comes

6 Will lunch .... by the time we arrive?
a) eat b) be eating c) have been eaten d) have eaten

7 They .... the new Desert City centre by 2030.
a) will establish b) are establishing
c) establish d) will have established

8 I'm going to be a very rich man. I'm sure by the time I'm forty, I .... my first million.
a) will be making b) will make c) will have made d) have made

9 After Ahmed finishes this game, he .... 6 computer games.
a) will be playing b) will have played
c) will be played d) is playing

10 A new bridge will .... over the Nile by next year.
a) be built b) be building c) have been built d) have built

11 I .... this test by 3 o'clock.
a) won't finish b) am going to finish
c) won't be finishing d) will have finished

12 I .... my friend at 8 o'clock on Friday.
a) am meeting b) meet c) will have met d) will be me[et]

13 You're carrying too much. I .... the door for you.
a) won't open
b) will open
c) will have opened
d) will be opening

14 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.
a) had finished
b) will finish
c) have finished
d) will have finished

15 This time next week, I .... for my first exam!
a) will be sitting
b) sat
c) will sit
d) will have sat

16 By this time tomorrow, we .... all the furniture in the basement القبو.
a) are going to put
b) will put
c) are putting
d) will have put

17 "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation to the sentence is ....
a) request
b) offer
c) promise
d) threat

18 Experts believe that by 2050 most people .... electric vehicles.
a) will buy
b) will have bought
c) will be buying
d) are buying

19 I came to live in Spain in 2014. Next year, I .... here for ten years.
a) won't be
b) will be
c) will be being
d) will have been

20 By 2050, half of the world .... English and communicate well with each other.
a) will speak
b) will have been spoken
c) will be spoken
d) is speaking

21 Do you think more people .... to use public transport in twenty years' time?
a) will have decided
b) will be decided
c) are deciding
d) will be deciding

22 I promise to .... these three pages by the time you come back home.
a) will have translated
b) will translate
c) have translated
d) translate

23 By the time the new product goes on sale, the company .... over 10 million dollars on promotion.
a) will be spent
b) will spend
c) will have spent
d) will be spending

24 Don't phone me tonight. I .... for my French exam.
a) study
b) will be studying
c) will study
d) will have studied

25 In three years' time, most cars in Egypt .... on natural gas or solar energy.
a) are running
b) will have been run
c) will be run
d) will run

26 "Our team will probably win the game tomorrow." The right situation for the sentence is ....

a) prediction b) request c) warning d) promise

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) This time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
c) By yesterday, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
d) Before tomorrow, I've cleaned the whole house.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) By this time next year, I'll be learning Spanish at university.
b) Next week, I'll be learning 3 languages in addition to English.
c) In two years' time, I will be studying Spanish at university.
d) This time next year, I'll have visited my uncle in Alex.

29 One of the following sentences is incorrectly structured:

a) The door is closed. Shall I open it for you?
b) As the door is closed, I'll open it for you.
c) The door is closed. Will you open it for me?
d) As the door is closed, I'll be opening it for you.

30 One of the following sentences is incorrectly structured:

a) When Leila finishes her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
b) After Leila has finished her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
c) After Leila had finished her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
d) After Leila had finished her homework, we started to have dinner.

31 I'm taking the umbrella. It .... rain.

a) should b) must c) may d) has to

32 You can't leave the table until you .... your dinner.

a) finish b) will finish c) had finished d) finished

33 .... you get here, I will have finished watching the movie.

a) After b) Until c) By the time d) Afterwards

34 Before next June, he .... a new job.

a) will have been joined b) joins
c) will have joined d) had joined

35 "Will" can't be used with ....

a) offer in its interrogative form b) on-the-spot decision
c) prediction without evidence d) warning and threat

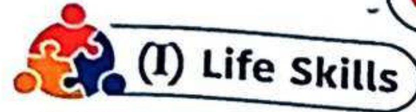




Lessons 3 & 4



C Communication Skills



(I) Life Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات برجاء
الرجوع لملحق المعلومات

Communication: Problem solving

Problem-solving skills are an important part of our lives. In a managerial set up, most of the work is problem centric. Problem-solving skills are, thus, important in the workplace.

Skills for Problem Solving

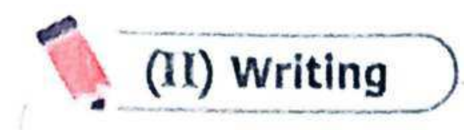
Different problems require a different set of skills to be solved. For example, solving a problem for a client requires not just knowledge, but also good verbal, listening and persuasion skills. Solving a problem within the organisation with other employees require teamwork, coordination and effective communication among them. Hence, to improve problem-solving skills there needs to be effective communication and understanding of the situation.

Efficient Methods of Problem Solving

Problem-solving skills can be improved in many ways. There are four basic steps to efficient problem solving in any situation. They are:

1. Defining and understanding the problem is the first step to problem solving. It is important to look deeper into the problem beyond what might seem like the obvious.
2. Now that the core of the problem has been identified, we need to search for alternative solutions to fix the problem. The aim is to find the most efficient and rational solution that is agreeable to all the parties involved.
3. Once all the alternatives are considered, we need to evaluate each and every single alternative, so that we can come to a conclusion by selecting the most rational solution. Selecting the solution also requires the opinion of the employees and staff, what they consider to be the best option and how the executives in higher positions would react to it.
4. Executing the solution requires the leadership of the manager and good and efficient coordination and communication with all the employees and entities. The problem will be directly handled at this stage and efforts will be made to change it.

References: https://edgearticles.com/2018/07/09/public-transport-advantages-and-disadvantages-of-public-transport/
https://www.communicationtheory.org/improving-problem-solving-skills/



A blog post

- **You work with a group of volunteers helping the society. Write a post asking for volunteers.**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Say what your group does to help in the area.
- Describe what issues you want to improve.
- Say how you want to do this.



We are a group of volunteers who are working with the local authority which looks after the river and canals in our town. We also help out with other local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is removing the rubbish from the river and canals near our town. These are important for getting drinking water and for agriculture. However, there is a lot of rubbish in them and this is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to clean the river. We raised enough money for the equipment we will use and for hiring special vehicles to take the rubbish to landfill sites. We just need some young men and women to help us do the work.

We will be at the town youth hostel all day on Friday 3rd March. Come and join us at a time that is convenient.



Test Yourself in 20




Unit 8
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Flying is the most .... way to travel in such a large country as China.
a) minor b) convenient c) doubtful d) expected

2 The authority was seeking the best .... to the city's traffic problem.
a) evolution b) solution c) devotion d) deterioration

3 Children have different .... of learning: some learn by seeing, some by hearing, and some by acting.
a) curricula b) grades c) styles d) recipes

4 Because of his ...., John depended on his wife to dress and feed him.
a) strength b) skill c) talent d) disability

5 We had a/an .... about what we should buy for our mother's birthday.
a) argument b) regret c) account d) settlement

6 It is believed that every new system has its good .... and its drawbacks.
a) paints b) views c) points d) revisions

7 The old bridge is closed for .... of safety until it can be repaired.
a) routines b) recipes c) results d) reasons

8 Mona spoke on .... of the first year student at the college party.
a) account b) behalf c) expense d) grade

9 If you don't have a car, wait and I .... you to the station.
a) am driving b) drive c) will drive d) will have driven

10 After you .... a nap غفوة, you will feel a lot better.
a) have taken b) took c) will take d) will have taken

11 I .... all of the books on the list by the end of the year.
a) will read b) read c) am reading d) will have read

12 Do you think you .... to drive in five years' time?
a) will have learnt b) will be learnt c) are learning d) learn

13 **A:** Where is Judy? **B:** She won't be here .... 8 o'clock.
a) after b) until c) by the time d) on

14 Hopefully, by this time next week, I .... my driving test and I'll finally be able to get a car.
a) will pass b) will have passed c) have passed d) will be passing

15 We expect .... building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.
a) will start b) to be started
c) we will be starting d) to have started

16 Once this room is finished, we .... six of the seven rooms in the house. Not bad for two days' work.

a) will be painting
b) will paint
c) will have painted
d) are painting

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people who are looking for a pet dog get a puppy. Puppies are cute[1], friendly, and playful[2]. But there are good reasons why you should consider getting an adult dog instead.

You have to teach a puppy how to behave. The puppy is housebroken. You have to teach the puppy not to jump up on your guests or chew[3] on your shoes. This is a lot of work.

On the other hand, an adult dog will already know how to do all of the previously mentioned[4] things. Many adult dogs have already been housebroken. Many adult dogs will not jump on or chew things that you do not want them to jump on or chew. Puppies also have a lot of energy and want to play all of the time. Puppies will not always sleep through the night or let you relax as you watch television.

On the other hand, most adult dogs will wait on you to play. What is more, they will sleep when you are sleeping and are happy to watch television on the couch right beside you.

There is one last reason why you should get an adult dog instead of a puppy. When most people go to the pound[5] to get a dog, they get a puppy. This means that many adult dogs spend a lot of time in the pound, and some never find good homes. So if you are looking to get a dog for a pet, you should think about getting an adult dog. They are good pets who need good homes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The author thinks that puppies are ....

a) bad pets because they take too much work to own
b) friendly, playful, and a lot of work
c) not as cute as adult dogs
d) not as playful as adult dogs

2 As used in paragraph 2, which is the best synonym for "behave"?

a) To listen. b) To understand. c) To train. d) To act.



(1) ظريف
(2) لعوب/ملاعب
(3) يمضغ
(4) المذكور مسبقًا
(5) حظيرة

3 Based on information in the passage, which of the following statements is false?

a) Puppies have a lot of energy.

b) Puppies need a lot of attention.

c) Many people get a puppy as a pet.

d) Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.

4 The phrase "On the other hand" is used to ....

a) contrast previous information

b) support the upcoming paragraph

c) highlight an example

d) contradict a later statement

5 Why should you get an adult dog instead of a puppy? Because ....

a) puppies always sleep through the night

b) puppies don't need to learn how to walk nicely on a leash

c) adult dogs have less energy than puppies do

d) adult dogs jump on and chew things

6 It's clear that the writer of the article ....

a) prefers puppies to adult dogs

b) prefers adult dogs to puppies

c) prefers to get both of them at a time

d) doesn't like pet dogs

7 According to the passage, puppies can cause troubles unless they are ....

a) small b) cute c) sleep d) trained

8 Dogs always have names like ....

a) people b) students c) animals d) lions

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Modern technology plays an important role in the field of transport. Fast trains, monorails, and flying vehicles are examples of what transport will be like in the future.

a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى مجال التنقل. القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والأطباق الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

b) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى مجال النقل. القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

c) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا ثانويا فى مجال النقل. القطارات السريعة والسفن الحربية والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

d) تلعب تكنولوجيا المعلومات دورًا مهمًا فى مجال النقل. وسائل النقل السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

2 Egypt was the first country outside Europe to win the Men's Youth World Handball Championship in 2019. That's why the team was honoured by the President.

a) كانت مصر أول دولة خارج أوروبا تفوز ببطولة العالم لكرة اليد للشـباب للرجال عام ٢٠١٩. لهذا السـبب تم تكريم الفريق من قبل الرئيس.

b) كانت مصر أول دولة خارج أوروبا تشارك فى بطولة العالم لكرة السلة للشباب للرجال عام ٢٠١٩. لهذا السبب تم تكريم الفريق من قبل الرئيس.

c) كانت مصر أول دولة خارج أوروبا تفوز ببطولة أوروبا لكرة اليد للشباب للرجال عام ٢٠١٩. لهذا السبب سيتم تكريم الفريق من قبل الرئيس.

d) كانت مصر أول دولة داخل أوروبا تفوز ببطولة العالم لكرة اليد للشـباب للرجال عام ٢٠١٩. لهذا السـبب تم تكريم المؤسسة من قبل الرئيس.

3 The government has built one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam when the project is complete.

a) قامـت الحكومـة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الضوئية فى أسـوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى قبل اكتمال المشروع.

b) ستقوم الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أهم محطات الطاقة الشمسية فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

c) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات توليد الطاقة فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج ما يزيد على ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

d) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسـية فى أسـوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمارات فى البحث العلمى لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره. ذلك سيساعد المجتمع للاستفادة من نتائجه.

a) Big institutions/foundations should invest in science research to help the public develop it. This will help the society to benefit from its results.

b) Big institutions/foundations should invest in scientific research to help the government develop it. This will help the society to benefit from its results.

c) Big institutions/foundations should invest in scientific search to help the government develop it. This will help the association to benefit from its results.

d) Big institutions/foundations should provide in scientific research to help the environment develop it. This will help the society to benefit from its results.

2 تؤكد الحكومة دائما على دور الشباب في تنمية البلاد ومن أجل ذلك يتم تعيين العديد منهم كمساعدين للوزراء والمحافظين.

a) The government always asserts the role of the youth in developing the country. Therefore, many of them are appointed as assistants for ministers and governors.

b) The government always sorts the role of the youth in developing the country. Therefore, many of them are pointed as assistants for ministers and governors.

c) The government sometimes asserts the role of the youth in developing the country. Therefore, many of them are appointed as assistants for ministers and governorates.

d) The government always asserts the rule of the youth in developing the country. However, many of them are appointed as assistants for ministers and governors.

3 تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذين تهددهما النزاعات التي تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

a) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are frightened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, generally the Middle East.

b) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are threatened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.

c) World countries search for peace and stability which are threatened by the changes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.

d) World countries look forward to peace and capability which are threatened by the disputes which published in many parts of the world, especially the far East.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Ways to solve the traffic problem in Egypt"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



King Lear
Act IV, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

beggar	متسول/شحاذ	lose	يخسر
bleed	ينزف	nearby	قريب
bring	يحضر	pretend	يتظاهر
cliff	منحدر صخرى	remind	يذكر
evil	شر/شرير	rule	يحكم
hide	يخفى/يختبئ	storm	عاصفة
hold	يمسك/يثبت	sword	سيف
kingdom	مملكة	thoughts	أفكار
lead	يقود		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

fall apart	يتداعى/يصبح مهترئًا	make ..... mad	يجعل... مجنونا
call out	يصرخ	good to	جيد مع
hungry for power	راغب فى السلطة	angry with	غاضب من

King Lear Exercises

Act IV, Scenes i-iii

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Standing at the edge of the ...., we watched the waves crash on the shore far below.
a) road b) avenue c) cliff d) desert

2 A .... is a large wild animal of the cat family that has orange fur with black stripes which mainly lives in Asia.
a) tiger b) lion c) wolf d) crocodile

3 The prince who killed his brother to be king was really hungry .... power.
a) with b) at c) in d) for

4 The hikers will .... by the river for the night, and move on tomorrow.
a) fight b) camp c) leave d) distract

5 The accident victim was .... from a cut in his head.
a) revealing b) breathing c) treating d) bleeding

6 Poverty is probably the greatest social .... of all times.
a) demand b) act c) evil d) moral

7 The poor worker had to get some rest or she was going to .... apart.
a) feel b) fall c) fill d) fool

8 The little child closed his eyes and .... to be asleep.
a) pretended b) protected c) prevented d) protested

9 It is believed that Alexander the Great .... over a huge empire.
a) destroyed b) ruled c) owned d) disputed

10 The sky got dark and it looked like a .... was coming.
a) fight b) shadow c) storm d) war

11 A .... is someone who lives by asking people for food and money.
a) worker b) digger c) diver d) beggar

12 My little sister used to .... her toys under the bed.
a) break b) hide c) show d) prove

13 I had to move to a new house and leave my parents in a .... town.
a) desert b) fictional c) nearly d) nearby

14 This song .... me of our wedding day as it was played at the party repeatedly.
a) remembers b) rejoices c) reminds d) mentions

15 The player picked up the cup to .... it over his head for a special photo.
a) hold b) throw c) fix d) damage



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 These books are also available in an .... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.
a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic

2 The Suez Canal .... is responsible for running and developing it.
a) Responsibility b) Authority c) Validity d) Expiry

3 Egypt has a lot of sports .... which make it able to host international competitions.
a) probabilities b) accessibilities c) facilities d) availabilities

4 Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very ....
a) public b) private c) special d) general

5 Egypt is going to develop transport completely .... the next ten years.
a) on b) for c) about d) over

6 There are no plans to build more houses in the desert at the present time.
The antonym of the adjective "present" is ....
a) previous b) informal c) current d) main

7 I don't think you .... any problems when you land in Cairo.
a) have b) won't have c) will have d) aren't having

8 By the time he ...., Tamer will have taken all the necessary classes.
a) graduates
b) is going to graduate
c) graduated
d) will graduate

9 By this time next month, I hope they .... the community centre مركز مجتمعى.
a) will be building
b) have built
c) will build
d) will have built

10 We are already building a new shopping centre and we .... it by 2024.
a) will have completed
b) are completing
c) complete
d) will be completing

11 You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she ....
a) won't leave b) will leave c) will have left d) is leaving

12 Do you think you .... writing that report by the time I get back?

a) will finish
b) will have finished
c) will be finishing
d) are finishing

13 By next month, I will .... him for five years and I think he is reliable enough.

a) know
b) be knowing
c) have been knowing
d) have known

14 The project is going to .... before the deadline.

a) have been completed
b) be completing
c) complete
d) have completed

15 I promise my father .... the homework by 8 pm this evening.

a) to finish
b) will finish
c) will have finished
d) to have finished

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered[1] from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts[2], roots, wild fruits and berries[3].

Then later, people began to settle[4] along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile[5] soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate[6] their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of transport. Men began to use rafts[7] and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population[8] also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations[9] had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.



(1) يتسكع/يتنقل (2) جوز الهند (3) توت (4) يستقر (5) خصب (6) يزرع (7) عوامة (8) سكان (9) حضارات

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 All the statements are true EXCEPT: ....
a) As trade and transport grew, the population of river settlements also grew
b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centers of civilisation
c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centers of great civilisation
d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers

17 The word "cultivate" can best be replaced with ....
a) grow b) look for c) buy d) obtain

18 The best title to this passage would be "..............".
a) River water
b) River cities
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers

19 Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be ....
a) farmers b) farmers and traders
c) travellers d) sailors

20 "They wandered from place to place" means they ....
a) were surprised b) travelled
c) settled d) developed

21 The river banks were suitable for farming for the early settlers because ....
a) the land is used once a year b) the river is used for transport
c) people settled down there d) the soil was fertile

22 The land isn't as fertile as in the past because ....
a) people wandered from place to place
b) there is no more flood
c) the people started to cultivate their own crops
d) there are great civilisations

23 Trade and transport help .... to appear.
a) people b) civilisations c) fertile soil d) rafts

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

2

24 We must try to make our world better. If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

a) يجب أن نحاول جعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى للسيطرة على الاحتباس الحرارى ، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

b) يجب أن نحاول جعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى للسيطرة على التنوع البيئى ، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى كنا نعانى منها ستنخفض.

c) يجب أن نحاول جعل بيئتنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى التأقلم على الاحتباس الحرارى ، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا معدلات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

d) يجب أن نحاول جعل عالمنا أكثر راحة. إذا تجاهل البشر السيطرة على الاحتباس الحرارى ، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

b) Choose the correct English translation:

25 أصبحت التكنولوجيا شيء أساسي في حياتنا فقد قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه.

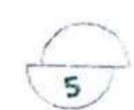
a) Technology has become a secondary part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were easy-to-reach science fiction.

b) Technology has become an essential part in our habits. Modern technology has provided us with many physical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

c) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has proved us with many medical miracles, especially things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

d) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:



"How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

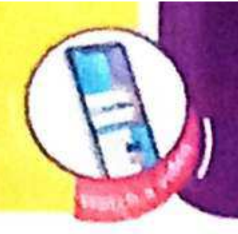
Unit 9



Conservation

Objectives

- **Reading** : An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips
- **Writing** : An email on the best solution to a local problem; An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering
- **Listening** : A news report about the protection of the environment
- **Speaking** : Discussing the benefits of volunteering; Discussing problems and choosing the best solution
- **Language** : Comparative phrases; *Used to / didn't use to*
- **Life Skills** : Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيئي
challenging (adj)	متحد/صعب التحقيق
expedition (n)	بعثة/رحلة استكشافية
native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليين
preserve (v) (d)*	يحافظ على/يحفظ
scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
species (n)	نوع/فصيلة

* The organization works to preserve rainforests.

Vocabulary on Reading

advert (n)	إعلان
conservation (n)	حفاظ/وقاية
creature (n)	مخلوق
culture (n)	ثقافة
digital (adj)	رقمى
endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر
ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
environment (n)	البيئة
face (n) (v) (d)	وجه/يواجه
forest (n)	غابة
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل/يشكل
generation (n)	جيل
industry (n)	صناعة
involved (adj)	منخرط فى/متورط/مشترك
monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب
pollution (n)	التلوث
progress (n)	تقدم
project (n)	مشروع
rainforests (n)	غابات استوائية
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير
rewarding (adj)	مجزٍ/مرضى
slightly (adv)	بشكل طفيف
survival (n)	النجاة/البقاء حيًا
task (n)	مهمة
threat (n)	تهديد
unique (adj)	متميز/متفرد
variety (n)	تنوع
volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية/يسرف/يضيع
well-known (adj)	مشهور/ معروف جيدًا

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

actually (adv)	بالفعل	Great Barrier Reef	الحاجز المرجانى العظيم
bay (n)	خليج	limit (n)	حد/قيد
coast (n)	ساحل	livestock (n)	ماشية
colony (n)	مستعمرة	partly (adv)	جزئيًا
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	rule (n)	قاعدة/قانون
council (n)	مجلس	site (n)	موقع
crop (n)	محصول	soil (n)	تربة
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى	sports fields (n)	ملاعب رياضية
diving (n)	الغطس	starfish (n)	نجم البحر
economy (n)	اقتصاد	tourism (n)	السياحة
exotic (adj)	مثير/غريب		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

art (n)	فن	rubbish (n)	قمامة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	souvenir (n)	تذكار/هدية تذكارية
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	state (n)	حالة
facilities (n)	مرافق/إمكانيات/تسهيلات	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
female (n) (adj)	انثى/انثوى	tusk (n)	ناب الفيل
male (n) (adj)	ذكر/ذكورى	typical (adj)	أصلى/نموذجى
original (adj)	أصلى/أساسى	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
go on a trip/journey	يذهب فى رحلة
apply for	يتقدم بطلب
care for	يهتم بـ
difference between	اختلاف بين
fight for	يحارب/يناضل من أجل
have a bath	يأخذ حمامًا
keep ... clean	يحافظ على النظافة
make sure	يتأكد
happen to	يحدث لـ
interested in	مهتم بـ
involved in	منخرط/مشارك فى
ready for	مستعد لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدى	challenging	متحد/صعب التحقيق
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	حفاظ/وقاية	conservative	واقٍ/محافظ
pollute	يلوث	pollution pollutant	تلوث مادة ملوثة	polluted polluting	ملوث مُلوث
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفاظ/وقاية	preservative	واقٍ/محافظ
recognise	يتعرف على	recognition	تعرف/تمييز	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
recycle ★	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable recycled	يمكن تدويره معاد تدويره
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة مدافع/مساند	supportive/supporting	داعم/مساند
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناجى
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various variable	متنوع متغير

★ - These materials are recycled into other packaging products.
- There should be a recycling plant in each town to protect the environment.
- The blue basket in the park is for recyclable garbage.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
complain	يشكو	protest/disapprove/criticise	approve/agree يستحسن
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	destruction/negligence تدمير/إهمال
ensure	يضمن	guarantee/assure	deny/endanger ينكر/يعرض لخطر
monitor	يراقب	observe/supervise	ignore/neglect يتجاهل
preserve	يحفظ	keep/care for	abandon/harm يترك/يهجر/يضر
rewarding	مجزى/مرضى	profitable/valuable	worthless/valueless بلا قيمة
support	دعم	backing/encouragement	disapproval عدم استحسان hindrance إعاقة
task	مهمة	duty/assignment	irresponsibility/aid عدم مسئولية/مساعدة
unique	متميز	extraordinary/exceptional	common/familiar عادى/مألوف
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity تشابه

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We must encourage the planting of new trees and .... our existing forests.
   a) damage b) waste c) reverse d) preserve
2. Much of the area is covered with primary rainforest that conserves the .... of the Amazon.
   a) activity b) climate c) biodiversity d) similarity
3. Climbing Everest is .... for even the most experienced climbers.
   a) challenging b) simple c) normal d) ordinary
4. The .... inhabitants of America are now called the "Red Indians".
   a) modern b) native c) mixed d) foreign
5. This brilliant student won a .... to study at the American University in Cairo.
   a) race b) medal c) scholarship d) league



Check the answers at the end of the book

Reading Text

Why do you think conservation is important in our life?

Book your conservation volunteer trip today!

Are you interested in conservation? Are you ready for a new challenge? If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent volunteer programmes for you.



يحافظ على (1)

التنوع البيئى (2)

نوع/فصيلة (3)

متحد/صعب التحقيق (4)

السكان الأصليين (5)

منحة دراسية (6)

A – New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us preserve[1] the country's unique biodiversity[2]. You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant species[3] in different areas. Another slightly more challenging[4] task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.

Twenty-one days/Prices with flights from $3,799

B – Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're involved in caring for elephants who used to take tourists on rides around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' progress as they start their new lives in the forest to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful creatures love to play with our volunteers almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days/Prices with flights from $2,599

C – Brazil

Brazil is well-known for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native inhabitants[5] of the Amazon face exactly the same threat as the rainforests – they are also fighting for their survival. You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in digital form for future generations. What is more, you can apply for a scholarship[6] for the costs of this rewarding trip.

Sixteen days/Prices with flights from $2,599

How can you take part in preserving the biodiversity in Thailand?

Listening Text (1)



My name's Mohamed Mansour, and I'm reporting from a small town on the Red Sea coast[1] in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago, it became clear that tourism was causing damage to the local environment.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit diving[2] centres at the same time. Local companies didn't use to put a limit[3] on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one reef. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the local council[4] decided to take action. There are now rules[5] about how many divers can be in one area at the same time. Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be facilities for local people like sports fields[6], cafés and a cinema; there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy.

Local people used to complain[7] about tourists in their town because it changed the lives that they were used to, but now they realise that the tourists can help local businesses, and they're a lot happier to see them. This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more, and then, they will return[8] to the area more often, helping to support the local economy[9] into the future.

(1) ساحل
(2) الغطس
(3) حد/قيد
(4) مجلس
(5) قواعد
(6) ملاعب رياضية
(7) يشكو
(8) يرجع/يعود
(9) اقتصاد

Do you agree with the rules which the council made to preserve the Red Sea Coast?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter : Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the Great Barrier Reef[1] in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing. The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many colourful[2] fish that live here.
In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this?

(1) الحاجز المرجاني الكبير
(2) زاهي الألوان
(3) مستعمرات
(4) جزئيا
(5) نجم البحر
(6) اختفى
(7) بالفعل

Interviewee : First, let me explain what coral and reef is for your listeners. Coral is made from millions of very small sea animals. Corals live in groups called colonies[3]. Very large colonies are called reefs, like the Great Barrier Reef. Now, you asked me why the coral on the Great Barrier Reef is white. Well, it's partly[4] because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. Global warming is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is starfish[5]. In the past, there used to be many species of fish that ate the starfish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared[6]. There is nothing to eat the starfish, so today, the starfish actually[7] eat the coral. Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now, about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral either.

Presenter : So life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Most people in Cameron speak French as it was a former French African ....
a) district **b)** attorney **c)** colony **d)** space

2 When you take any test, you'll have a time .... to follow.
a) border **b)** limit **c)** mark **d)** remark

3 Because of the lack of rain, ... production was low last year.
a) crop **b)** diary **c)** metal **d)** species



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

biodiversity (n) التنوع البيئى
- the variety of plants and animals in a particular place

challenging (adj) متحد/صعب التحقيق
- difficult in an interesting or enjoyable way

expedition (n) بعثة
- a long and carefully organised journey

native inhabitants (n) السكان الأصليون
- people who come from or have always lived in a particular place

preserve (v) يحافظ على/يحفظ
- to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed

scholarship (n) منحة دراسية
- an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organisation to help pay for their education

species (n) نوع/جنس
- a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants



Golden Question



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

– Amira's teachers complain to her parents that she's just .... at school. So, she is going to get low marks.

a) rewarding b) coasting c) challenging d) forming

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

journey
رحلة طويلة أو متعبة
- Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.

trip
رحلة قصيرة (الغرض معين لمكان محدد)
- My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.

expedition
بعثة (رحلة منظمة خصيصًا إلى مكان خطر أو غير معتاد)
- The soldiers were sent into a military expedition behind enemy lines.

2

realise
١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا)
٢- يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)
- Do you realise you're an hour late?
- She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise
١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)
٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء
- I didn't recognise you in your uniform.
- The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

3

coast
ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)
- We set up many tourist villages along the north coast of the Red Sea.

shore
شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة مُحاذٍ لحافة البحر)
- The ship reached the shore after a long voyage.

beach بلاج (شاطئ ممهد)
- People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the beach.

bank ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)
- The hotel is located on the river bank.

4

help
يستخدم الفعل (help) بمعنى يساعد بأكثر من صيغة بعده
- My teacher helped me do my research.
- My teacher helped me to do my research.
- My teacher helped me with my research.

ولاحظ أيضًا الاستخدام التالي:

لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من: (I can't help + v-ing)
- I can't help laughing every time I see my funny neighbour.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in.

- تستخدم أداة الربط (so that) بمعنى لكى، كما لاحظ استخدام (far) قبل صفة التفضيل بمعنى (أفضل بكثير).

- Another slightly more challenging task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.

- استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) (cleaning) بعد (is) هنا ليس زمن المضارع المستمر و لكن (cleaning) هنا اسم (التنظيف) بمثابة مفعول.

- .... face exactly the same threat as the rainforests

- لاحظ استخدام (as) كحرف جر بعد (the same)

- Now, about two million people visit every year.

- لاحظ استخدام (million) فى صيغة المفرد بعد (two) أما الشىء/الشخص المعدود هو ما يأتى فى صيغة الجمع (people).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lamia took a good book to read as she knew it was a long, boring ....
   a) journey b) trip c) expedition d) mission
2. The boy jumped in and swam to the opposite .... of the small lake.
   a) coast b) bank c) beach d) harbour
3. When he watched the TV show, he .... he'd seen it before.
   a) forgot b) organised c) recognised d) realised
4. We always help our mother .... the housework.
   a) by b) at c) with d) for
5. The Red Sea .... is famous for its fish, corals and beautiful wildlife.
   a) coast b) beach c) bank d) ocean

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Scientists assure that many rainforest ………… cannot live anywhere else, so they should be protected.
a) expeditions b) species c) spices d) scholarship

2 Scientists and geographers went on ………… to explore the River Nile especially in the 19th century.
a) flights b) tasks c) expeditions d) picnics

3 The blue whale is the largest ………… that has ever lived on earth.
a) creature b) feature c) culture d) industry

4 The art, beliefs, behaviour and ideas of a particular society or group of people are their ………… .
a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) culture

5 Chemical waste from cars and factories is harmful to the ………… .
a) environment b) involvement c) replacement d) improvement

6 The poor child said that he ………… terrible conditions after his father's death.
a) involved b) fetched c) faced d) enjoyed

7 The workers are working overtime to finish the engineering ………… on time.
a) task b) project c) object d) career

8 The new factory near the river makes water ………… in the area worse.
a) action b) process c) pollution d) operation

9 Egypt hopes to make ………… in all economic and financial fields.
a) decrease b) failure c) effects d) progress

10 The assistant at the gallery pointed out يلفت النظر that none of these paintings is …………, but they are copied cleverly.
a) fake b) original c) stolen d) normal

11 My parents always ………… that I waste much time chatting with my friends online.
a) complain b) explain c) greet d) salute

12 Citizens must pay taxes ضرائب to ………… the services and programmes of the government.
a) report b) import c) export d) support

13 Galapagos Island has more ………… in plant life than other islands nearby.
a) biology b) biodiversity c) biochemistry d) terrorism

14 The native ………… of the Amazon depend on the rainforests for their life.
a) pioneers b) discoverers c) inhabitants d) players

15 We need to take action to help .... fish stocks in the Nile.

a) damage b) pollute c) deserve d) preserve

16 Messi's talents make him a truly .... footballer in the world.

a) common b) unique c) simple d) ordinary

17 The young man won a .... for one of the best universities in England.

a) race b) fair c) scholarship d) tournament

18 My cousin lives on a small island off the north .... of Australia.

a) coast b) beach c) bank d) side

19 The hotel has special .... for welcoming disabled people such as stairs and lifts.

a) fabrics b) accessories c) abilities d) facilities

20 The report commented on the poor .... of the old roads.

a) state b) series c) scenery d) exhibition

21 The students in Faiyoum planned to take a picnic on the east .... of Lake Qaroun.

a) coast b) bank c) beach d) bay

22 All tourists enjoy the .... wildlife of the Galapagos Islands.

a) common b) awful c) exotic d) terrible

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23 These days, getting a degree doesn't guarantee you a job. The word "guarantee" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) ensure b) ignore c) refuse d) show

24 Teaching young children is considered a/an .... and rewarding job.

a) challenge b) challenged c) challenging d) unchallengeable

25 It is very kind of you to care .... your old parents.

a) in b) at c) by d) for

26 Ali has improved his .... since he joined the summer camp.

a) behave b) behaving c) behaviour d) behaved

27 My father really agrees with the idea that women can have children and a job .... the same time.

a) in b) at c) with d) of

28 My mother insists that we all should .... a bath before going to bed.

a) have b) give c) do d) devise

29 The museum is a part of the local history and should be preserved. The verb "preserve" can be the antonym of "..................".

a) conserve b) waste c) keep d) value

30 The young man turned the key in the lock to .... sure he would not be disturbed.

a) have b) gain c) get d) make



Study Lessons 1 & 2





It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

B Language

A) Comparative phrases

عند المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التى تبين ما إذا كان الشيئين أو الشخصين متساويين أم هناك فارق كبير أو صغير فى الصفة المشتركة بينهم:

1) exactly the same (noun) as .....

وجه المقارنة الثانى + exactly the same (noun) as + وجه المقارنة الأول

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- Your bag is exactly the same as my bag.
- Your bag is exactly the same colour as my bag.
- Ola is as old as Hala. They are exactly the same age.
- My father does exactly the same job as your father.

2) almost as + adj. صفة + as — slightly + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- I'm almost as tall as my brother.
- We're almost as good at maths as you.
- The trip to New Zealand is slightly more expensive than the trip to Brazil.

3) far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- In my opinion, playing football is far more interesting than watching it on TV.

تنبيه هام: يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham thinks that her friend is .... than her.
   a) slightly prettier b) more pretty c) more prettier d) as pretty
2. My house is exactly .... as my neighbour's.
   a) wide b) wider c) the same width d) the same wide
3. Toyota is .... fast as Peugeot.
   a) almost b) almost as c) exactly d) slightly as
4. Wood is .... than gold, but in some cases, it is more useful.
   a) as cheap b) more cheaper c) cheapest d) far cheaper
5. Having water in the desert is far .... having money, although they are both useful.
   a) as important as b) more important than
   c) important than d) important as



Check the answers at the end of the book.

B Past habits

للتعبير عن عادات الماضى يمكن استخدام:

1 Past simple

نستخدم الماضى البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضى المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل:

Always, often, every day, etc.

- When I was young, I always walked to school.

2 used to + inf.

نستخدم used to بمعنى اعتاد على للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضى والروتين والحقائق التى كانت قديمًا ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

- I used to have a bike, but now I don't.
- My father used to be an accountant, but now he is a manager at a big company.
- I used to play for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

فى السؤال والنفى نحذف d ونستخدم use بعد Did/didn't

Yes/No questions						
Did	**Subject**	**use to**	**base form**			
Did	you	use to	have a mobile phone when	you	were	young?
	she			she	was	
	they			they	were	

Negative						
Subject	**didn't**	**use to**	**base form**			
I	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	I	was	young.
She				she	was	
They				they	were	

ويمكن النفى بـ never used to + inf.

My father never used to have mobile phones when he was young.

نستخدم used to أيضًا للأشياء التى كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الآن:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- Jeans used to come only in blue. Now, you can buy them in any colour.

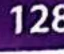
لاحظ

Subj. + used to + inf., but now + present simple.

- He used to sleep early, but now he sleeps late.

- لا تستخدم used to للتعبير عن الماضى القريب

- We can't say: I used to get up early last week.
- But we can say: I got up early last week.




3 would +inf.

تستخدم would +inf. للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطي المتكرر في الماضي وليس عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

At weekends, my father would go and buy fruit, and also he would buy me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشيء أو وظيفة لديه.

I used to have a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: ~~I would have a bike.......~~)

Hotel companies would buy the best land in the town. There used to be a lot of tourists. (NOT: ~~There would be a lot of tourists.~~).

- أفعال state verbs لا تستخدم مع would لأنها أفعال ثابتة وتدل على الحالة ولكنها تستخدم مع used to مثل

I didn't use to know about plants before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.

لا تستخدم wouldn't know في المثال السابق.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He usually .... late for the training sessions when he was a member in the team.
   a) arrive
   b) arrives
   c) used to arriving
   d) arrived
2. When we were on holiday, we .... up early every day and spent all day on the beach.
   a) get
   b) gets
   c) got
   d) will get
3. When I was young, I .... in Assult.
   a) used to live
   b) would live
   c) was lived
   d) had lived
4. My brother .... a footballer when he was a student.
   a) had been
   b) would be
   c) used to be
   d) wasn't used to be
5. When we were children, we always .... to Alexandria and spent the summer holiday there.
   a) used to go
   b) would go
   c) going
   d) went


Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The teacher was angry with Galal because he asked .... question as his friend.
a) slightly as same
b) far the same
c) exactly same
d) exactly the same

2 Your marks are .... mine.
a) almost good as
b) almost as good as
c) good as
d) slightly good as

3 When I visited the city centre, it was .... less crowded than usual.
a) slightly b) many c) so d) as

4 Mr Osama is wearing .... the same suit as me.
a) far b) slightly c) much d) exactly

5 My new flat is .... as the old one.
a) slightly as big b) slightly bigger c) almost as big d) so big

6 The exam was slightly .... than I expected.
a) easier b) as easy c) much easier d) easy

7 Whenever we stay at this hotel, we sleep exactly in .... room.
a) the same b) same c) the same as d) as the same

8 Petrol is .... expensive as it was last year.
a) slightly b) far c) almost d) almost as

9 My leg hurts. Can you walk .... more slowly?
a) almost b) as c) slightly d) lot

10 It's strange to find that BMW is exactly the same price .... Toyota.
a) than b) as c) from d) at

11 Their house is .... two times as big as ours.
a) almost b) almost as c) slightly d) much

12 Going by train is slightly .... than driving your own car.
a) much expensive b) expensive c) more expensive d) as expensive

13 When I was younger, I .... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.
a) am used to go b) would go c) went d) go

14 When I was a student, I always finished my homework and then .... TV for an hour.

a) used to watch b) watch c) watching d) watched

15 When he was young, he .... his bike to school.

a) rides b) was riding c) used to ride d) had ridden

16 When we were children, mother .... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.

a) would b) was used to c) wasn't used to d) didn't used to

17 There .... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.

a) didn't use to be b) used to be
c) would be d) didn't use to have

18 He used to be a driver, but now he ....

a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) has

19 Tourists visiting Egypt .... in the hotel restaurants rather than local restaurants.

a) use to eat b) would eat c) were eating d) had eaten

20 On holidays, mum .... me a big breakfast.

a) was making b) is making
c) had made d) would always make

21 Did she .... cry a lot when she was a baby?

a) use to b) used to c) using d) be used to

22 When Ali was a student, he .... a long beard لحية and short hair.

a) would have b) used to have c) has d) has had

23 When he was a driver, my dad .... home from work at 7 pm.

a) had arrived b) arrives
c) used to arriving d) would always arrive

24 When I was a teenager, I .... my grandparents and help them bake bread.

a) would visit b) visit
c) am used to visiting d) was visiting

25 He used to send letters to his friends, but now he .... e-mails.

a) was sending b) used to send c) sends d) is sending

26 He used to have a bike, but now he ....

a) hasn't b) doesn't c) isn't d) does

27 Ola's laptop .... very good. But now she can't download photos from the internet.

a) didn't use to be b) would be c) wasn't d) used to be

28 When I was young, I ....

a) I was used to be slim, but now I don't.

b) I would visit my friends every weekend.

c) I would be slim, but now I'm rather fat.

d) I was used to being slim, but now I'm rather fat.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) I would go shopping with my mother every Friday.

b) When I was young, I would have blond hair.

c) How many friends would you have?

d) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.

30 One of the following is grammatically correct.

a) Our new car is much more bigger than our old one.

b) Our old car was much more smaller than our new one.

c) Our old car was much smaller than our new one.

d) Our old car was as almost smaller as our new one.

31 My aunt .... me a glass of milk every time I went to her house.

a) would be offered
b) used to offering
c) would offer
d) offers

32 Your car is expensive and so is Hany's. This means that ....

a) your car is exactly the same price as Hany's

b) your car is slightly more expensive than Hany's

c) your car is far more expensive than Hany's

d) Hany's car is slightly more expensive than yours

33 The area has changed a lot. There .... a large car park on this site.

a) are
b) would be
c) will be
d) used to be

34 My flat overlooks two streets. Each is 20 metres wide. This means that ....

a) the two streets are exactly the same width

b) one street is wider than the other

c) the two streets are exactly the same wide

d) the two streets are not so wide as each other

35 When my uncle visited us in the past, he .... us sweets and give us money.

a) used to buy
b) bought
c) was buying
d) had bought





● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Check your vocab, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1. It is important to encourage environmental .... and awareness among ordinary people.
   a) accommodation b) convention c) conservation d) preparation
2. We live in a/an .... age where everything can be downloaded from the internet.
   a) digital b) ordinary c) historical d) artistic
3. The sea turtle is a/an .... species which needs great efforts to preserve.
   a) extinct b) endangered c) lasting d) banishing
4. The medicine can be taken in the .... of a liquid or tablet.
   a) device b) figure c) equation d) form
5. We need a better system for .... animals in the national park.
   a) appearing b) monitoring c) designing d) devising
6. The Red Sea coast is well-known for the amazing .... reefs.
   a) coral b) shark c) dolphin d) turtle
7. The increasing use of pesticides مبيد آفات زراعية threatens the .... of the area.
   a) workforce b) employment c) wildlife d) economy
8. Because of his physical condition, taking part in the race was a .... job.
   a) challenge b) changing c) challenging d) challengeable
9. Let's walk. It's almost .... taking the bus!
   a) as quick than b) as quickly as c) as quick as d) quicker as
10. My brother leaves home exactly at .... time as my father.
    a) better b) same c) good d) the same
11. Osama .... much hair, but now he is almost bald.
    a) used to have b) would have c) almost has d) didn't have
12. My father .... slim, but now he suffers from obesity السمنة.
    a) would be b) had been c) used to be d) wasn't
13. What food .... like when you were ten?
    a) did you use to b) you used to c) do you use to d) would you
14. The problem is .... complicated than it seems.
    a) the same more b) slightly more c) as d) much

15 It's not warm, it is .... yesterday.

a) almost as cold than
b) almost as cold
c) almost as colder than
d) almost as cold as

16 Sara .... a novel every week when she was young.

a) would reads
b) read
c) reads
d) was reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today, many people use natural ways to cure illnesses that don't cause side effects. 'Acupuncture'(1) and 'biofeedback'(2) are two popular methods. Doctors have been using 'acupuncture' in China for over two thousand years. It involves pushing needles(3) into the skin at special points around the body. Ancient Chinese philosophers believed that they were connected to different organs and could cure diseases. Today, 'acupuncture' is used in many countries, and studies show that it works especially for headaches, backaches and smoking. Since 1950, doctors in China have also been using 'acupuncture' in major operations. Patients are awake and know what is happening in the operation, but they feel little or no pain. Scientists think that the needles make the body produce a chemical called 'endorphin' that helps to reduce the feeling of pain.

Another natural way to cure illnesses is 'biofeedback'. It uses a technology to help people control their internal(4) organs. For example, if a person has a problem with sleeping, he/she is connected to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain. The person then is asked to do some mental(5) exercise to relax. When the brain activity falls and the person is relaxed, the computer makes a noise. Slowly, the person learns what type of mental exercise can help him/her to reduce the activity of the brain.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Doctors in China have been using 'acupuncture' in major operations for ....

a) 60 years
b) 69 years
c) 63 years
d) 73 years

2 Endorphin .... the feeling of pain.

a) increases
b) expands
c) decreases
d) grows

3 The word .... is the best synonym to the word "awake".

a) unfamiliar
b) conscious
c) unaware
d) ignorant

4 According to the passage, which one of the following is not true?

a) Natural ways to cure illnesses don't cause side effects.
b) Technology can be used with natural ways to cure illnesses.
c) While using 'acupuncture', people know what is happening.
d) Robots can help people with sleeping problems.

(1) العلاج بالإبر
(2) الارتجاع البيولوجي
(3) الإبر
(4) داخلي
(5) ذهني

5 Using natural ways to cure illnesses is ....

a) harmless b) unnatural c) ambiguous d) harmful

6 Using 'acupuncture' in operations means ....

a) pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body
b) using a technology to help people control their internal organs
c) connecting to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain
d) making the person unconscious during the operation

7 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Using 'acupuncture' to cure illnesses
b) Using 'biofeedback' to cure illnesses
c) Using natural ways to cure illnesses
d) Using the computer to cure illnesses

8 'Acupuncture' and 'biofeedback' are two popular methods used ....

a) in Egypt b) in China c) all over the world d) in Europe

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.

a) تحقيـق النجـاح ليس بالمهمة السـهلة. و لذلك، فإن امتـلاك مجموعة من الأهداف المعقـدة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العلجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

b) تحقيـق التقدم ليس بالمهمة السـهلة. ومع ذلك، فـإن امتلاك بعض من الأهداف الواضحـة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف المؤقتة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

c) تأجيل النجاح ليس بالمهمة السـهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأسـبقية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

d) تحقيـق النجاح ليس بالمهمة السـهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة مـن الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

2 Environmental conservation has become one of the most important issues that need to be discussed to fight climate change and global warming. Sustainable development can save the earth from pollution.

a) أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب نشرها لمواجهة تغير المناخ و الاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المؤقتة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

b) أصبـح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب مناقشـتها لمواجهـة تغير المناخ و الاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

c) أصبح الحفاظ على الكائنات إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب مناقشتها لمساندة تغير المناخ و الاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من الازدحام.

d) أصبـح دعـم البيئة إحدى أهم القضايـا التى يجب تجاهلها لمواجهة تغير المنـاخ و الاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

3 Human existence is impossible without the presence of a healthy ecosystem. Our environment consists of all living components and their interactions within their natural habitats.

a) الوجود البشرى مستحيل بدون وجود نظام بيئى صحى. تتكون بيئتنا من جميع المكونات الحية وتفاعلاتها داخل مواطنها الطبيعية.

b) الوجود البشرى ممكن بدون وجود نظام بيئى صحى. تتكون بيئتنا من معظم المكونات الحية وتفاعلاتها داخل مواطنها الطبيعية.

c) الوجود البشرى مستحيل بوجود نظام بيئى صحى. تتكون بيئتنا من جميع المكونات الحية وتفاعلاتها خارج مواطنها الطبيعية.

d) الوجود البشرى مستحيل بدون وجود نظام كونى صحى. يتكون مجتمعنا من جميع المكونات الحية وتفاعلاتها داخل مواطنها الطبيعية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التى تثرى معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم. بل يفضلون مشاهدة أفلام الحركة و الرعب التى قد تسبب المشكلات لبعضهم.

a) Many young people don't like watching documents which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer active and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.

b) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.

c) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which offer their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They dislike action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.

d) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their ambitions and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and sorrow movies which can cause problems for some of them.

2 يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكى تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى فى الأسواق العالمية؛ لذا تهتم الحكومة بتدريب كل العاملين على أحدث طرق الإنتاج.

a) The Egyptian production should be of high quality so as to be able to complete the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in treating all workers on the latest production methods.

b) The Egyptian products should be of high quantity so as to be able to compete the other products in the national market. So, the government is interested in training all workers on the latest production styles.

c) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in training all workers on the latest production methods.

d) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete the other products in the international market. So, the environment is interested in training all workers on the latest production systems.

3 التمرينات الرياضية هي طريقة جيدة للتخلص من التوتر والإحباط في مكان العمل. لذلك، يجب أن نعتاد جميعًا على التمارين اليومية بشكل منتظم.

a) Sports exercises are a good way to get rid of refreshment and frustration in the worktime. Therefore, we should all get used to daily exercise on a regularly basis

b) Sports exercises are a good way to get rid of stress and frustration in the workplace. Therefore, we should all get used to daily exercise on a regular basis.

c) Sports exercises are a good way to focus on stress and frustration in the workplace. Therefore, we should all get used to weekly exercise on a regular basis.

d) Sports exercises are a good way to get rid of stress and population in the workplace. Therefore, we may all get used to daily exercise on a regular basis.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we get ready for the problem of water shortage?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	leader (n)	قائد
arise (v)	ينشأ	majority (n)	أغلبية
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	mental (adj)	عقلى/ذهنى
career (n)	حياة مهنية	opportunity (n)	فرصة
certain (adj)	محدد	organisation (n)	منظمة
community (n)	مجتمع	positive (adj)*	إيجابى
consequently (conj.)	بناء على ذلك	psychological (adj)	نفسى
contacts (n)	اتصالات/معارف	purpose (n)	غرض
contrast (n)	تناقض	related (adj)	مرتبط
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	significant (adj)	ذو مغزى/ذو أهمية
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	specific (adj)	محدد
goal (n)	هدف	suitable (adj)	مناسب
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث/يوحى بـ	valuable (adj)	قيم
lead (v)	يقود/يؤدى	volunteering (n)	تطوع

* We must take positive steps to solve the water problem.

Vocabulary on Listening

cost (v)	يتكلف	operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل
discussion (n)	مناقشة	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط/يجمع
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	program (n)	برنامج

relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
sign (n) (v) (ed)	علامة/لافتة
skateboard (n) (v) (ed)	لوح تزلج/يتزلج بلوح
skatepark (n)	منتزه للتزلج

solve (v) (d)	يحل
sound (v) (ed)	يبدو
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
visible (adj)	مرئى
youth (n)	شباب

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

argue (v) (d)	يجادل
charity (n)	عمل خيرى/مؤسسة خيرية
definition (n)	تعريف
eventually (adv.)	أخيرًا/فى النهاية
expert (n)	خبير
expression (n)	تعبير
formal (adj)	رسمى

gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على/يكتسب
necessary (adj)	ضرورى
result in (v) (ed)	ينتج عنه
reward (v) (ed)	مكافأة/يكافئ
shade (n)	ظل
solution (n)	حل
sunny (adj)	مشمس

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as a result	نتيجة لذلك
give ... the opportunity	يعطى ... الفرصة
go diving	يمارس الغطس
aim of	هدف لـ
arise from	ينشأ من
benefit for	فائدة لـ
contact with	يتصل بـ

make contacts	يكون صداقات/معارف
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
contrast between	تناقض بين
download from	يحمل من
lead to	يؤدى إلى
result of	نتيجة لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved achievable	محقق يمكن تحقيقه
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative arguable	جدلى قابل للجدل
define	يعرف	definition	تعريف	defined	محدد/معرف
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existed	موجود
explain	يفسر/يشرح	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory explicable	تفسيرى قابل للتفسير
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
inspire	يلهم/يحث	inspiration	إلهام/إيحاء	inspiring inspirational	ملهم/موحى بـ ملهم
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مريح مسترخ
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solved solvable	محلول قابل للحل
value *	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم

* - During my illness, I learned to value the ordinary things in life.
- It is believed that cars go down in value quickly.
- The thieves took three pieces of valuable jewellery.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
argue	يجادل	dispute/quarrel	agree/surrender يوافق/يستسلم
arise	ينشأ	emerge/appear	disappear/end يختفى/ينتهى
contrast	تناقض	contradiction/difference	agreement/harmony اتفاق/تناغم
inspire	يلهم/يحث/يوحى بـ	motivate/stimulate	discourage/depress يثبط/يحبط
necessary	ضرورى	essential/basic	extra/minor/ unnecessary إضافى/غير هام
psychological	نفسى	mental	physical جسمانى
reward	مكافأة/يكافئ	honour	penalty جزاء/عقوبة
significant	ذو مغزى	important/considerable	trivial/insignificant تافه/بلا مغزى
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/indefinite شائع/غير محدد

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The life of Taha Hussein has always .... people to improve their lives.
   a) aspired b) inspired c) respired d) expired
2. The size of the garden was a .... factor عامل in my decision to buy the house. I always wanted a large one.
   a) valueless b) harmful c) significant d) trivial
3. Doctors believe that thousands of patients have .... from the new treatment so far.
   a) harmed b) injured c) healed d) benefited
4. The rich man's most .... belongings were locked in a safe in his bedroom.
   a) valuable b) valueless c) devalued d) unvalued
5. The young doctor works with children who have .... problems such as sleep troubles.
   a) physical b) psychological c) sports d) fitness

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

How can volunteering benefit young people?

Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

Can volunteering benefit young people today?

ينشأ من (1)
ليس فقط (2)
ولكن أيضا (3)
يؤدي إلى (4)
لكي (5)
بناء على ذلك (6)
مع ذلك (7)

Several research studies have proven that significant psychological benefits that can arise from[1] volunteering, for people of any age. For young people though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them. In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further important benefit is that young people can develop useful skills and valuable experience. These can prove extremely useful not only[2] at school, but also[3] in their careers.

For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to[4] paid work. Volunteering could also provide the opportunity to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts. A majority of volunteers work together in order to[5] achieve a specific goal. Consequently[6], they often get to know each other very well and team leaders may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion, it is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers involved. However[7], as I explained above, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.

Would you like to share in voluntary work? Why?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

Possible solutions

1. Give sun shades to all the students, so that they can stay out of the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

We should reward all volunteers

Some people argue that we should reward volunteers by giving them some money for their work. **However,** I believe that this is not necessary. Why is this?

The definition of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many charities need volunteers **in order to** help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people. **Consequently,** they do not have enough money to pay volunteers.

So, why should volunteers work for no money? **Not only** do volunteers gain valuable experiences from volunteering, but they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that voluntary work can eventually **lead to** a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that **arise from** volunteering rather than being paid.

What leisure facilities are there in your town?

Listening Text (1)



Student 1: So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment.

Student 2: Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do are: to go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

Student 1: Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

Student 2: We could ask the local council to build a skatepark[1]. That wouldn't cost very much money, and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

Student 1: That's true, but not all young people like skateboarding[2], and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

Student 2: That's a good point. Do you have any other suggestions?

Student 1: Well, what about starting a youth[3] club in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

Student 2: Well, the council would still need to pay some people to organise[4] the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

Student 1: OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

Student 2: OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing aren't very interesting for older kids.

Student 1: OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost[5] very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting.

(1) منتزه للتزلج
(2) التزلج باللوح
(3) شباب
(4) ينظم
(5) يتكلف

What other suggestions can you add to solve the problem of not having facilities for young people?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter : In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three experts to suggest[1] a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

Ola : Hi. I have an old laptop[2] which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could download photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do?

Presenter : OK, let's ask our first expert. What do you think Ola should do, Amal?

Amal : Well, it sounds[3] like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one? Then, I think your problem will be solved.

Presenter : Thanks. Do you agree, Dina?

Dina : No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair[4] it.

Presenter : OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

Manal : I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new operating system[5]. This is a program you can download from the internet; I think this will solve your problem.

(1) يقترح
(2) كمبيوتر محمول
(3) يبدو
(4) يصلح
(5) نظام تشغيل

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Windows is probably the most popular .... system; it is used by millions of computers all over the world.
a) sports b) operating c) research d) building

2 The young couple hired a professional to help .... their wedding.
a) popularise b) realise c) organise d) recognise

3 The Cairo Tower is .... from a faraway area in Cairo and Giza.
a) realised b) distant c) visible d) acceptable

4 You should follow the road .... for the city centre so as not to get lost.
a) projects b) notes c) scenes d) signs

5 The young boy doesn't take the school bus. He .... to school every day and now he needs a new board.
a) walks b) skateboards c) hurries d) inspects

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

majority — اغلبية
- most of the people or things in a group

inspire — يلهم/يحث/يوحى بـ
- to encourage someone by making them feel confident and eager to do something

volunteering — تطوع
- the act of offering to do something without expecting any reward

psychological — نفسى
- relating to the way that your mind works and the way that this affects your behaviour

Notes on Vocabulary

present	هدية	My little brother has received a lot of presents on his birthday.
prize	جائزة	I won this new bike as a prize in the sports competition.
reward	مكافأة	The young clerks were given a reward for helping complete the project in a short time.
award	وسام/جائزة رسمية	The young actor is hoping for the best actor award in the film festival.

work
عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

- I like this company very much. The work is really easy.

works
أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)

- A collection of Shakespeare's works is offered for a cheap price at the book fair.

2

job
وظيفة (اسم يعد)

- The young man has applied for several jobs recently.

career
(مهنة) الحياة العملية للفرد

- My father received a lot of honours during his career as a doctor.

profession
(مهنة) تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب

(the medical الطبية/legal القضاء/nursing/teaching profession)

- People who work in the medical profession receive much appreciation.

---

rise (rose/risen)
يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/تشرق/يزداد/يستيقظ/يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتى بعده مفعول)

- The river has risen by several metres.
- The price of petrol has risen by 3 per cent.

arise (arose/arisen)
يحدث (لا يأتى بعده مفعول)/يظهر/ينشأ

- Several problems have arisen recently.
- Some learning difficulties arise from the way children are taught at school.

3

raise (raised/raised)
يزيد (يأتى بعده مفعول)/يربى/يجمع/يرفع/يثير

- I've never heard him even raise his voice.
- We are raising money for charity.

arouse (aroused/aroused)
يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدى الناس) يأتى بعده مفعول

arouse feelings مشاعر/interest اهتمام/fears مخاوف/suspicions (doubts) شكوك

- The event aroused considerable interest and media coverage.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- It is very hot waiting for the bus ....
  .... they can see the bus arriving.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بدلا من أدوات الربط (while - when) فالجملتان أصلهما.

  It is very hot while they are waiting for the bus ....
  .... they can see the bus when it arrives.

- Not only do volunteers gain valuable experience from volunteering, but they also teach them skills.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة السؤال (do volunteers gain) بعد أداة الربط (Not only) إذا جاءت فى أول الجملة

- A majority of volunteers work together in order to achieve a specific goal.

- تستخدم (in order to) بمعنى لكى و يتبعها الفعل فى صيغة المصدر .

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's sad that so many young people are unable to find .... these days.

a) jobs
b) works
c) careers
d) professions

2 The police offered a/an .... for any information about the robbery.

a) present
b) award
c) reward
d) prize

3 Used car sales have .... because of the increased cost of new cars.

a) risen
b) raised
c) aroused
d) arisen

4 My brother is taking a language course .... find a job in a good bank.

a) so
b) in order to
c) so that
d) for



Practice  Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Mohamed Salah has .... a great success as a professional footballer.
   a) achieved b) applied c) failed d) aspired
2. A serious problem can .... if you don't take things more seriously in your study.
   a) raise b) arise c) aside d) arouse
3. The food festival was a great occasion for the local .... to get together.
   a) police b) facility c) community d) ability
4. Winning the gold medal was the highlight of the Egyptian wrestler, Karam Gaber's ....
   a) job b) task c) work d) career
5. The young actor has a lot of .... in the media who help him a lot.
   a) ties b) contacts c) facts d) enemies
6. The volunteers are hoping to reach their .... of collecting a million pounds for the new Cancer Hospital.
   a) ability b) disability c) goal d) association
7. Charles Dickens' first novel was .... by his early childhood.
   a) inspired b) respired c) designed d) devised
8. All newspapers publish the recent reports of the World Health .... nowadays.
   a) Group b) Team c) Organisation d) League
9. The .... of the students in our class come to school by bus. Only two come by train.
   a) minority b) priority c) seniority d) majority
10. Each debate of the two candidates will focus on a/an .... political issue.
    a) specific b) discussing c) vague d) unimportant
11. The rocky soil is .... for planting grapes and similar crops.
    a) suited b) suitable c) possible d) achievable
12. Seven copies of the original book are still known to .... in museums.
    a) resist b) persist c) exist d) vanish
13. Countries have to work together to .... global problems.
    a) solve b) deal c) cause d) care
14. We donated تبرعنا some money to a/an .... that helps homeless children.
    a) popularity b) corporation c) charity d) ability
15. You can .... a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.
    a) load b) overload c) upload d) download

16 The company had to hire a/an .... at computer software to protect its systems.
a) export b) expert c) report d) trainee

17 Many of the government's new laws have .... popular support.
a) risen b) gained c) earned d) dealt

18 The temperature can reach 40°C in the .... in Upper Egypt especially in summer.
a) shadow b) shade c) figure d) moisture

19 The economic crisis will surely .... in the loss of a lot of jobs.
a) reason b) lead c) sequence d) result

20 Stress has an effect on both your physical and .... health.
a) mental b) imaginative c) improper d) bodily

21 The main .... of the present course at our centre is to improve your writing skills.
a) post b) aim c) job d) pole

22 Some stars are barely .... to the naked eye especially in a cloudy night.
a) available b) accessible c) visible d) attainable

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23 This dictionary provides a clear, simple .... of words that can be easily understood.
a) define b) definition c) defined d) defines

24 In the park, children have to .... turns on the swing and other game tools.
a) take b) give c) add d) provide

25 There is an obvious contrast تناقض واضح .... the cultures of East and West.
a) in b) between c) at d) for

26 Sitting on the beach under an umbrella is really .... in summer vacations.
a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxing d) relaxed

27 The children should be .... the opportunity to make their own choices.
a) taken b) turned c) denied d) given

28 The company's failure was a direct result .... bad management.
a) of b) in c) at d) for

29 If she felt he was right, she would agree with him. The verb "agree" can be the opposite to the verb "..........".
a) express b) approve c) argue d) excite

30 It is necessary to answer all the questions on the exam paper. The word "necessary" is the synonym of ....
a) minor b) essential c) trivial d) unacceptable

B Language

Important Notes



1 Comparative phrases

١) بالإضافة إلى ما تم شرحه فى الجزء الأول، هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم لبيان الفارق الكبير والصغير فى درجة المقارنة ومنها:

1. a bit/a little/even/rather + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيلين

- Travelling by train is a little/a bit/even/rather cheaper than travelling by car.

2. much/a lot/ far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيلين

- Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

٢) يمكن استخدام كلمات rather/even قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er .... أو more

- This house is even/rather bigger than the other.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali plays sports .... more than his friend does.
   a) bit   b) little   c) as   d) much
2. My new flat is .... colder than the old one.
   a) as   b) many   c) a bit   d) more
3. The second exercise was .... more difficult than the first.
   a) less   b) rather   c) as   d) many
4. This road is .... longer than the other one.
   a) a lot   b) more   c) lot   d) many
5. The game we played yesterday was .... more interesting than the one we played last week.
   a) almost   b) a little   c) as   d) exactly



Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 Past habits

1. Be (get) used to + v.ing

(Be used to) means "be accustomed to", "be in the habit of".

- تعبر be(get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة في الحاضر.

My father is very active. He is used to getting up early.
I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get)used to it now.
She isn't used to living in hot climates.

2. Object + (be + used to) + Inf. = passive

- إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتى بعدها المصدر، وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد

This knife is used to cut onions.

3. Object + (be + used for) + ing.

- وتستخدم be used for + v-ing للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

Knives are used for cutting things.
Pens are used for writing.

4. No longer/any longer

- نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer معها مضارع منفى بدلاً من used to

Osama no longer smokes.
Osama doesn't smoke any longer.
= Osama used to smoke.



١) فى النفى دائمًا نجد didn't use to ولكن هناك نفى صحيح أيضًا وهو used not to

Long time ago, clothes used not to be expensive.

٢) هناك used تستخدم صفة بمعنى مستخدم وهى من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم.

It's very dangerous to buy used clothes nowadays because of diseases.
Used cars are always much cheaper than the new ones, and they need repairing.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This gadget is used to .... onions.
   a) being chopped b) chopped c) chopping d) chop
2. I'm terribly nervous, I'm not used to .... to a large number of audience.
   a) speaking b) speak c) being speak d) speaks
3. After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to .... on her own.
   a) live b) lived c) living d) leaves
4. I can't take your smart car. I .... driving an automatic car.
   a) used to b) am not used to c) am used to d) didn't use to
5. She .... gets up early; as she used to.
   a) frequently b) always c) anymore d) no longer

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering   Understanding   Applying   Analysing   Evaluating   Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 His behaviour was .... than what we thought at first.
   a) strange   **b)** slightly strange   **c)** much stranger   **d)** almost strange

2 Mr Gamal .... speaking in public. He is very shy.
   a) used to   **b)** isn't used to   **c)** wouldn't   **d)** didn't use to

3 It was very hot yesterday. Today, it's .... than yesterday.
   a) a bit hotter   **b)** more hotter   **c)** hot   **d)** as hot

4 She .... in tropical climates. When she does, she suffers a lot.
   a) would live   **b)** used to live   **c)** is used to living   **d)** isn't used to living

5 For me, running is .... tiring than walking.
   a) a lot more   **b)** a lot   **c)** much   **d)** as

6 He used to live in Italy, but he .... lives there.
   a) used to   **b)** any longer   **c)** no longer   **d)** still

7 I think French is .... than English.
   a) difficult   **b)** much difficult   **c)** as difficult   **d)** much more difficult

8 It's much .... this summer than it was last year.
   a) hot   **b)** hotter   **c)** as hot   **d)** hottest

9 She used to eat a lot of sweets, but she doesn't ....
   a) no longer   **b)** hardly   **c)** any more   **d)** longer

10 My cat is a bit .... than my dog.
   a) friendly   **b)** slightly friendly   **c)** more friendlier   **d)** friendlier

11 I .... that Maher was unfriendly, but now I realise he's a very nice person.
   a) used to think   **b)** didn't use to think   **c)** think   **d)** was thinking

12 I .... a lot, but I do now.
   a) am used to reading   **b)** used to read   **c)** didn't use to read   **d)** am reading

13 Omar is almost .... as his uncle.
   a) richer   **b)** as rich   **c)** rich   **d)** much richer

14 You'd better wear your coat. It's .... yesterday.

a) much colder than
b) colder as
c) cold as
d) almost colder as

15 Her illness was .... than we thought at first.

a) serious enough
b) as serious
c) far more serious
d) slightly serious

16 During our last holiday, we .... to the beach to play.

a) were used to go
b) would go
c) go
d) use to go

17 Samy .... glasses, but now he does.

a) wears
b) used to wear
c) wore
d) didn't use to wear

18 My parents used to spend a lot of time at the park, but now they ....

a) don't
b) do
c) are
d) didn't

19 I study in London, so I .... abroad.

a) was used to living
b) would live
c) used to live
d) am used to living

20 The movie is almost as .... as the book.

a) good
b) better
c) the best
d) well

21 For me, science is .... difficult than history.

a) almost as
b) slightly much
c) slightly as
d) slightly more

22 Every evening, local people .... out onto the streets and sell souvenirs.

a) are used to going
b) had gone
c) use to go
d) would go

23 Shimaa .... long dark hair, but she looks different now.

a) would have
b) has
c) used to have
d) was having

24 My brother .... be a better swimmer than me and he .... always win.

a) used to\ would
b) would \used to
c) used to\used to
d) would\would

25 All my friends are .... than me during races.

a) far quickly
b) far quicker
c) more quickly
d) quick

26 He behaves .... worse than before.

a) slight
b) as
c) more
d) even

27 I've started drinking tea recently. I never .... like it before.

a) didn't use to
b) no longer
c) used to
d) any longer

28 He made his money from buying and selling .... cars.

a) used b) would use c) used to d) is used to

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) When I was young, I always went to the public library with my friends.

b) When I was young, I used to go to the public library with my friends.

c) When I was young, I would go to the public library with my friends

d) Last week, I used to go to the public library 3 times.

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) Ali is much shorter than Hossam.

b) Ali and Hossam are exactly the same length.

c) Hossam and Ali are exactly the same height.

d) Ali is slightly taller than Hossam.

31 When I was young, I .... a lot in the bed.

a) was reading

b) was used to reading

c) used to reading

d) didn't use to reading

32 The cheapest thing in this shop is the blue suit. This means that: ....

a) Everything in the shop is exactly the same price as the blue suit.

b) Everything in the shop is slightly cheaper than the blue suit.

c) Everything in the shop is more expensive than the blue suit.

d) The blue suit is almost as cheap as everything in the shop.

33 All my friends ....

a) are used to walk to school every day.

b) used to walking to school every day.

c) are in the habit of walk to school every day.

d) are accustomed to walking to school every day.

34 Osama and I have bought two small T-shirts size 8. This means that my T-shirt is ....

a) exactly the same size as Osama's.

b) slightly smaller than Osama's.

c) much smaller than Osama's.

d) almost as big as Osama's.

35 I had difficulty in driving cars in the past, but now I can drive well. This means that: ....

a) I used to drive cars well in the past.

b) I was used to driving cars well in the past.

c) Driving cars in the past wasn't so easy for me.

d) I no longer drive cars well now.



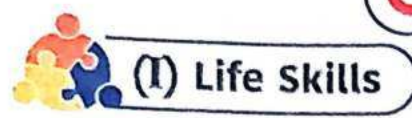




Lessons 3 & 4

لمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

C Communication Skills



(I) Life Skills

Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration

Collaboration is when a group of people come together and contribute their expertise for the benefit of a shared objective, project, or mission. In other words, collaboration is the process of group work. But it's also a learned skill. How well you collaborate with others will greatly impact the outcome of the group project.

7 reasons why collaboration is important:

1. It helps us problem-solve.
2. Collaboration brings people (and organizations) closer together.
3. Collaboration helps people learn from each other.
4. It opens up new channels for communication.
5. Collaboration boosts morale across your organization.
6. It leads to higher retention rates.
7. Collaboration makes us more efficient workers.



(II) Writing

Opinion essay: مقال الرأى

مقال الرأى هو مقال توضح فيه رأيك فى موضوع ما، ويجب ذكر رأيك بوضوح خلال المقال، كما تقدم حججًا وأسبابًا و وجهات نظر مختلفة حول الموضوع وتدعمها أدلة أو أمثلة:

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction	Main body	Conclusion
فى المقدمة يجب أن تقوم بتقديم موضوعك وإبداء رأيك بوضوح. تأكد من أنها تحتوى على جملة الموضوع أى جملة تلخص النقطة الرئيسية فى مقالتك.	بعد المقدمة يجب أن تدعم بيان رأيك. اكتب عدة فقرات، كل منها يقدم وجهة نظر منفصلة مدعومة بالأسباب. تأكد من أنك لا تبدأ فقرة جديدة؛ لأن الفقرة التى تكتبها الآن طويلة جدًا. ابدأ فقرة جديدة فقط عندما تريد مناقشة فكرة جديدة.	لاختتام مقال رأيك، اكتب فقرة تعيد فيها التعبير عن رأيك باستخدام كلمات مختلفة. يجب تجنب طرح فكرة جديدة أو الرجوع عن رأيك الذى بدأت به المقدمة.

Model Essay

The benefits of volunteering

1. Introduction

Volunteering is important for many reasons that benefit both the community and the volunteers themselves. When someone donates a handful of time, the difference made is tremendous and it shapes a community for the better, while the experience improves the person who donated the time.

2. Main body

Volunteering is what makes a community because it brings people together to work on a goal. Whether it is to cure a disease that affects the whole world, or to help a local family who has fallen in a time of calamity; volunteers make it happen. Community life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. More people working equals less work for each person and less time for the project. So, when it comes to getting the job done, like a community clean up, the more the better.

Donating time will also help volunteers themselves in the future. Volunteering strengthens present skills and also shows an employer that an effort has been made to make an improvement. Such skills include communication skills, ability to work with others, ability to take direction and lead others, dedication and time management. Employers realise that as a volunteer you must be able to prioritise your timetable in order to devote time for activities that benefit others. When employers see active volunteer work, they are much more likely to hire such a person rather than someone who doesn't volunteer. Employers are aware that most people who offer their time are conscientious, honest and hard working individuals.

3. Conclusion

These are just a few reasons why volunteering is important. Not only does it bring hope and happiness to people, but it also leads to spiritual and personal growth. It is an experience that cannot be bought with any amount of money.

Test Yourself (in 20 min)



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 World .... should meet regularly to consider the world problems and encourage peace.
a) readers b) citizens c) leaders d) clients

2 Our teacher always tries to make his lessons .... for all students.
a) avoidable b) enjoyable c) detestable d) perplexing

3 Sleep disorders اضطرابات النوم are a serious .... problem, but they aren't very hard to cure.
a) physical b) herbal c) psychological d) scientific

4 Our new neighbours rarely .... with each other. They are a perfect couple.
a) agree b) argue c) support d) discuss

5 There was a worried .... on my father's face when I told him about my difficult journey.
a) intention b) description c) aviation d) expression

6 We should all work to find an effective .... to the city's traffic problem.
a) ambition b) impression c) solution d) condition

7 Although he started work only last month, he was able to .... many contacts in the company.
a) do b) make c) practise d) avoid

8 You should read the .... notes at the front of the book.
a) explain b) explanation c) explanatory d) explains

9 Ahmed's salary is .... as mine.
a) much b) exactly the same
c) much more d) slightly the same

10 The mouse is almost as .... as the cat. That's amazing.
a) bigger b) biggest c) big d) far big

11 The teacher asked me where I .... at the weekend.
a) used to go b) go
c) am used to going d) am going

12 My job is far .... than I expected.
a) much interesting b) interesting
c) more interesting d) as interesting

13 Ragab .... me at 9:00 last night.
a) used to call b) would call c) calls d) called

14 The building is .... taller than the tree.
a) a bit b) a little more c) as d) many

15 Kareem ran .... faster than Ramy during the race.

a) more
b) as
c) much
d) so

16 I watched TV often in the past, but I .... do this.

a) used to
b) no longer
c) any longer
d) still

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hala and Salwa were best friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they were like an inseparable[1] twin. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however, something happened that almost caused their friendship to break.

Hala had already made plans with Salwa to watch a show. At the last minute, Hala's mother had an errand[2] to run, and someone had to look after her sister. Salwa was disappointed, but said that she would still wait for Hala and watch the show together. The next morning, Hala overheard Salwa telling another friend, "it was a wonderful show. I saw it last night and it was fabulous[3]." Hala got upset. She walked past Salwa and gave her an angry look. Salwa was puzzled. Why was Hala angry with her? When Salwa called out to Hala, she ignored[4] her. After school, Salwa waited for Hala, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Hala just walked on alone, Salwa ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Hala? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Hala answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that." Salwa realized what the problem was and laughed. "I went to a different show. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Hala apologized to Salwa and they were best friends again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase "had an errand to run" means ....

a) go for a ride
b) to go for a walk
c) to solve a problem
d) to do a task

2 The antonym of the word "disappointed" is "..............".

a) frustrated
b) satisfied
c) furious
d) upset

3 When did Hala and Salwa come to be friends again?

a) When Hala looked angrily at Salwa.
b) When Salwa lied to Hala.
c) When Salwa laughed at Hala.
d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.

4 Why did Hala have to cancel watching the show with Salwa?

a) To look after her sister.
b) To go to another show.
c) To make Hala angry.
d) To go with her mother.

(1) لا ينفصل
(2) مشتريات
(3) خرافي
(4) يتجاهل/يتغافل

5 "Hala and Salwa were like an inseparable twin". This means that ....
a) they live together
b) they hate each other
c) they can't leave each other
d) they work in different places

6 Hala was wrong when she ....
a) apologised to Salwa
b) looked after her sister
c) ignored her friend
d) walked home with Salwa

7 Good friends ....
a) shouldn't depend on each other
b) shouldn't think badly of each other
c) should live together
d) should break their promises

8 The best title to the passage is ".........."
a) Friends should be strict to each other
b) Friendship could be broken because of doubt
c) How to end friendship
d) Friends should watch shows together

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Volunteering and tolerance are two of the most important social values. Schools and educational curricula should aim at training children on them at an early age.

a) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الثقافية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن متأخرة.

b) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن مبكرة.

c) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم النظم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الشباب فى سن مبكرة.

d) العمل الخيرى والتسامح خاصيتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والأهداف التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن مبكرة.

2 Many projects will be built on the banks of the New Suez Canal. This will add to the national income and offer many job opportunities.

a) سيتم بناء العديد من المصانع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ويوفر العديد من المنتجات

b) تم بناء العديد من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. أضاف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ووفر العديد من فرص العمل.

c) سيتم بناء العديد من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ويوفر العديد من فرص العمل.

d) سيتم بناء القليل من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الأمن القومى ويوفر العديد من فرص العمل.

3 Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.

a) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاقتصادية فى أن يعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.

b) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا وطن. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.

c) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش بعض الشباب فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل السهلة.

d) قد يتسبب الجهل والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش معظم الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 تعتبر الشعاب المرجانية أهم عوامل جذب السياح لمنطقة البحر الأحمر؛ لذا يجب الحفاظ عليها حتى نحافظ على استدامة السياحة فى هذه المنطقة الهامة من مصر.

a) Coral reefs are the most important distractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should serve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.

b) Coral reefs are the least important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism attainable in this important area of Egypt.

c) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists beside the Red Sea area; so, we should deserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.

d) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.

2 تعتمد طرق التعليم الحديثة على أدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لذلك تسعى وزارة التربية و التعليم إلى توفيرها فى كل مراحل التعليم و خاصة المرحلة الثانوية.

a) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary level.

b) Modern methods of education depend on old technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the primary level.

c) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Health seeks to prevent them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary level.

a) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology instruments such as smart phones and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary level.

3 يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب ومحاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التى تعزز عملية التعلم وتجعل التعليم متعة

a) Schools should be interested on students' talents and try to develop them through similar activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.

b) Schools should be interested in students' talents and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.

c) Schools should be interested in students' hobbies and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning cycle and make education fun.

d) Schools should be interested in students' talents and arrange to develop them through different activities that weaken the learning process and make education fun.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNtDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The benefits of reading."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ....

I used the right structure. ....

I used a topic sentence. ....

I wrote the conclusion. ....

I used the right punctuation. ....

Study 

King Lear
Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

Vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة
climb	يتسلق
the countryside	الريف
cure	علاج/يعالج
dead	ميت
dress	يلبس
duty	واجب
edge	حافة
fall	يسقط
field	حقل
flat	مسطح/منبسط
foolish	أحمق
mice	فئران
purse	حافظة نقود
reward	مكافئة
scared	خائف
steep	شديد الانحدار
strange	غريب
valuable jewel	جوهرة ثمينة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

fight for	يحارب من أجل
get to	يصل إلى
look down	ينظر إلى اسفل
let go	يترك/ يطلق سراح
look up	ينظر لأعلى
blood runs cold	يخاف
take power	يستولى على السلطة
wake up	يستيقظ



King Lear Exercises
Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandfather served as a pilot during the 6th October ....
a) ceremony b) war c) treaty d) conference

2 The aim of terrorists is to .... power, however they claim to help people.
a) take b) give c) devise d) damage

3 In the past, people used to think the earth was .... not round.
a) circulatory b) fake c) flat d) unreal

4 Look out! The stairs are very .... and you may fall down.
a) easy b) straight c) round d) steep

5 My son made us all nervous by standing so close to the .... of the cliff.
a) middle b) bottom c) edge d) hedge

6 At the end of the fair, the school .... go of hundreds of balloons.
a) make b) let c) do d) get

7 The sound of laughter in the empty house made my blood run ....
a) cold b) warm c) hot d) snowy

8 It would be .... to ignore your elders' advice.
a) wise b) foolish c) intelligent d) fabulous

9 Most people are .... of snakes, although some of them are harmless.
a) pleased b) content c) scared d) delighted

10 Winning the match was just a .... for the effort the team had made.
a) conference b) punishment c) trophy d) reward

11 Most bacterial infection can be .... with antibiotics مضادات حيوية.
a) cured b) healed c) caused d) released

12 Our neighbour .... the children in their best clothes for the party.
a) pleased b) harmed c) dressed d) hit



Al-Adwaa Test



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15

1 There should be more laws to help .... our natural resources.
a) damage b) reserve c) deserve d) preserve

2 Doctors believe that children abuse الإساءة للأطفال can lead to serious .... and emotional problems.
a) fictional b) psychological c) economic d) criminal

3 Up till now, there is no .... proof that life exists on other planets.
a) negative b) doubtful c) positive d) valueless

4 Motor racing is really a .... game that attracts only adventure seekers.
a) challenging b) simple c) fragile d) clear

5 The child is advised to .... a bath before going to bed every day.
a) give b) do c) take d) make

6 My teacher is a volunteer in an organisation working on wildlife conservation. The synonym of the word "conservation" is ....
a) destruction b) negligence c) protection d) doubt

7 Kamal is exactly .... as Nader.
a) the same age b) old c) so old d) older

8 After the trip, my brother was .... tired as my father.
a) so b) almost as c) almost so d) slightly as

9 I liked the museum. It was .... more interesting than I expected.
a) lot b) almost c) many d) far

10 This bag is .... than the other one.
a) slightly heavier b) slightly heavy
c) almost heavy d) as heavy

11 Tourists .... to dive in this area, but now they do.
a) used to come b) didn't use to come
c) would come d) came

12 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ....?
a) far slower b) much slower
c) too slowly d) a bit slowly

13 It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.

a) more easier
b) as easy
c) a lot easier
d) almost easiest

14 Jeans .... in different colours, but now they do.

a) are used to coming
b) didn't use to come
c) used to come
d) used not coming

15 When I was young, I .... thin and had a lot of health problems.

a) was
b) used to be
c) would be
d) didn't use to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions[1]. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. It doesn't get tired or complain unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can help explore[2] volcanoes. Certain robots can help vacuum[3] your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned and made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary[4]. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The robot doesn't make mistakes, get tired or complain because it ....

a) is made of plastic
b) is a machine
c) can't speak
d) looks like a human



(1) تعليمات
(2) يستكشف
(3) يكنس
(4) خيالي

17 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT ....
a) expensive b) perfect c) tired d) normal

18 What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?
a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.
b) To tell what a robot is.
c) To describe the things a robot can do.
d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?
a) To help explore Mars.
b) To help make a sandwich.
c) To help read a book.
d) To help tie shoes.

20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots?
a) Robots are foolish.
b) Robots are helpful.
c) Robots are harmless.
d) Robots are dangerous.

21 The robot receives the instructions from ....
a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet

22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over .... years.
a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000

23 The robot is different from man as it ....
a) needs carbon dioxide to live
b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong
c) doesn't object to anything
d) doesn't need space to move

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the best sign of a civilised society.

a) يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذيـن يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمـو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل علامة للإقليم المتحضر.

b) يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى المزيد من العمـال الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجـل النمو والتطور بالطريقة التقليدية. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل علامة للمجتمع المتحضر.

c) يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذيـن يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجـل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل علامة للمجتمع المتحضر.

d) تحتـاج بيئتنـا إلى المزيد مـن الأفراد الذين يمتلكون صفـات أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمـو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل علامة للمجتمع المتحضر.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

للهوايات تأثير إيجابي على صحتنا. فالقراءة هواية مفيدة جدا، لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرا مهدئا. فهي يمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء.

a) Hobbies have a positive effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

b) Hobbies have a positive affection on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a specific effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

c) Hobbies have a negative effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experiences say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

d) Hobbies have a positive effect on our wealth. Reading is a very useless hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on Earth important?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 10



The News

Objectives

- Reading : Online news stories
- Writing : A news report
- Listening : News stories
- Speaking : Presenting news stories
- Language : Past perfect and past perfect passive
- Life Skills : Critical thinking recognising facts and opinions; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions




Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

broadcast (n) (v) (ed)*	نشر/إذاعة/ينشر/يذيع	photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافى
editor (n)	محرر/رئيس تحرير	reporter (n)	مراسل صحفى
fact checker (n)	مراجع حقائق	search engine (n)	محرك بحث
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة	source (n)	مصدر
newsreader (n)	مذيع/قارئ الأخبار		

★ The funeral of the prince was broadcast to the whole country.

Vocabulary on Reading

accurate (adj)	دقيق	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف بـ	select (v) (ed)	ينتقى/يختار
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشى	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
identify (v) (y ied)	يحدد/يتعرف على	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
online (adj) (adv)	عبر الإنترنت	truth (n)	حقيقة
print (v) (ed)	يطبع	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق فيه
range (n)	مجال/معدل	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل إلى الإنترنت
record (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/رقم قياسى/يسجل		

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

Word	Meaning
alarm (n)	إنذار
Caribbean islands	جزر البحر الكاريبى
channel (n)	قناة
correspondent (n)	مراسل صحفى أو تليفزيونى
deliberately (adv)	عمدًا
digital nomads (n)	الرحالة الرقميون
disaster (n)	كارثة
fire service (n)	خدمة الإطفاء
flame (n)	لهب/شعلة نار
headlines (n)	عناوين الأخبار
investigator (n)	محقق/مفتش
journalist (n)	صحفى
Lebanese (adj)	لبنانى
opportunity (n)	فرصة
originally (adv)	أساسًا/أصلًا
perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
photography (n)	التصوير
printing press (n)	الطباعة/المطبعة
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
responsible (adj)	مسئول
scene (n)	مشهد/موقع حدث
unclear (adj)	غير واضح

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
bomb (n)	قنبلة
competition (n)	مسابقة
confirm (n) (v) (ed)	يؤكد
crash (n) (v) (ed)	تحطم/يرتطم/يتحطم
crime (n)	جريمة
digital (adj)	رقمى
discovery (n)	اكتشاف
find (n)	اكتشاف
fix (v) (ed)	يصلح
frequently (adv)	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر
income (n)	دخل
inform (v) (ed)	يبلغ
injury (n)	إصابة
leader (n)	قائد
meteorite (n)	نيزك
onboard (adj)	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)
origin (n)	أصل/مصدر
photography (n)	التصوير
politician (n)	رجل سياسة
press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفى
professional (adj) (n)	محترف
properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
recent (adj)	حديث
satellite (n)	قمر صناعى

space walk (n)	السير في الفضاء	talent (n)	موهبة
species (n)	نوع/فصيلة (حيوانية)	title (n)	عنوان/لقب
suffer (v) (ed)	يعاني	zoom in (v) (ed)	يقرب الصورة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

cause serious problems	يسبب مشكلات خطيرة	send out	يبث
come true	يصبح حقيقة/يتحقق	in charge of	مسئول عن
care about	يهتم بـ	take photographs	يلتقط صورًا
crash into	يصطدم بـ	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
hear about/of	يسمع عن	turn to	يتحول إلى
look into	يفحص	upload to	يحمل إلى
range of	سلسلة من	worried about	قلق عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
----------		accuracy	دقة	accurate	دقيق
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
broadcast	ينشر/يذيع	broadcast	نشر/إذاعة	----------	
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	مسابقة متنافس	competitive	تنافسي
fear	يخشى	fear	خوف/خشية	fearful	مخيف
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية/شخصية	identifiable	يمكن تحديده
inform★	يبلغ	information	معلومات	informative	معلوماتي
investigate	يحقق/يفتش	investigation investigator	تحقيق محقق/مفتش	investigatory	تفتيشي/تحقيقي
select	ينتقي/يختار	selection	اختيار	selective	انتقائي

★ - The leaflet informs customers about healthy eating.
- How can I get information about enrolling on the course?
- This book is very informative about local customs in Africa.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
accurate	دقيق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false غير دقيق/مزيف
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	accomplish/carry out	fail/miss/lose يفشل
broadcast	ينشر/يذيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal يخفى
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate يبعثر/يفصل
fear	يخشى	worry/fright	face يواجه
frequently	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر	generally/often	rarely/seldom نادرًا
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse/disguise يربك
professional	محترف	efficient/skillful	amateur/inexperienced هاوٍ/بلا خبرة
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly/appropriately	wrongly/ improperly بشكل خاطئ
select	ينتقى/يختار	pick out/choose	refuse/reject يرفض/ينبذ
source	مصدر	origin/root	outcome/result ناتج
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/old	modern/up-to-date حديث
trust	ثقة	confidence/faith	doubt/uncertainty شك/عدم تأكد
unreliable	غير موثوق فيه	inaccurate/untrustworthy	dependable/reliable موثوق فيه

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At the end of the race, the first winner was .... by BBC news channel.
   a) offered b) tested c) searched d) interviewed
2. The correspondent has refused to reveal يعلن عن his .... of the news he sent to the channel.
   a) sources b) results c) effects d) doubts
3. My cousin is a/an .... for one of the major fashion magazines.
   a) consumer b) reporter c) officer d) inspector
4. The show of the new band will be .... over the internet.
   a) investigated b) arranged c) broadcast d) accepted
5. Our new next door neighbour is a former .... of Al-Ahram Newspaper.
   a) editor b) reader c) investigator d) inventor



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)



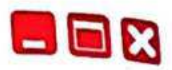
It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news from traditional sources[1] like newspapers and television. Everyone is turning to the internet and social media[2] for news, and some experts fear that we might accept some unreliable[3] news stories as fact because we read social media sites which share our opinions. But is this true? Search engines[4] lead us to a wider range [5] of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always question what we read and never just accept it as true.

- مصادر (1)
- وسائل التواصل (2)
- غير موثوق به (3)
- محركات البحث (4)
- معدل (5)

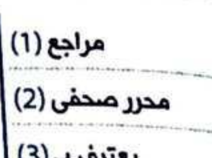


Secondary school students in the UK have had the chance to become news reporters[1] for the day. Students created a news website and produced a news report. They selected reporters and photographers[2] who went out to look for interesting news in their community. When they had interviewed[3] people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the newsreaders[4] who then recorded the news. The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were broadcast[5] on local television.

- مراسلين صحفيين (1)
- مصورون (2)
- يقوم بمقابلة (3)
- قارئو الأخبار (4)
- ينشر/يذيع (5)



Saeed Yousuf is a fact checker[1]. He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the editor[2]. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the points of view held by the writer. He believes that it's very important for the public to trust the information in the story, but some newspapers, he admits[3], are better at checking facts than others. It can cause serious problems if newspapers print stories without checking the information carefully first.



- مراجع (1)
- محرر صحفي (2)
- يعترف بـ (3)



Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Astronauts[1] have made yet another amazing discovery in space. During a recent space walk to fix part of a satellite, which had been damaged after a meteorite[2] had hit it, they saw an unexpected shape on the moon. Using their onboard digital[3] cameras, they zoomed[4] in to discover what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry bombs during World War 2 and had crashed into the moon. After reporting the find, NASA confirmed[5] that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.



رواد الفضاء (1)
نيزك (2)
رقمي (3)
يقرب الصورة (4)
يؤكد على (5)

Listening Text



Newsreader:

Good morning. Here are today's headlines on Monday, 5th October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 fire fighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is unclear[1] how the fire began, but the police think it had been started deliberately[2]. The police and fire services[3] had been called earlier in the evening, but left when everything appeared to be OK. At the time they believed it was yet another false alarm[4]. At midnight, a woman phoned again and said she had seen flames[5] at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the fire fighters arrived, the fire had moved to the front of the shop.



غير واضح (1)
عمدًا (2)
خدمات الإطفاء (3)
إنذار مزيف (4)
لهب (5)
لبناني (6)

A Lebanese[6] photographer has won a top photography competition for his photo of a desert sunrise. Twenty-two-year-old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it

had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography[7] by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but has continued to take photos and is now working as a professional photographer for a news channel.

(7) التصوير
(8) فرصة
(9) دخل
(10) جزر الكاريبي

Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the opportunity[8] to live and work there for two years. Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's main income[9] had been tourism, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their Caribbean islands[10]. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want a relaxing place to work, then this is perfect.

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The poor clerk took on extra work to increase his ....

a) energy b) effort
c) income d) entertainment

2 The police think that the fire had been started .... and it wasn't an accident.

a) strangely b) personally
c) accidentally d) deliberately

3 Every new house in this modern compound is equipped with smoke ....

a) areas b) alarms
c) suits d) services

4 The invention of the .... press is considered the most important invention as it helped transfer knowledge and science to next generations.

a) printing b) sewing
c) cutting d) welding

5 The airline is legally .... for the safety of its passengers.

a) available b) acceptable
c) responsible d) unreliable

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of th

Vocabulary in Use





on Vocabulary

broadcast — ينشر / يذيع
- to send out a programme on TV or radio

editor — محرر/رئيس تحرير
- a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine

foreign correspondent — مراسل أجنبى
- a person who finds a news story in a different country

headlines — عناوين الأخبار
- the titles of news stories

fact checker — مراجع حقائق
- a person who makes sure the information is true

interview — يجرى مقابلة
- to ask someone questions

investigator — محقق
- a person who tries to discover the facts of what happened

journalist — صحفى
- a person who finds a news story and tells the public

news channel — قناة إخبارية
- a television station where you can see news programmes

newsreader — قارئ أخبار
- someone who reads reports on a TV news programme

photographer — مصور فوتوغرافى
- a person who takes photographs, as a job or hobby

reporter — مراسل صحفى
- a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV

scene — مشهد/مكان حدث
- a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime

search engine — محرك البحث
- a computer program that searches the internet for information

source — مصدر
- the place something comes from or starts at

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

1

investigator
محقق/مفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف الحقائق فى الأحداث وخاصة الجرائم والحوادث)
- A team of special investigators have gone to the scene of the explosion.

inspector
مفتش/مراقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم بطريقة صحيحة)
- Last year, school inspectors reported that 20% of young pupils were unable to read or write.

conductor
مفتش القطار أو الأتوبيس (كمسارى)
- As the train pulled out, the senior conductor came around.

2

يستخدم الفعل (admit) بمعنيين مختلفين ويختلف المصدر المشتق منه فى كلٍّ منهما:

admit
يعترف/يقر (والمصدر هنا admission)
- She admitted (that) she had made a mistake.
- In court, he admitted (to) lying about the accident.

admit
يسمح بدخول جامعة أو مدرسة أو مبنى (والمصدر هنا admission/admittance)
- You will not be admitted to the theatre after the performance has started.

fact	حقيقة/معلومة حقيقية	a piece of information that is known to be true ▶ The book is full of facts about the World Cup.
truth (3)	حقيقة/صدق	the state or quality of being true ▶ There is no truth in the rumour they spread about the scientist.
scene	١- منظر/مشهد (فى فيلم/مسرحية) ٢- موقع/مكان (أحداث)	▶ The opening scene of the movie is a battle field. ▶ Firefighters arrived on the scene of the fire within minutes.
scenery (4)	مناظر طبيعية جميلة	▶ We drove through some very beautiful scenery in the country.
view	منظر طبيعى ثابت	▶ We had a fantastic view of the mountains from our room.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▶ He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the editor.

- لاحظ استخدام جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع أداة الربط (before) لتكرار الفعلين.

▶ .... but it must be clear which is which.

- لاحظ العبارة (which is which) والتى تعنى التمييز بين شيئين فالجملة أصلها.

▶ .... but it must be clear which is fact and which is opinion.

▶ .... but opinions are the points of view held by the writer.

- هذه الجملة أصلها.

▶ .... but opinions are the points of view which are held by the writer.

- لاختصار الجملة تم حذف (which are) وتم الإبقاء على التصريف الثالث (held) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

▶ Search engines lead us to a wider range of sources which means we can read the news from many different places.

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل (which) هنا للإشارة إلى الجملة قبلها.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A team of special .... have gone to explore the scene of the explosion.
   a) investigators b) conductors
   c) employers d) leaders
2. The court may assume يفترض that your silence is an .... of guilt.
   a) admittance b) admission
   c) affection d) invention
3. He always spoke the ...., whether people liked it or not.
   a) lie b) fact
   c) truth d) truce
4. The research revealed some interesting .... about the behaviour of cats.
   a) fictions b) facts
   c) truths d) truces
5. The movie opens with a .... in a New York skyscraper.
   a) view b) scenery
   c) landscape d) scene

Check the answers at the end of the book.



Practice

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practice makes perfect!

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The CNN news station .... programmes around the world in many languages.
a) consumes b) downloads c) broadcasts d) reports

2 My father got a position as an assistant .... at a new magazine.
a) editor b) seller c) newsreader d) worker

3 The young actor is a very private man رجل كتوم and rarely gives .... to the press.
a) meetings b) interviews c) seminars d) dates

4 I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an ....
a) photographer b) programmer c) editor d) newsreader

5 He worked for the magazine as a wildlife .... and he travels to many countries looking for good shots.
a) reporter b) correspondent c) photographer d) writer

6 The novelist began his career as a newspaper .... in New York.
a) programmer b) reporter c) influencer d) podcaster

7 Around 2001, the Google search .... rose to prominence. بروز/شهرة
a) engine b) power c) motor d) page

8 Old people always say that television is their most useful .... of local information.
a) result b) source c) reason d) practice

9 The naughty student was ashamed to .... that he had lied to his teachers.
a) deny b) deploy c) admit d) apply

10 The writer .... folk stories قصص شعبية from all over the world for his new book.
a) scattered b) spread c) told d) collected

11 Experts advise us that .... of failure should not stop us trying to get success.
a) pleasure b) fear c) treasure d) delight

12 The restaurant was recently .... as one of the best in the area.
a) selected b) replaced c) reformed d) depicted

13 If you are .... and downloading big files, you need a quicker modem.
a) setting b) making c) overloading d) uploading

14 Police officers are now at the crime ...., searching for clues.
a) view b) scenery c) scene d) landform

15 The earthquake was the worst natural .... to hit the city for over 50 years.
a) disaster b) achievement c) acceptance d) trend

16 The camera .... in on the old man's face hearing the bad news.
a) boomed b) zoomed c) bombed d) faded

17 In this new .... age, computers and the Internet are part of our everyday life.

a) false b) facial c) digital d) trivial

18 The new machines were not yet .... enough to give useful results.

a) valued b) accurate c) hazardous d) complex

19 Working as a news .... in places at war is a dangerous job.

a) manager b) agent c) correspondent d) boss

20 I think Alan .... ignored me when he saw me at the party.

a) hopefully b) excitedly c) intentionally d) deliberately

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 The trip to America was a dream which has .... true for Mahmoud.

a) come b) gone c) fell d) grew

22 The discovery of DNA was a major scientific ....

a) achieve b) achievement c) achieved d) achievable

23 You mustn't trust the rumors إشاعات. The antonym of the verb "trust" is ....

a) recognise b) realise c) depend d) doubt

24 Police officers are looking .... the disappearance of two children kidnapped yesterday.

a) for b) of c) into d) up

25 The shop owner left his elder son in .... of the shop for a week.

a) change b) charge c) account d) balance

26 The .... newsletter النشرة الإخبارية at the British Council is published once every two months.

a) inform b) informed c) informative d) information

27 All young people have turned .... social media for news and information.

a) with b) on c) at d) to

28 Big stores have to .... for customers in the Christmas season.

a) compete b) competed c) competition d) competitive

29 The President's speech will be broadcast on all channels at 6.00 this evening. The verb "broadcast" is similar in meaning to ....

a) transmit b) download c) consume d) watch

30 After the boxer won the championship, he turned professional. The word "professional" can be the opposite of ....

a) academic b) smart c) amateur d) experimented





Lessons 1 & 2

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

B Language

Past perfect tense

زمن الماضى التام

Form
Subj.+ had + P.P. ▶ • By yesterday, I had read 5 stories.

Negation
Subj.+ hadn't + P.P. ▶ • I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.

Interrogative
Had + subj. + P.P. ▶ • What had she done before going out?
• Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday?

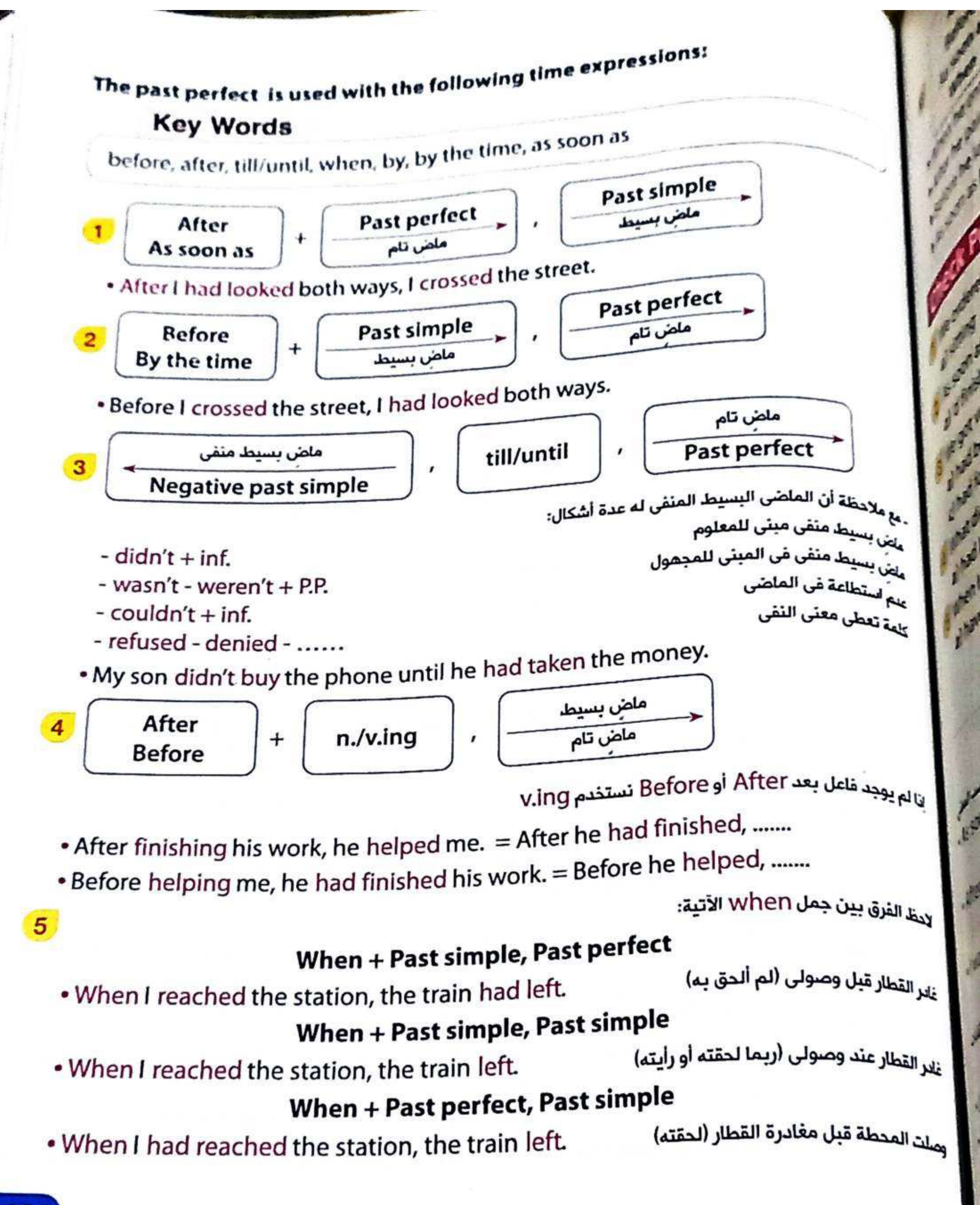
Passive
Obj.+ had been + P.P. ▶ • By the time I reached the cinema, all the tickets had been sold.

Usage
الاستخدام

1. **For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.**
يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى: الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط.
   - I showed my mother what I had bought from the market.
   - He admitted that he had lied to his father more than once.

2. **For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.** يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.
   - There was glass on the floor as Osama had broken the window.

3. **For duration before something in the past.**
يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا لفترة فى الماضى قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار.
   - I had had the bike for ten years before I bought a car.
   - By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I had been there for five years.



The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Key Words

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as

1 | After / As soon as | + | Past perfect (ماضٍ تام) | , | Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) |

• After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.

2 | Before / By the time | + | Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) | , | Past perfect (ماضٍ تام) |

• Before I crossed the street, I had looked both ways.

3 | Negative past simple (ماضٍ بسيط منفى) | , | till/until | , | Past perfect (ماضٍ تام) |

- مع ملاحظة أن الماضى البسيط المنفى له عدة أشكال:

- didn't + inf. — ماضٍ بسيط منفى مبنى للمعلوم
- wasn't - weren't + P.P. — ماضٍ بسيط منفى فى المبنى للمجهول
- couldn't + inf. — عدم استطاعة فى الماضى
- refused - denied - ...... — كلمة تعطى معنى النفى

• My son didn't buy the phone until he had taken the money.

4 | After / Before | + | n./v.ing | , | ماضٍ بسيط / ماضٍ تام |

إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing

• After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished, ...
• Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped, ...

5 لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية:

When + Past simple, Past perfect

• When I reached the station, the train had left. — غادر القطار قبل وصولى (لم ألحق به)

When + Past simple, Past simple

• When I reached the station, the train left. — غادر القطار عند وصولى (ربما لحقته أو رأيته)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

• When I had reached the station, the train left. — وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

6 After / Before / As soon as / When + 

, 

إذا لم يكن هناك فارق زمني بين الأحداث

- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ordered our food after we .... at the restaurant.
   a) sitting b) had sat c) sit d) were sitting
2. As soon as I .... a story, I started the next one.
   a) 'd finished b) finish c) have finished d) was finishing
3. We got very wet because we .... to take our umbrellas.
   a) had been forgetting b) forget
   c) had forgotten d) have forgotten
4. What did you do after .... school yesterday?
   a) had left b) left c) leave d) leaving
5. When I .... the stadium, the match started. I didn't miss the beginning.
   a) have reached b) had reached c) reach d) was reaching


Check the answers at the end of the book.





١) إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضٍ تام والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل)

- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

٢) يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realise عند استخدامها في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق.

- I thought I had finished my homework, but I realised I had forgotten the last page.
- I knew where I had put the keys.

- يجب ملاحظة المبنى للمجهول جيدا إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول وهنا نستخدم had been + P.P. للماضى التام و was/were + P.P. للماضى البسيط.

- After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.
- Before the e-mail was sent, it had been written.

- يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد after/before/until وليس جملة كاملة.

- My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.
- Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.

- يمكن أن يستخدم الماضى التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم فى وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام وفى هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط بدلًا منه .

- He had been to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.
- He went to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.

- ولكن إذا أشار الماضى التام إلى خبرة وليس حدثًا محددًا لا يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط.

- He had never seen snow until he moved to Europe. NOT ~~He never saw snow.~~

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After the money ...., I was able to buy the new car.

a) had been saved
b) saved
c) had saved
d) has been saved

2 When my father looked at me angrily, I realised that I .... something wrong.

a) have done b) would do c) am doing d) had done

3 I thought Hany .... a car, but he said it was his brother's.

a) had been bought b) had bought c) was buying d) has bought

4 Ali said that he .... Osama to his party the previous week.

a) invited b) has invited c) had invited d) would invite

5 He .... the film until he had booked the ticket.

a) had seen b) wasn't seen c) hadn't seen d) couldn't see



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... the careless boy because he had made many mistakes.
a) punished b) had punished c) punishing d) have punished

2 They couldn't go swimming because they .... their swimsuits.
a) forget b) have forgotten
c) had forgotten d) were forgetting

3 After he had written the letter, he .... it.
a) has posted b) posted c) was posting d) was posted

4 He continued his journey .... he had changed the tyre.
a) before b) ago c) since d) after

5 When I .... enough money, I bought the smartphone.
a) had saved b) was saving c) have saved d) would save

6 The people in the city felt a lot safer after the wild animal .... by the police.
a) had caught b) had been caught
c) was catching d) has been caught

7 After .... my work, I went back home with my friends.
a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) had finished

8 As soon as they had found a flat, they .... married.
a) get b) getting c) had got d) got

9 He said that they .... each other for many years.
a) have known b) knew
c) had known d) have been knowing

10 When they .... the theatre, the play had already started.
a) reach b) reached c) had reached d) will reach

11 After the house ...., we furnished it.
a) had been painted b) has painted
c) had painted d) is painted

12 I applied for a job in a nearby bank .... I graduated.
a) already b) while c) just d) as soon as

13 I knew that she .... Luxor before, so I asked her to recommend a good hotel.
a) visited b) had visited c) has been visiting d) has visited

14 When I .... the news, I couldn't believe it.
a) heard b) hear c) will hear d) was hearing

15 By the time Maryam was 26, she .... married for three years.
a) has b) had been c) has been d) was being

16 I was doing my homework when I realized that I .... to study 2 pages.
a) had forgotten b) forgot c) was forgetting d) have forgotten

17 The woman .... for a taxi before her friends arrived.
a) has phoned b) phones c) phoning d) had phoned

18 The facts .... by the reporter before he wrote his report.
a) had checked b) had been checked c) are checked d) are checking

19 I didn't phone Amgad .... I had lost his number.
a) before b) until c) because d) by the time

20 She said that the robber .... her when she was opening the door to her apartment.
a) attacked b) was attacking
c) has attacked d) had been attacked

21 The prisoner .... free until he had returned the stolen things.
a) didn't set b) doesn't set c) hasn't set d) wasn't set

22 They waited patiently until the headmaster .... speaking.
a) was finishing b) has finished c) finished d) finishes

23 At first, I was very nervous, but after a while I .... to feel more confident.
a) began b) begin c) have begun d) had begun

24 He .... the Nobel Prize until he had written 100 novels.
a) awarded b) hadn't awarded
c) didn't award d) wasn't awarded

25 My father read the article which .... about cloning.
a) had written b) wrote
c) had been written d) has been written

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.
a) The children swam in the pool after they had finished their homework.
b) The children swam in the pool after they finished their homework.
c) The children had swum in the pool after they finished their homework.
d) The children didn't swim in the pool until they had finished their homework.

27 When I closed my room door, my friend had played some music. This means ....

a) My friend stopped playing music after I closed my room door.
b) I could still hear the music playing, my friend did not stop.
c) My friend stopped playing music first, then I closed my room door.
d) On closing my room door, my friend started playing music.

28 Ali looked both ways, and then he crossed the street. This means ....

a) Ali crossed the street after looking both ways.
b) When Ali had crossed the street, he looked both ways.
c) After crossing the street, Ali had looked both ways.
d) Before looking both ways, Ali crossed the street.

29 Which one of the following is correctly structured?

a) As soon as Samy phoned me, I visited him.
b) As soon as Samy had phoned me, I had visited him.
c) As soon as Samy phoned me, I had visited him.
d) As soon as Samy phones me, I visited him.

30 Which one of the following isn't correctly structured?

a) When I reached home, my mother had cooked the dinner.
b) When I had reached home, my mother cooked the dinner.
c) When I reached home, my mother finished cooking the dinner.
d) When I had reached home, my mother had cooked the dinner.

31 I ....to him until he had apologised.

a) talked b) didn't talk c) wasn't talking d) hadn't talked

32 .... she cooked the food, she washed the dishes.

a) Until b) By c) No sooner d) After

33 As soon as the bell ...., the students left the classroom.

a) was ringing b) didn't ring c) rings d) rang

34 .... I left the office, I had written 5 reports.

a) After b) By the time c) As soon as d) Until

35 When I got to school, the first lesson ....

a) had started b) had been started
c) starting d) had been starting



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The president addressed the nation in a television .... after the elections.
a) publication b) spread c) broadcast d) meeting

2 Mrs. Mary is a/an .... for a small publishing fashion magazine in Oxford.
a) editor b) discoverer c) programmer d) actor

3 The famous TV announcer has .... celebrities مشاهير and political leaders on her programme for over 25 years.
a) reviewed b) interviewed c) replied d) recovered

4 In the last few years, there has been a great investment in the new .... of energy which don't cause pollution.
a) causes b) results c) consumptions d) sources

5 I must .... that the results of the exam were disappointing.
a) admit b) deny c) collect d) extract

6 Some local farmers still use .... farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.
a) developed b) modern c) traditional d) applied

7 There are plans to send .... and some ordinary people to Mars by 2030.
a) collectors b) sailors c) astrologers d) astronauts

8 You can enjoy an excellent .... of leisure and sporting facilities in Sharm El Sheikh.
a) range b) queue c) activity d) line

9 I saw her a few days before she ....
a) immigrates b) had immigrated c) immigrating d) immigrated

10 After .... school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.
a) had left b) leaving c) being left d) leave

11 Once the journalists had asked all their questions, the politician ....
a) was left b) was leaving c) had left d) left

12 By the time we got to the stadium, our team .... two goals.
a) has scored b) were scoring c) had scored d) will score

13 I .... a radio programme about William Golding last week.
a) heard b) was hearing c) had heard d) am hearing

14 Ahmed .... for the company for five years before he quit and went with their rivals.
a) was working b) had worked c) has worked d) is working

15 I didn't go with you to the cinema because I .... that film.
a) already see
b) have already seen
c) didn't see
d) had already seen

16 The student decided not to make that mistake again after .... by the teacher.
a) being punished
b) punishing
c) had punished
d) punished

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Tigers are one of the most powerful and graceful[1] animals in the world. The different species[2] that still exist today, namely the Bengal, Indochina, Siberian, South China and Sumatra tigers are in danger of becoming extinct[3]. Due to irresponsible hunting, the Bali, Caspian and Java tigers have already become extinct. This could soon happen to the other species too.

Tigers do not shy away from water and enjoy bathing in streams and lakes to escape the heat in hot climates.

In the past, tigers were considered as pests[4]. With a smaller area to hunt, as man had taken up more of the land to build upon, the tigers found less areas for themselves to hunt. They thus turned to farms to get their food. Farmers' livestock were attacked by these tigers. People were then encouraged to hunt and kill these animals with the promise of rewards. Even after the threat[5] of tigers on livestock was over, man continued to hunt tigers, this time for recreation[6]. Poachers too hunt tigers for their body parts knowing that the skin of tigers is much sought after. Bones and other organs are also used as ingredients[7] in traditional Chinese medicine. Although killing tigers is illegal, it is still being carried out and unless it is stopped, the remaining species of tigers will soon become extinct too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How many species of tigers were there originally?
a) three.
b) four.
c) five.
d) eight.

2 There were less hunting grounds for the tigers because ....
a) the tiger population was becoming bigger
b) man had occupied the land
c) the farmers put their livestock there
d) they liked hunting livestock

3 Poachers are people who ....
a) catch tigers
b) make Chinese medicine
c) hunt tigers illegally
d) hunt tiger's body parts

(1) رشيق (2) فصيلة (3) منقرض (4) حشرات (5) تهديد (6) تسلية (7) مقادير

4 Illegal poaching will ....
a) cause the extinction of tigers
b) increase the population of tigers
c) increase the amount of Chinese medicine
d) increase the price of body parts

5 Hunting tigers is considered a kind of ....
a) business
b) mercy
c) recreation
d) both a and c

6 The other noun that means "livestock" is ....
a) poachers
b) cattle
c) pests
d) tigers

7 Tigers' bones can be used in ....
a) traditional medicine
b) food
c) recreation
d) feeding livestock

8 According to the passage, tigers ....
a) don't fear hot climates
b) are in danger of extinction
c) don't like water
d) don't eat livestock

3 **A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1 Mass media play an important part in shaping public opinion and public attitudes. Therefore, there are new laws that assure the credibility and responsibility of them.

a) تلعب وسائل التواصل دورا محوريا فى صياغة الرأى العام والاتجاهات العالمية ومن ثم هناك قوانين معاصرة تؤكد صدقهم ومسلولياتهم.

b) يلعب الإعلام دورا غير مهم فى تشكيل الرأى العالمى والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة تضمن مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

c) تشكل وسائل الإعلام دورا بارزًا فى صياغة الرأى والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك لا توجد قوانين جديدة لضمان مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

d) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورا هاما فى تشكيل الرأى العام والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة تضمن مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

2 Many young men accept the news they get from social media as a truth. However, much of this news can be misleading and may disturb stability and peace of society.

a) يوافق الكثير من الشباب على الأخبار التى يسمعونها من وسائل الإعلام كأنها حقيقة. لكن الكثير من الأخبار قد تكون مضللة وتضر بمصلحة المجتمع وسلامته.

b) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التى يحصلون عليها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى على أنها حقيقة ومع ذلك فإن كثيرًا من الأخبار قد تكون خادعة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلام فى أى مجتمع.

c) يقبل كثير من الناس الأخبار التى يمتلكونها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى على أنها صدق. ومع ذلك فإن كثير من الأخبار قد تكون صادقة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلام فى المجتمع.

d) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التى تأتيهم من وسائل الإعلام على أنها واقع. ولكن الكثير من الأخبار قد لا تكون خادعة وتضر الاستقرار والسلام فى أى مجتمع.

3 Due to passive modern forms of entertainment such as the TV and the internet, young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.

a) بسبب وسائل الترفيه الحديثة السلبية مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الشباب إلى اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.

b) لأن وسائل الاستمتاع الحديثة غير المعروفة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت قد تجعل الشباب يفقد اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.

c) نتيجة لوسائل الترفيه السلبية الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقد المراهقين إلى اللياقة العقلية والمرونة الجسدية.

d) بسبب وسائل الاستمتاع السلبية الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الناس إلى الكفاءة النفسية والثبات الجسدي.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 هل توافق على وضع قوانين لمراقبة وحظر بعض مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعي خاصة التي أصبحت مصدراً للشائعات المهددة للمجتمع؟

a) Do you accept putting laws to watch and prohibit any websites and mass media pages generally those that become a source of rumours which threat society?

b) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and prohibit some websites and social media pages especially those which have become a source of rumours which threaten society?

c) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and let some websites and social media blogs specially what have become a resource of facts and threaten society?

d) Are you for putting laws to watch and ban any websites and social media ads especially those which became a source of truth and threatened society?

2 يختلف الناس فى نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى انها تطور طبيعي، ومنهم من يظن ان أضرارها تفوق مزاياها وأنها أصبحت تضر بالعلاقات الاجتماعية.

a) People differ in their view of communication development. Some of them think it is a natural development. Others think that its harms exceed its advantages and it is harming social relationships.

b) People are different in their sight of communication progress. Few of them think it is normal development. Some of them believe that its damages pass their advantages and it is hurting social relationships.

c) People differ in their opinion of connection development. Some of them see it is a usual development. Others guess that its harms exceed its disadvantages and it is damaging social relationships.

d) People are different in their view of communication development. Some of them say it is a neutral development. Others think that its harms overweight its advantages and it is harmless to social relationships.

3 يستغل المنتجـون مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى الإعلان عن منتجاتهم لأنهـا تجذب الملايين من الناس لكن هذه الإعلانات أصبحت مزعجة لتكرارها ولإعاقتها لمستخدمى المواقع المختلفة.

a) Producers use mass media in announcing their products as they attract millions of people. But these announcements have become annoying and that's because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites pages.

b) Producers use social media in advertising their productions because they attract millions of people. However, these adverts have become disturbing because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites blogs.

c) Producers use social media in advertising their products because they attract millions of people. However, these adverts have become annoying because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.

d) Producers take social media in advertising their produce since they attract millions of people. Though these adverts have become disturbing as a result of their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ....

I used the right structure. ....

I used a topic sentence. ....

I wrote the conclusion. ....

I used the right punctuation. ....

Study 

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

adults (n)	كبار/بالغين	keen (adj)	حريص/متحمس
agree (v) (d)	يوافق	launch (v) (ed)	يطلق
brilliant (adj)	متميز/رائع	teenage (n)	مرحلة المراهقة
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	teenager (n)	مراهق
creation (n)	خلق/إنتاج	tone (n)*	نغمة/نبرة صوت
education (n)	التعليم	speed (n)	سرعة
journalism (n)	صحافة	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

* The answering machine asked to leave a message after the tone.

Vocabulary on Listening

coastal (adj)	ساحلى	stick (v)	يعلق/يلتصق
emergency (n)	طوارئ	uninjured (adj)	غير مصاب
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
involved (adj)	متورط	wave (n)	موجة
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	witness (n) (v) (ed)	شاهد/يشهد
pronunciation (n)	نطق		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

artist (n)	فنان	necropolis (n)	مقبرة كبيرة
barrier (n)	حاجز	objects (n)	أشياء
bury (v) (ied)	يدفن	order (n)	ترتيب
cave (n)	كهف	overhead (adj)	هوائي
century (n)	قرن	permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
consequences (n)	نتائج/عواقب	recent (adj)	حديث
council (n)	مجلس/هيئة/معهد	remains (n)	بقايا/آثار
erect (v) (ed)	يبني/يشيد	remarkable (adj)	رائع
exploration (n)	استكشاف	route (n)	طريق
historian (n)	مؤرخ	sculpture (n)	تمثال/نحت
incident (n)	حادث	spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسمي
location (n)	موقع	successful (adj)	ناجح
monument (n)	أثر	whale (n)	حوت

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

call for help	يطلب/يتصل للمساعدة	give permission	يمنح إذنًا/تصريحًا
cover the important information	يغطي/يتناول المعلومات الهامة	in the hope of	على أمل أن
able to	قادر أن	interested in	مهتم بـ
example of	مثال لـ	keen on	حريص على
happy about	سعيد بـ	spokesperson for	متحدث لـ

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
bury يدفن	burial دفن	buried مدفون
compare* يقارن	comparison مقارنة	comparative مقارن / نسبى
educate يعلم	education التعليم	educational تعليمى
explore يستكشف	exploration استكشاف	exploratory استكشافى
locate يحدد موقع/يقع	location موقع	located قائم/موضوع
permit يسمح	permission إذن/تصريح	permitted مسموح
succeed ينجح	success نجاح	successful ناجح

* - I compared several cars before buying one.
- He's a well-behaved child in comparison with his brother.
- She did a comparative study of classical and modern art.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
barrier حاجز	obstruction/blockade	assistance مساعدة opening افتتاح
brilliant متميز/رائع	outstanding/ distinguished	ordinary/common عادى/شائع
compare يقارن	contrast	discard يستبعد
consequences نتائج/عواقب	results	causes/reasons أسباب
erect يبنى/يشيد	build/construct	destroy/demolish يدمر
keen حريص/متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned/indifferent غير مهتم
launch يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop ينهى/يوقف
permission إذن/تصريح	agreement/license	denial/refusal إنكار/رفض
remarkable رائع	extraordinary	familiar مألوف ordinary عادى

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The company hopes to .... the new fashion line by next October.
a) attack b) compete c) consume d) launch

2 My cousin received her .... at private schools until secondary school.
a) treatment b) surgery c) education d) punishment

3 Children must be accompanied by a/an .... in the museum.
a) friend b) adult c) driver d) safeguard

4 These rocks contain the fossils and .... of extinct insects.
a) remains b) bricks c) specks d) seeds

5 Archaeologists have recently uncovered a .... of an ancient Egyptian king in Saqqara where they found his mummy.
a) palace b) necropolis c) valley d) cave

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

What kind of websites did Amy Hope want to create? Why?

A teenage world!



A new website has just been launched[1] by teenagers for teenagers.

Our World is the creation[2] of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'

Our World has news, technology, education[3], music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults[4],' Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen[5] on the same things as me.

(1) يطلق
(2) خلق/إنتاج
(3) تعليم
(4) كبار/بالغين
(5) حريص/متحمس

Do you think that the website Our World is useful? Why?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Two days ago historian, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient remains[1] of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been buried[2] for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given permission[3] to explore a necropolis[4] on Luxor's West Bank, in the hope of finding out more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting objects.

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most remarkable[5] discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a spokesperson[6] for the government said.

(1) بقايا/آثار
(2) مدفون
(3) إذن/تصريح
(4) مقبرة كبيرة
(5) رائع
(6) متحدث رسمي

What is the strangest piece of news have you ever heard or read?

Listening Text (1)





1. Two walkers had a lucky[1] escape last night after a storm hit the small coastal[2] village of Largs in Scotland. Heavy rain started at 5pm and by 6pm strong winds had blown a lot of water onto the footpath on the sea front. Witnesses[3] say that the walkers were halfway along the path when a huge wave[4] knocked them over. Police believe that the walkers were two local women, but no names have been given, and the women have been returned safe and well to their families.

(1) محظوظ
(2) ساحلي
(3) شهود
(4) موجة

2. Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager stuck in a bathroom window. Neighbours saw the feet of 13-year-old Leila Tahar sticking [5] out of the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to free the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house, but had forgotten her keys! She said, 'The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!'

(5) عالق

What is strange about the second piece of news in the text?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Newsreader:

Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly. The plastic sculpture[1] of a whale's tail, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local artist, had been erected by the Local Council at the end of an overground railway line. Little did they expect the work of art to save lives. However, last week when, for some unknown[2] reason, the train could not stop at the final station on its route, it crashed through the safety barriers[3]. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the runaway train and prevent it from falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily.

Luckily, the train had been emptied just moments before, so the only person onboard was the train driver. As he got off the train uninjured[4], he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very grateful[5] to the artist who had created the tail.

So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives!

In other news ...

(1) تمثال
(2) غير معروف
(3) حواجز
(4) غير مصاب
(5) شاكر/ممتن

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Let's check our memory!

1. The fisherman's small boat was smashed by a huge ...., but the fisherman was safe.
   a) wave b) drought c) currant d) shot
2. The glue .... to the little boy's fingers every time he uses it.
   a) spreads b) sticks c) wastes d) affects
3. .... of the murder reported hearing two gunshots and a scream.
   a) Inspectors b) Criminals c) Witnesses d) Inventors
4. We were .... to our neighbours for letting us use their garden for the party.
   a) regretful b) useful c) hateful d) grateful
5. Scientists believe that many .... areas are in danger of being flooded because of the changes caused by global warming.
   a) desert b) empty
   c) coastal d) mountain

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

launch — يطلق
- to start something, usually big or important

remains — بقايا/آثار
- the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared

necropolis — مقبرة
- an area of land where dead people are buried, especially a large ancient one

permission — إذن/تصريح
- if you have permission to do something, you are allowed to do it

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

Notes on Vocabulary

1

permission (uncountable)
(تصريح) موافقة/رضا

▸ Osama drove his father's car without his permission.

permit (countable)
تصريح رسمي مكتوب

▸ People from other countries require work permits.

2

location
موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)

▸ We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.

▸ Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.

position
موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا)
مكانة/وظيفة/مركز في الملعب

▸ First, get yourself into a comfortable position.

▸ I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

3

exploration
استكشاف (مكان)

▸ Scientists from all over the world have plans for space exploration.

discovery
اكتشاف (شيء لم يكن معروفًا من قبل)

▸ The discovery of oil has shared in the development of industry.

invention
اختراع (شيء لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)

▸ No other invention had a greater effect on people's life than the internet.

4

proud of
(يتبعها اسم/ضمير أو (verb + ing))
فخور بـ

▸ The company is proud of its achievements.

proud to
فخور أن (يتبعها الفعل في صيغة المصدر)

▸ I'm proud to say we made the right decision.

proud that
فخور أن (يتبعها جملة كاملة)

▸ We're proud that they choose our school for the competition.

5

recent
حديث (مصنوع/تام منذ فترة قصيرة)

▸ All applicants should send a recent photo with their CV.

modern
حديث/متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)

▸ Modern technology has had a huge impact on all of us.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- ______ said 13-year-old Henry ______ and his team discovered the ancient remains of a 15 or 16-year-old girl.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) فى التعبيرات السابقة بسبب استخدام العبارة كاملة كصفة للاسم بعدها.

- The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (was) مع (government) لأن المقصود الحكومة ككل وليس كأفراد.

- 'It's much more interesting than most websites.'

- لاحظ استخدام (much) مع صفة المقارنة (more interesting) للتعبير عن درجة المقارنة بمعنى (بكثير).

- Little did they expect the work of art to save lives.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الاستفهام (did they expect) لأن الجملة بدأت بـ (Little) وهو ما يعتبر (inversion).
ونفس الشيء، قد يحدث مع تركيبات كثيرة إذا بدأنا بها مثل:
(No sooner - Hardly – Not only – In no way – Seldom - Rarely)

Check Point 3

Let's check our memory!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Space travel is one of the wonders of ______ science.
   a) old b) recent c) modern d) vague
2. I'm very proud ______ take part in this great project.
   a) of b) to c) in d) that
3. International communication was changed a lot by the ______ of the internet.
   a) discovery b) invitation c) exploration d) invention
4. I didn't know you played hockey. In what ______ do you play?
   a) site b) location c) position d) sight
5. Parents have to give their ______ for their children to go on school trips.
   a) permission b) grade c) licence d) degree

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Historians have not always .... about the exact date of Ramses II's coronation تتويج.
a) accepted b) agreed c) expected d) explored

2 Yehia El Fakhrany gave a/an .... performance as King Lear. All the audience liked him.
a) brilliant b) awful c) amazed d) terrible

3 This school is devoted مخصصة to the .... of children with reading difficulties.
a) practising b) prohibition c) education d) obligation

4 The clothes company is expected to .... several new products next year.
a) erect b) attack c) attach d) launch

5 "Teen Stuff" magazine is very popular among .... as it deals with their interests.
a) adults b) infants c) teenagers d) directors

6 In case of ...., you can call 122 for police, the fire department or an ambulance.
a) evaluation b) emergency c) accuracy d) presentation

7 In Paris, I met a group of young ...., poets, film-makers and painters.
a) fans b) footballers c) enemies d) artists

8 Electric cables are usually .... beneath the streets ground.
a) excavated b) buried c) drilled d) deployed

9 Many people believe that poverty is one of the direct .... of overpopulation.
a) purposes b) causes c) consequences d) reasons

10 The hotel is in a central .... near the facilities at the city centre.
a) post b) location c) post d) posture

11 Ancient .... are protected by law as part of the human civilization.
a) regulations b) mountains c) monuments d) points

12 You must get .... from the owners before viewing the flat offered for rent.
a) position b) treaty c) contract d) permission

13 The new .... revealed the artist's skillful hand.
a) intention b) invention c) sculpture d) scene

14 We found that the motorway is the most direct .... outside the city.
a) street b) route c) road d) avenue

15 The driver slowed down as he approached the police .... at which licences were checked.
a) officer b) station c) state d) barrier

16 Winning the cup was a .... achievement for our national team.

a) horrible b) strict c) remarkable d) fearful

17 My son is .... to learn more about art history, that's why he will study it at university.

a) profound b) keen c) brave d) refrained

18 The engineers found an ancient .... while digging for oil.

a) necropolis b) post c) scene d) trial

19 A new version of the game for computers will be .... in February.

a) populated b) printed c) consumed d) launched

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20 The teacher .... me permission to go home early as I was ill.

a) took b) got c) gave d) obtained

21 The lady taught her children to .... for help if there was an emergency.

a) offer b) ring c) yell d) call

22 They are not at all happy .... the rise in taxes.

a) about b) with c) at d) of

23 I called early in the .... of catching her before she went to work.

a) species b) call c) hope d) shout

24 Using the Internet is an easy way to make a .... between prices.

a) compare b) comparison c) compared d) comparative

25 It is believed that no one can be .... at everything.

a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

26 The church was erected in 1582. The verb "erect" is similar in meaning to the verb ....

a) demolish b) destroy c) set d) construct

27 My family are all very keen on sports. The synonym of the adjective "keen" is ....

a) indifferent b) eager c) strange d) accurate

28 People living in the village are not happy .... the decision to build the factory near their land.

a) in b) about c) at d) up

29 A spokesperson .... the oil company met the reporters to announce the new projects.

a) for b) in c) off d) on

30 The factory launched a new line of jeans. The word "launch" can be the opposite of the word ....

a) end b) continue c) start d) release



Lessons 3 & 4



B Language

Past perfect (Extra points)

1

No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely	+	لم يكد ...... حتى ...... had + subject + P.P did + subject + inf. الماضى التام أو البسيط فى شكل سؤال	+	than / when / when	+	Past simple

- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.
- No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأتِ فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:

Subject + had	+	no sooner / hardly / scarcely	+	P.P.	+	than / when / when	+	Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

2

On + v.ing = when + clause

- On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked ......, I knew ......

3

By + فترة فى الماضى + ماضٍ تام

- By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had applied for the job.

4

Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked ......

5

It was only when إنه فقط عندما It wasn't until لم يكن حتى	+ ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

Past perfect (other uses) استخدامات أخرى للماضي التام

١) في فعل شرط الحالة الثالثة من If

- If our team had played well yesterday, they would have won the cup.

٢) بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضي.

- I wish I had studied harder last year.

٣) بعد I'd rather في حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبر عن اللوم والندم في الماضي.

- I'd rather you hadn't done that = I wish you hadn't done that.

Check Point 4

Let's check our memory!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. No sooner .... his country than he had lots of problems.
   a) he had left b) he left
   c) had he left d) was he leaving
2. On .... the bad news, he fainted.
   a) hearing b) had heard
   c) heard d) he had heard
3. Having .... a lot of problems, he asked his uncle for help.
   a) had had b) he had had
   c) have d) had
4. It wasn't until midnight that I .... better and went to sleep.
   a) had felt b) felt
   c) feeling d) was feeling
5. When I .... the thief, he ran away.
   a) was seeing b) seen
   c) saw d) had been seen



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- She had hardly arrived home .... the children started crying.
  a) after b) before c) than d) until



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We couldn't get a table because we .... one in advance.
a) had booked
b) haven't booked
c) had not booked
d) weren't booked

2 When I arrived at the employment agency, twenty other people .... before me.
a) had arrived
b) were arrived
c) were arriving
d) had been arrived

3 I saw that most people .... the party when I went there. I didn't see them.
a) leave
b) left
c) have already left
d) had already left

4 It would have been better if you .... her the truth.
a) told
b) had told
c) are telling
d) tell

5 .... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.
a) Having
b) While
c) When
d) After

6 No sooner .... he stepped on my foot than he apologised to me.
a) did
b) had
c) has
d) was

7 .... in a big city before you moved to Alexandria?
a) Have you worked
b) Were you working
c) Had you worked
d) Would you work

8 My cousin .... to a big city before he visited Cairo.
a) wasn't been
b) has never been
c) won't be
d) had never been

9 We weren't allowed to take the plane because we .... the tickets.
a) forget
b) had forgotten
c) have forgotten
d) forgetting

10 Hardly had he found a good job .... he told his father.
a) than
b) then
c) when
d) what

11 When I got to school, the first lesson............ . I missed the start.
a) had already begun
b) has already begun
c) began
d) hadn't begun

12 I asked Ali about Luxor because he .... there.
a) has already been
b) had already been
c) is
d) would be

13 Ramy was hungry because he .... anything all day.
a) hasn't eaten
b) wasn't eaten
c) never eats
d) hadn't eaten

14 After .... in the company for ten years, he left it.
a) works
b) worked
c) had worked
d) working

15 The police had solved the problem before many people .... the protest.
a) joined
b) had joined
c) joining
d) have joined

16 They .... all the doors before they left.
a) have locked
b) will lock
c) had been locking
d) locked

17 Reham didn't want to see the film again because she said she .... it the previous week.
a) saw
b) has seen
c) had seen
d) would see

18 I didn't want to have lunch because I .... with my friends at a restaurant.
a) have eaten
b) had eaten
c) was eating
d) hadn't eaten

19 The children weren't allowed to watch TV because they .... their homework.
a) had done
b) haven't done
c) must have done
d) hadn't done

20 Omar came to the theatre because he .... the play before.
a) hasn't seen
b) had already seen
c) hadn't seen
d) wasn't seeing

21 The criminal changed his name after he .... his hometown.
a) left
b) had been leaving
c) was leaving
d) leaves

22 It was only when he .... the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.
a) was reading
b) had read
c) has read
d) reads

23 When we got the bill, Mohamed .... on paying.
a) has insisted
b) had insisted
c) insisted
d) insists

24 I didn't want to have a coffee because I'd already .... two cups.
a) been drinking
b) drank
c) drunken
d) drunk

25 After the parcel ...., I received it.
a) has arrived
b) arrives
c) had been arrived
d) had arrived

26 When we said goodnight, we had had a good conversation. This means ....
a) Our conversation wasn't finished when we said goodnight.
b) After saying goodnight, our good conversation started.
c) Before saying goodnight, our good conversation finished.
d) We would have a good conversation on going to bed.

27 One of the following is grammatically incorrect?

a) Hardly had Osama applied for the job when he took it.

b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.

c) No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.

d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.

b) The ancient Egyptians had used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.

c) The ancient Egyptians had built the pyramids.

d) The ancient Egyptians believed in life after they had died.

29 Hardly had he made the mistake when he was dismissed. This means ....

a) He was dismissed at first, then he made the mistake.

b) He didn't make the mistake, but he was dismissed.

c) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake.

d) He was dismissed before making the mistake.

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) By the time I came back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.

b) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things changed.

d) By the time I have come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

31 .... had he finished the report when he handed it to the boss.

a) No sooner
b) Scarcely
c) After
d) It was only when

32 .... we had booked the tickets that we took the train to Aswan.

a) No sooner
b) Hardly
c) By the time
d) It was only when

33 .... the money, she bought the kitchen machine.

a) Having saved
b) Having been saved
c) After had saved
d) No sooner had she saved

34 .... my friend, I welcomed him.

a) By the time I met
b) On meeting
c) Having been met
d) Had I met

35 After finishing my exams, I .... my cousins in the countryside.

a) had visited
b) had been visiting
c) was visited
d) will visit





Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills



(I) Language Skills

Self-management

Self-management skills are the abilities that allow people to control their thoughts, feelings and actions. If you have strong self-management skills, you're able to set goals independently and take the initiative to achieve them. Purposeful self-management can help you direct the trajectory of your career and ensure you seek opportunities that get you closer to your goals.

Self-management skills focus on personal responsibility in the following areas:

Organization	Goal setting	Time management
Self-motivation	Stress management	Accountability

How to improve self-management skills

- Assess **your strengths.**
- Develop **organizational systems.**
- Perform **one task at a time.**
- Take **care of your health and wellness.**
- Prioritize **your responsibilities.**
- Create **strict deadlines.**
- Practice **patience.**

Reference: https://www.indeed.com/career-advice/career-development/self-management-skills



(II) Writing

A News Report تقرير إخبارى

A Volunteering Campaign!

A group of teenage students in East Alexandria have started a volunteering campaign to clean the beaches in their area. They have been working for ten hours daily. They have done a great work and people started to know about them and give them all the help they could.

"Summer is about to start and a lot of people are about to visit our city, so it would be suitable to find our beaches clean." said Ahmed Agamy who started the campaign. They collected a lot of rubbish from the dirty beaches and collected them in plastic bags. Some restaurant owners near the beaches provided them with vehicles to take this rubbish to landfill sites.

The beaches are cleaner now and look great. Mariam, one of the participants said, "It was hard work, but we are all delighted to help our society." All the students who took part in the campaign were excited after the work had been done. They said that cleaning the beaches is good for the environment and would help the economy in their city.

Test Yourself (20)



Unit 10
Lessons 3 & 4

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I think that starting your own project is a .... idea that will bring you success.
a) brilliant b) interested c) minor d) mean

2 The violent storm caused .... damage to farm buildings, and they would take a lot of time to be repaired.
a) simple b) serious c) light d) dark

3 This dictionary can serve as a guide to English .... as well as meaning.
a) punctuation b) connection
c) pronunciation d) communication

4 You shouldn't use that rude .... of voice with old people.
a) ton b) note c) syllable d) tone

5 A .... is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff, hill or under the ground.
a) tunnel b) gap c) hut d) cave

6 Medical science has made amazing progress in .... years.
a) old b) ancient c) recent d) modern

7 You can .... the program by double-clicking on the icon.
a) finish b) launch c) inhibit d) repair

8 The movie is set in the 19th .... during the reign of Queen Victoria.
a) decade b) calendar c) millennium d) century

9 I couldn't call anyone because I .... my phone.
a) have lost b) had lost c) was losing d) am losing

10 Hany was late for the meeting and was angry we .... without him.
a) were starting b) starting c) had started d) have started

11 The press conference مؤتمر صحفى .... by the time the TV cameras arrived.
a) had already started b) has already started
c) already starts d) was already starting

12 The garden was dirty as people .... rubbish everywhere.
a) were leaving b) have left c) were left d) had left

13 As soon as I had met him, I .... everything.
a) was knowing b) know c) knew d) had known

14 Rameses II .... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
a) was ruling b) had ruled c) has ruled d) ruled

15 The scientist .... the press after he had discovered a new plant species.
a) informed b) had informed c) was informing d) has informed

16 Hardly .... the match when I felt that pain.
a) I played b) I had played c) had I played d) will I play

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was a homework-free weekend. Shady suggested going swimming. He had just completed his swimming course and was eager to try out the skills he had learnt. His friends readily[1] agreed. They headed straight[2] for their neighborhood swimming complex[3]. It was quite crowded. They changed quickly and leapt[4] into the pool. They splashed[5] around on the shallower[6] end. A lifeguard was keeping a watchful[7] eye on all the swimmers. Shady challenged his friends for a swim over in the deep end. They refused as they knew it was dangerous for them. Besides, they did not swim that well after all. Diving to the deep end wasn't easy for them to do. Shady insisted that he was a better swimmer and set out to prove it. He walked over to the deep end and plunged[8] in.

At first everything seemed alright and he did well, so all his friends cheered. Suddenly, Shady gave a shout and started flailing his arms. He was having difficulties! His friends were too shocked to react [9].

Luckily, the lifeguard noticed him and quickly dived in. When he was safely out of the pool, the lifeguard gave him a tongue-lashing for fooling around. Shady apologized. All the way home, he had to endure[10] hvis friends making fun of him. It seemed that he needed a lot of training.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Shady and his friends went swimming during the ....
- a) weekday
- b) holidays
- c) break
- d) weekend

2 Shady suggested swimming as he wanted to ....
- a) show off his swimming skills to his friends
- b) test the lifeguard
- c) teach his friends the skills he had learnt
- d) complete his swimming course

3 As it was the weekend, the swimming pool was ....
- a) deep
- b) empty
- c) crowded
- d) free

4 'Tongue lashing' means giving a/an ....
- a) warning
- b) scolding
- c) encouragement
- d) advice



(1) بعجلة/طوعا (2) مباشرة (3) مجموعة من حمامات السباحة (4) يثب (5) يتناثر (6) ضحل (7) مستيقظ (8) ينغمس (9) يتصرف (10) يتحمل

5 The synonym of the word "eager" is ....
a) skillful
b) worried
c) patient and interested
d) keen and impatient

6 The lifeguard was praised as he was ....
a) attentive
b) rash
c) impatient
d) eager

7 Why did Shady's friends refuse his challenge? Because they were ....
a) afraid of him
b) worried about him
c) less skillful
d) too shocked

8 Although Shady was a good swimmer, he needed ....
a) lots of money
b) much training
c) a lot of advice
d) to be older

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 The life of Taha Hussein, the great Egyptian writer, has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.

a) ألهمت حياة طه حسين المفكر المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر أعاقه عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.
b) قد ألهمت حياة المفكر المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى يحسنوا ظروف معيشتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات المهمة.
c) تلهم حياة طه حسين الكاتب المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.
d) تلهم حياة الكاتب المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى ينجحوا فى حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقهم عن الإنجازات الهامة.

2 Education is considered the cornerstone to achieving progress in all fields. That's why schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.

a) إن التعليم هو الحجر الأساسى لتحقيق الرخاء فى كل الطرق لذلك من الممكن أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة موافقة للإصلاح التعليمى.
b) يعتبر التعليم حجر الأساس لتحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمى.
c) يعتبر التعليم ركن الأساس لزيادة التقدم فى كل المجالات وهذا لأن المدارس من الممكن تكون أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح العلمى.
d) إن التعليم هو حجر الأساس لإنجاز التقدم فى جميع المجالات لكن يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمى.

3 Why do we no longer think of the beauty of nature or stop to enjoy an attractive scene? Did modern technology really change our nature and our way of thinking?

a) لمــاذا أصبحنا نفكر فى جمال الطبيعة أو نتوقف للاســتمتاع بمنظر جميــل ؟هل تغيرت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى طبيعتنا وطريقة تفكيرنا؟

b) لمــاذا لــم نعد نفكر فى جمال الطبيعة أو ننتظر للتمتع بمشــهد جذاب ؟هل تغيــرت التكنولوجيا المعاصرة فى طبيعتنا وأسلوب اعتقادنا؟

c) لمــاذا لــم نعد نعتقد فى أن تكون الطبيعة جميلة أو نتوقف للاســتمتاع بمنظر جذاب؟ هــل غيرت التكنولوجيا الحديثة حقا طبيعتنا وطريقة تفكيرنا؟

d) لمــاذا لم نعد نفكر فى جمال الطبيعة أو نتوقف للاســتمتاع بمنظر جــذاب ؟هل غيرت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فعلا طبيعتنا وطريقة تفكيرنا؟

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 يُعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها. يقول الخبراء إنه ربما يكون لها آثار على ارتفاع معدل الجريمة.

a) Young people's regards in adventure films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all sociologists and believers trying to give solutions for it. Experts say that it can have an impact on the rise in crime number.

b) Young people's interest in violent films is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all sociologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime rate.

c) Young people's interest in funny movies is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all psychologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime number.

d) Young people's concern in violent films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all writers and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts think that it must have an affection on the raise in crime rate.

2 يعمل الكثير من مراسـلى الصحف و القنوات التليفزيونية فى مناطق خطيرة مثل مناطق الحروب والكوارث الطبيعية وذلك بهدف توصيل الأخبار والأحداث الجارية للقراء و المشاهدين فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) Many newspaper and TV correspondents work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of transmitting the current news and events to readers and viewers all over the world.

b) Lots of newspaper and TV correspondents have work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to writers and viewers all over the world.

c) Some newspaper and TV audience work in dangerous areas such as war and disaster areas with the aim of broadcasting the current news and events to readers and thinkers all over the world.

d) Many newspaper and TV audience have work in areas of dangers such as fight and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to readers and viewers all over the world.

3 لا يعتقد كثير من الشباب أن الأدب يمكن أن يلعب دوراً في ترقية المجتمع ودفعه للأمام مما أدى إلى انخفاض مبيعات القصص ودواوين الشعر.

a) Many young people believe that literature can play a role in developing society and pushing it forward. This gave a decrease in the sales of novels and books of poems.

b) Many teenagers don't think that literature can play a role in making community and pushing it forward. This led to an increase in the sales of stories and books of poems.

c) Some teenagers don't believe in literature may play a role in making society and pushing it forward. This led to a decrease in the sales of stories and books of poems.

d) Many young people don't believe that literature can play a role in developing society and pushing it forward. This led to a decrease in the sales of novels and books of poems.

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ....

I used the right structure. ....

I used a topic sentence. ....

I wrote the conclusion. ....

I used the right punctuation. ....



King Lear: Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

Vocabulary

battle	معركة	pocket	جيب
believe	يعتقد/يؤمن	prisoner	سجين
creep	يزحف/يتسلل	prize	جائزة
crime	جريمة	riches	مال/ثروة
drum	طبل	right	سوى/عادى
judge	قاض	sense	كلام عاقل
majesty	فخامة	stage	خشبة المسرح
nonsense	كلام فارغ/هراء	theatre	مسرح
patient	صبور/مريض		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

feel one's way	يتحسس طريقه	(be) tempted to	يتم إغواؤه
take out	يسحب/يخرج	let go of	يفلت
creep up on	يرتفع على/يزحف		

Practice

Practise more

King Lear Exercises
(Act iv-, Scene vi)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I hadn't seen my old friend for ten years, but I .... her immediately.
a) recognised b) realised c) achieved d) assumed

2 The .... sentenced the thief to five years in prison.
a) officer b) judge c) assistant d) inspector

3 I can't make .... of these modern art paintings.
a) test b) chance c) sense d) space

4 Don't yell – let's creep .... on the children and scare them.
a) in b) for c) at d) up

5 The refugee اللاجئ was kept .... for eight months in a tiny flat.
a) officer b) soldier c) prisoner d) helper

6 In this nice weather, I'm .... to have a walk along the beach.
a) frightened b) tempted c) refrained d) forced

7 We all must work hard in a unity to win the .... against terrorism.
a) battle b) talk c) duty d) force

8 About 1,000 people marched, beating .... and carrying flags in the parade.
a) kids b) cellos c) drums d) phones

9 Most of what has been written about the accident is complete .... and had no facts.
a) sense b) nonsense c) wisdom d) research

10 The young professional footballer acquired .... and fame.
a) riches b) poverty c) simplicity d) acceptance

11 There were more than 20 people on the .... greeting the audience after the play.
a) road b) highway c) pavement d) stage

12 The old man insisted that he had not committed ارتكب any .... to be in prison for.
a) fun b) crime c) joke d) charity



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

15

1 Dr Zewail went to America to complete his .... before settling there.
a) affection b) education c) practice d) fiction

2 The .... with the new prime minister رئيس الوزراء will be shown on tonight's news.
a) interview b) criticism c) attack d) truce

3 There are many search .... in competition, but Google is the most popular.
a) powers b) routes c) engines d) motors

4 When my daughter apologised for her mistake, I felt a .... of regret in her voice.
a) sound b) tone c) look d) song

5 This is the first time I've heard .... this kind of trouble in our town.
a) from b) at c) for d) about

6 The city erected a statue in the great singer's honour. The synonym of the verb "erect" is ....
a) deny b) release c) construct d) damage

7 We went to London last year, but we .... there two years earlier.
a) had also been b) were being c) have also been d) would be

8 Although Kareem .... the test many times before, he was very nervous.
a) has done b) had been doing
c) was doing d) had done

9 She .... until she had done her homework.
a) slept b) didn't sleep
c) had slept d) wasn't sleeping

10 As soon as it stopped raining, the match ....
a) will start b) started c) had started d) has started

11 The boy .... photos after the police had left the scene.
a) was taking b) had taken c) took d) was taken

12 I didn't leave ________ I had taken my pocket money.

a) as soon as b) because
c) after d) until

13 He said that his mother would be very upset when she ________ that he had lost his job.

a) would learn b) learned
c) learns d) had learned

14 He knew that she had been crying as her eyes ________ red.

a) have been b) had been
c) are d) were

15 I met Hesham last week. I ________ him since 2018.

a) haven't met b) hadn't met
c) wasn't meeting d) didn't meet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car Company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned[1] gasoline[2] or diesel fuel[3]. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers[4] to use an assembly[5] line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce[6] cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.



(1) يحرق (2) بنزين (3) وقود (4) أصحاب المصانع (5) التجميع (6) ينتج

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Which company first built only cars?
a) Benz
b) Ford
c) Panhard
d) D. Duryea

17 Fuel is ....
a) what makes cars move
b) a car production system
c) the price of a car
d) no correct answer

18 What is an assembly line?
a) A way of making products.
b) A safe way of making products.
c) A quick way of making products.
d) All of the previous.

19 The Ford Motor Company opened a ....
a) factory in Denmark in 1911
b) factory in Germany in 1925
c) factory in Britain in 1929
d) factory in France in 1931

20 The Peugeot car company started in ....
a) 1911
b) 1923
c) 1891
d) 1925

21 The assembly line was .... idea.
a) Panhard et Levassor's
b) Ransom E. Olds'
c) Karl Benz's
d) Henry Ford's

22 The place where people make things is called a/an ....
a) factory
b) laboratory
c) line
d) country

23 The cars using .... are considered environmentally-friendly cars.
a) gasoline
b) diesel
c) electricity
d) coal

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

2

- Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and wisdom. They are the outcome of their long experience through which they have faced different situations.

a) يجب أن ينجذب الشباب إلى كلمات وحكمة كبار السن الحساسة فهى نتاج خبرتهم فى حياتهم.
b) يجب أن يقدر الشباب نصائح وحكمة كبار السن العاقلة فهى نتاج خبرتهم فى الحياة.
c) من المهم ان يقدر الشباب كلمات وحكمة من هم اكبر منهم فهى نتاج تجاربهم فى الحياة.
d) ينبغى أن يقدر الشباب نصائح وحكمة من هم اكبر منهم العاقلين فهى نتاج تجاربهم فى الحياة.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

2 - تؤدى النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل. لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

a) Wars and fights lead to many social effects on children; one of them is missing the feeling of security and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we shouldn't stop wars by all means.

b) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of the future. So, we must avoid wars in all fields.

c) Wars and disputes bring many social effects on children; one of them is losing the sense of security and the constant pain of the future. Therefore, we don't have to avoid wars by all means.

d) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of security and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should avoid wars by all means.

26 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 11



What a performance!

Objectives

- **Reading** : Online film reviews
- **Writing** : Two film reviews
- **Listening** : Interview with a film critic; intonation
- **Speaking** : Explain how a film affects you
- **Language** : Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs
- **Life Skills** : Critical thinking; listening to others' opinions; recognising differences in opinion




Study — Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

action (n)	حركة
animation (n)*	الرسوم المتحركة
comedy (n)	فيلم كوميدى/كوميديا
historical (adj)	تاريخى
horror (n)	رعب
musical (n)	مسرحية غنائية/فيلم غنائى
romantic (adj)	رومانسى
science fiction (sci-fi) (n)	خيال علمى

* The website has hundreds of animations you can download for your children to watch.

Vocabulary on Reading

adapted (adj)	مقتبس/مأخوذ
bestselling (n)	أفضل مبيعات
brilliant (adj)	رائع/متميز
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)
colleague (n)	زميل (عمل)
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم/باستمرار
crew (n)	طاقم العمل
demonstrate (v) (d)	يثبت/يبرهن
director (n)	مدير/مخرج
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
incredibly (adv)	بشكل رائع
lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص/ينقصه
Martian (n)	مريخى
mate (n)	زميل/رفيق
meanwhile (adv)	فى غضون ذلك/فى نفس الوقت
mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة
recommend (v) (ed)	يوصى بـ/يرشح
remake (v)	يعيد صناعة
rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ/ينقذ
review (n)	عرض نقدى/مراجعة
storyline (n)	قصة/سير الأحداث
surprising (adj)	مدهش
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى حيًا
talent (n)	موهبة
typical (adj)	نموذجى/أصلى
version (n)	نسخة /إصدار
visuals (n)	مرئيات/مشاهد مرئية
warmth (n)	دفء

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

approve (v) (d)	يوافق/يستحسن	mixed (adj)	مختلط
certain (adj)	محدد/معين	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحى
choice (n)	اختيار	performance (n)	أداء
critic (n)	ناقد	pity (n)	شفقة/حسرة
fan (n)	معجب	scared (adj)	مرعوب
film (v) (ed)	يصور فيلمًا	script (n)	سيناريو/نسخة حوار
intonation (n)	نبرة صوت	soundtrack (n)	تسجيل صوتى
marvellous (adj)	رائع	special effects (n)	مؤثرات خاصة
mathematician (n)	عالم رياضيات	style (n)	أسلوب

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

acting (n)	تمثيل	positive (adj)	إيجابى
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	powerful (adj)	قوى/مؤثر
escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب/يهرب	return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود
genuine (adj)	أصلى	rule (v) (d)	يحكم
hostile (adj)	عدائى	space (n)	الفضاء
negative (adj)	سلبى	talented (adj)	موهوب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	of the same name	بنفس الاسم
get lost	يضل الطريق/يتوه	rule over a country	يحكم بلدًا
adapted from	مأخوذ من/مقتبس من	leave behind	يخلف/يترك خلفه
choice of	اختيار لـ	shout at	يصرخ فى وجه
climb onto	يصعد إلى	similar to	مشابه لـ
escape from	يهرب من	take off	يطير/يقلع
go back	يرجع/يعود	type of	نوع من

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
adapt يقتبس	adaptation اقتباس	adapted مقتبس
----------	comedy كوميديا	comic كوميدي
demonstrate يبرهن/يثبت	demonstration إثبات/برهان	demonstrative توضيحي
power يحرك/ يزود بالطاقة	power قوة/طاقة	powerful قوي/مؤثر
recommend يرشح/يوصي بـ	recommendation ترشيح/توصية	recommended مرشح
rule يحكم	ruler حاكم	ruling حاكم
scare يرعب	scare رعب	scared مرعوب scary مخيف
survive ينجو	survival النجاة survivor ناجٍ	surviving ناجٍ

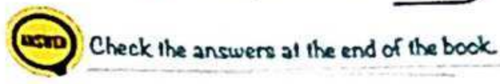
★ - The gas station generates enough energy to power a town of 6000 people.
- Solar power generation is greatly affected by cloud cover.
- Prizes and rewards are a powerful tool for successful encouragements at schools.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
cruel	قاسٍ	violent/brutal	merciful/kind رحيم/عطوف
demonstrate	يثبت/يبرهن	illustrate/prove	confuse يربك disprove يدحض
horror	رعب	fear/terror	calmness/delight هدوء/سعادة
hostile	عدائي	unfriendly/unsympathetic	friendly/kind لطيف/عطوف
incredibly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/astonishingly	normally/slightly بشكل طبيعي
powerful	قوي/مؤثر	impressive/influential	impotent/dull/powerless ضعيف/ممل
recommend	يوصي بـ/يرشح	propose/suggest	deny/oppose ينكر/يعارض
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate	surrender/serve يستسلم/يخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened/terrified/afraid	brave/courageous شجاع
talented	موهوب	gifted	untalented/unskilled غير موهوب/غير ماهر

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young actress showed a .... for acting at an early age.
   a) talent b) fright c) detest d) complaint
2. Some kinds of bacteria can .... in extreme temperatures.
   a) detect b) detest c) survive d) arrive
3. We complained .... about the noise of the workshop in our street.
   a) helpfully b) gradually c) delightfully d) constantly
4. "Harry Potter" series is a film .... of the novel of the same name.
   a) type b) version c) episode d) animation
5. We watched a .... on the early history of the city of Rome.
   a) correspondence b) copy c) documentary d) competition


Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

What type of movies do you like most?

The Martian



Clever, exciting, and surprisingly funny, *The Martian* is a brilliant film, adapted from the bestselling book of the same name, and demonstrates[1] the talents[2] of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott.

When astronauts take off from the planet Mars, they leave behind Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to survive[3] on the empty planet. Meanwhile, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international scientists work constantly[4] to bring him home. At the same time his crew mates plan a brave rescue mission.

Unlike most sci-fi films, *The Martian* has no fight scenes. Instead, it is a clever and powerful film and perhaps the best science fiction[5] film that I've seen in a long time.

(1) يبرهن/يثبت
(2) مواهب
(3) ينجو
(4) بشكل دائم
(5) خيال علمي

The Lion King



Although the visuals in the 2019 version[1] of *The Lion King* are quite brilliant, this remake lacks the warmth and energy of the original[2] cartoon film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of talented actors involved. The storyline[3] is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.

Like the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind uncle who kills Simba's father and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa. The director Jon Favreau has created an animation[4] which looks incredibly real and maybe that's the problem – it doesn't look like an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife documentary[5]!

(1) نسخة
(2) أصلي
(3) قصة
(4) فيلم رسوم متحركة
(5) فيلم وثائقي

Does the writer of the review about "The Lion King" like it? Why/Why not?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

I don't expect to like films about children who get lost, but the film *Lion* was 1) surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are 2) constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the 3) brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often 4) hostile and unfriendly.

I found the second half of the film less 5) enjoyable, although it is still good. Saroo is now a 6) talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India. The story is very 7) powerful and I'll always remember it. The acting was totally 8) brilliant and I definitely recommend it.

What does a film critic do?

Listening Text (1)

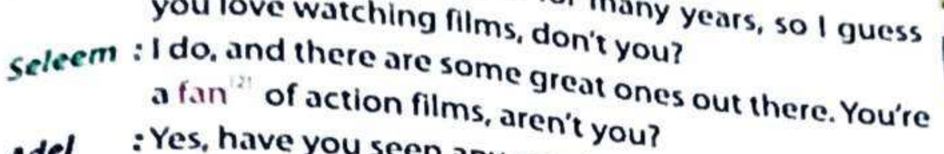


Adel : Tonight, I'm talking to film critic[1] Seleem about the films he's seen recently. Seleem, welcome.

Seleem : Hi, Adel.

Adel : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you?





Seleem : I do, and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan[2] of action films, aren't you?

Adel : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently?

Seleem : *Black Panther*. I really enjoyed it, but it's had mixed[3] reviews. The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes, but the dialogue[4] was difficult to follow at times, which was a pity[5]. The best film I've seen lately was the award-winning *Hidden Figures*. I don't often watch historical films but this one is brilliant. It's the true story of black female mathematicians[6] working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

(1) ناقد
(2) مشجع
(3) مختلط
(4) حوار
(5) شفقة/حسرة
(6) علماء رياضيات
(7) الجيرة/الحي
(8) رائع

Adel : They both sound good. Any others?

Seleem : *A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood*[7]. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of kindness and has a wonderfully positive message.

Adel : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he?

Seleem : Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks fan. He's a marvellous[8] actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you *name it, he's done it*.

Adel : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch?

Seleem : Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you?

Adel : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films!

Seleem : Really?

Why does Seleem love Tom Hanks?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek El Shenawy is a famous film .... whose reviews are read by most actors.
   a) producer b) announcer c) director d) critic
2. Liverpool .... were delighted with their team's winning the Premier League.
   a) inspectors b) fans c) assistants d) enemies
3. The famous writer is currently working on a .... of a historical film about Khalid Ibn El Waleed.
   a) wave b) soundtrack c) script d) current
4. The new musical's songs and .... are now available on CD.
   a) soundtrack b) review c) revision d) replay
5. The Medical Research Council has .... the use of the new vaccine for the virus.
   a) discovered b) applied c) approved d) remade

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

action حركة
- an action film has a lot of exciting scenes in it, in which people fight, chase, and kill each other

animation الرسوم المتحركة
- a film, television programme, computer game etc. that has pictures, clay models, etc. that seem to be really moving

comedy كوميديا/فيلم كوميدى
- a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh

historical تاريخى
- related to the past

horror

- something that causes feelings of fear, dread, and shock — رعب

musical

- a play or film that includes singing and dancing — مسرحية/فيلم غنائى

romantic

- a romantic story or film is about love — رومانسى

science fiction

- stories about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science — خيال علمى

Notes on Vocabulary

1

colleague زميل عمل

- Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.

classmate زميل دراسة

- Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.

2

crew
١- طاقم عمل (فى طائرة/سفينة غالبًا)
٢- طاقم من الفنيين لإنتاج شىء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية

- The plane crashed, killing two of the crew and four passengers.
- The film crew were making a political documentary.

لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم (cast) فى المعنى الثانى.

staff طاقم عمل (فى مصنع/مدرسة/منظمة)

- The school has over 100 full-time staff.

3

review
١- مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)
٢- مقال نقدى.

- The writer sent the press a review of the research.
- The newspaper published many reviews about the new film.

revision مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)

- I'm making some revisions to the book for the new edition.
- I know I haven't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

documentary
فيلم وثائقي

- There were some interesting interviews in the documentary about Naguib Mahfouz.

4 podcast
تدوين صوتي (ملف يمكن سماعه أو تحميله عبر الإنترنت)

- To listen to the podcast, click on the link below.

webcast
البث الشبكي (مباشر عبر الإنترنت)

- There will be a live webcast of the total solar eclipse in the country.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... and demonstrates the talents of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام أي أداة نكرة أو معرفة قبل (actor – director) لأنه مضاف إليها اسم علم.

- NASA and a team of international scientists work constantly to bring him home.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة الجمع مع (team) لأننا نقصد أعضاء الفريق.

- The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes, ...

- تستخدم (and so) كأداة ربط بمعنى (وكذلك) كما تستخدم صيغة الاستفهام (were the fight scenes) بعدها.

- Surprisingly, films are rarely filmed in the correct order, ...

- يستخدم الظرف عادة لوصف الفعل ولكن إذا بدأت الجملة بالظرف مثل (Surprisingly) فإنه يشير إلى الجملة كلها.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The famous journalist writes film .... for the newspapers.
a) animations b) revisions c) talents d) reviews

2 When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.
a) colleagues b) competitors c) classmates d) rivals

3 The captain and .... welcomed the famous footballer themselves on entering the plane.
a) staff b) crew c) cast d) group

4 We would like to thank all the medical .... at hospitals for their great efforts.
a) crew b) cast c) staff d) race

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Although they are old, Ismail Yassen's .... are still liked by many people.
a) fictions b) romances c) horrors d) comedies

2 My father doesn't like .... films saying that they can make people nervous.
a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic

3 "The Martian" is one of the most famous science .... films.
a) faction b) fission c) fiction d) fact

4 Most of Naguib Mahfouz's novels have been .... for films or plays.
a) painted b) adapted c) viewed d) reviewed

5 The studio used computer .... for some of the special effects.
a) romance b) horror c) animation d) terror

6 English scientists are now working with .... in America to develop a working model of the new plane.
a) colleagues b) classmates c) fans d) commuters

7 The study .... the link between poverty and malnutrition سوء التغذية saying it is clear.
a) hides b) develops c) invents d) demonstrates

8 After a long and tiring day, I .... the energy to argue with my wife.
a) leaked b) locked c) lacked d) licked

9 This simplified .... of Shakespeare's play is intended for younger children.
a) review b) version c) fiction d) visual

10 An Egyptian aid team will be sent on a .... to the earthquake zone.
a) mission b) trip c) fight d) treaty

11 The crew of the sinking boat were .... by a passing cruise ship.
a) reserved b) rescued c) preserved d) drowned

12 This week, our English assignment was to write a .... of a book or a movie we watched.
a) revision b) highlight c) review d) scene

13 The book's .... revolves around يدور حول a woman who is searching for her missing sister.
a) sale b) criticism c) review d) storyline

14 This announcer is a/an .... who is known for asking tough فظة questions.
a) interviewer b) interviewee c) simplifier d) applicant

15 The old hotel is .... of buildings built during the late 19th century.
a) genuine b) original c) fake d) typical

16 Kareem Abdel Azeez showed a .... for acting at an early age.
a) tent b) talent c) disability d) present

17 Some of the children were so .... when they saw the lion in its cage that they ran away.
a) delighted b) effective c) scared d) fanned

18 Good teamwork is a/an .... tool for effective management.
a) powerful b) minor c) unsuccessful d) affecting

19 SpongeBob is probably the most famous .... character whose movies are watched by people all over the world.
a) historical b) romantic c) scientific d) animated

20 Don't miss the class tomorrow – we're having a/an .... of chapters three and four.
a) research b) review c) article d) inspection

21 The final .... of the report deleted some important points.
a) scene b) version c) site d) image

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22 Without the map we bought at the information centre, we would have .... lost easily.
a) given b) come c) got d) turned

23 Queen Victoria .... over England for more than fifty years.
a) captured b) ruled c) spread d) turned

24 The spaceship took .... and landed safely back to the base.
a) at b) off c) in d) out

25 Illegal hunting is threatening the .... of some animal species.
a) survive b) survival c) survived d) survivable

26 My brother was right to recommend watching this exciting film. The antonym of the verb "recommend" is ....
a) advise b) relate c) associate d) oppose

27 This restaurant was a good .... , I enjoyed the meal very much.
a) recommend b) recommended
c) recommendation d) recommendable

28 The brave soldier refused to escape and leave his fellow soldiers ....
a) behind b) off c) about d) for

29 The latest test results clearly demonstrate that the vaccine اللقاح works. The synonym of the verb "demonstrate" is ....
a) improve b) illustrate c) disprove d) approve

30 Queen Elizabeth ruled over England for 70 years. The antonym of the word "rule" is ....
a) surrender b) seize c) conquer d) aspire





B Language

Tag Questions

السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفى مختصرًا.
- السؤال المذيل يأتى قبله (,).

Positive statement (+)	+	Negative question tag (-)
You are a student	,	aren't you?

Negative statement (-)	+	Positive question tag (+)
Hala is not a nurse	,	is she?

(+) sentence →		(-) tag
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?
You study hard	,	don't you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?
You have dinner at 8 pm	,	don't you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?
She has blonde hair	,	doesn't she?

(-) sentence →		(+) tag
John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You don't study hard	,	do you?
He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You don't have dinner at 8 pm	,	do you?
She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She doesn't have blonde hair	,	does she?

Statement		Tag	Statement		Tag
He'd finished by 6 p.m.	,	hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	,	had he?
He'd rather leave now	,	wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	,	would he?
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They'll help us	,	won't they?	They won't help us	,	will they?
He can ride a horse	,	can't he?	He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We need more money	,	don't we?	We needn't more money	,	need we?
He used to get up early	,	didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I think he is a thief	,	isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm right	,	aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	,	am I?
		حالات خاصة			
Let's go out اقتراح	,	shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	,	will/won't you?
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful	,	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	,	aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	,	aren't there?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	,	will you?

ملاحظات

١) الجملة التي تحتوى على no – little – few – neither – nor – seldom – hardly – rarely – never تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

- He can hardly run, can he?
- He rarely visits you, does he?

٢) إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

- Nothing can live without energy, can it?

٣) إذا كان الفاعل No one, body - Someone, body - Everyone, body يكون الضمير they.

- Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They should start now, ... they?
   a) will
   b) shouldn't
   c) should
   d) must

2. He didn't swim yesterday, ... he?
   a) didn't
   b) was
   c) swam
   d) did

3. You like horror films, ... you?
   a) don't
   b) won't
   c) do
   d) will

4. She hasn't got a brother, ... she?
   a) does
   b) hasn't
   c) has
   d) doesn't

5. I would never go with them, ... I?
   a) wouldn't
   b) would
   c) did
   d) aren't

6. Don't smoke here, ... you?
   a) won't
   b) don't
   c) will
   d) do

7. Nothing was wrong, ...?
   a) was it
   b) were they
   c) wasn't it
   d) weren't they

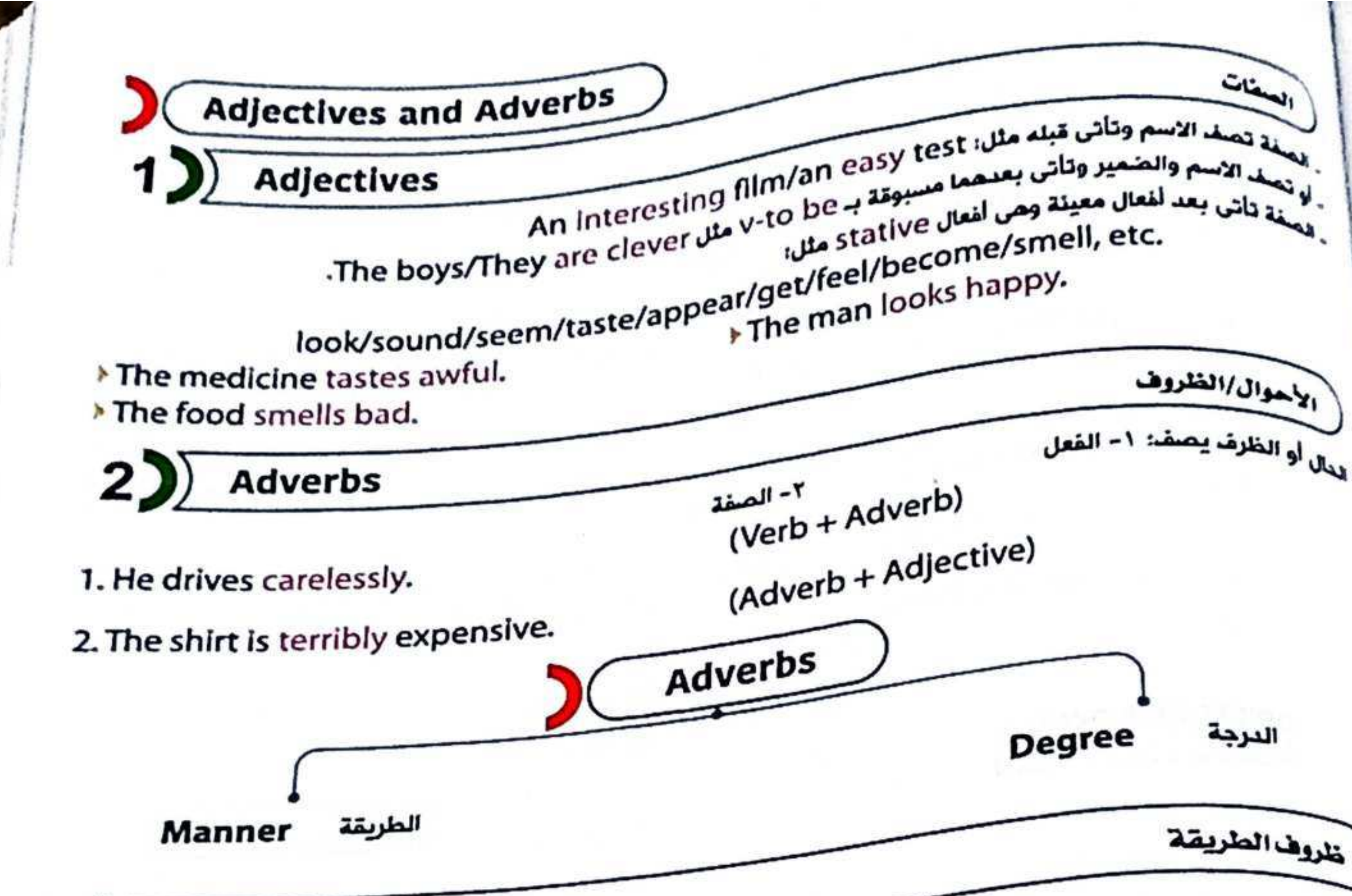
8. Somebody is knocking at the door, ...?
   a) is it
   b) isn't it
   c) are they
   d) aren't they

9. They had left early, ... they?
   a) had
   b) didn't
   c) hadn't
   d) weren't

10. Let's go to the cinema, ...?
    a) will we
    b) shall we
    c) do we
    d) won't you



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Adjectives and Adverbs

1) Adjectives

الصفات

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتى قبله مثل: An interesting film/an easy test
- أو تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتى بعدهما مسبوقة بـ v-to be مثل: The boys/They are clever.
- الصفة تأتى بعد أفعال معينة وهى أفعال stative مثل: look/sound/seem/taste/appear/get/feel/become/smell, etc.

▸ The man looks happy.

▸ The medicine tastes awful.

▸ The food smells bad.

2) Adverbs

الأحوال/الظروف

الحال أو الظرف يصف: ١- الفعل (Verb + Adverb)

٢- الصفة (Adverb + Adjective)

1. He drives carelessly.
2. The shirt is terribly expensive.

Adverbs

Degree الدرجة

Manner الطريقة

1) Adverbs of Manner

ظروف الطريقة

هى الظروف التى تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

١) يتكون هذا النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

▸ He must take his study seriously.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيئ	badly	بسوء	nervous	قلق	nervously	بقلق
correct	صحيح	correctly	بطريقة صحيحة	nice	لطيف	nicely	بلطف
foolish	أحمق	foolishly	بحماقة	permanent	دائم	permanently	دومًا
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء	slow	بطء	slowly	ببطء
real	حقيقى	really	حقًا/فعليًا	sudden	مفاجئ	suddenly	فجأة

٢) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(l) تضاف (ly) أما إذا انتهت بـ (le) فنحذف e ونضع (y).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص
terrible	فظيع	terribly	بفظاعة	horrible	رهيب	horribly	بشكل رهيب
real	حقيقي	really	حقًا/فعليًا	probable	محتمل	probably	من المحتمل

٣) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (ly).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
angry	غاضب	angrily	بغضب	easy	سهل	easily	بسهولة
heavy	ثقيل	heavily	بثقل/بشدة	hungry	جوعان	hungrily	بجوع
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة	lucky	محظوظ	luckily	لحسن الحظ

- It was an easy test. (adj)
- The students answered the test easily. (adv)

٤) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
fantastic	رائع	fantastically	بشكل رائع	dramatic	درامي	dramatically	بشكل درامي
drastic	قاس/عنيف	drastically	بشكل عنيف	automatic	أتوماتيك	automatically	أتوماتيكيا

٥) من شواذ تكوين الظروف:

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد	fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
long	طويل	long	بشكل طويل	low	منخفض	low	بشكل منخفض
fine	جيد	fine	جيدًا	high	مرتفع	high	بشكل مرتفع
straight	مستقيم	straight	بشكل مستقيم	right	صحيح	right	بشكل صحيح

- Ali is a fast swimmer. (adj)
- Ali swims fast. (adv)

ملحوظة

بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (ly) مثل الصفات في الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضيفت لها (ly) يكون لها معنى مختلف مثل:

Adjective		Adverb		Adverb	
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا	lately	مؤخرًا (منذ وقت قريب)
hard	صلب/صعب/شديد	hard	بجد/بشدة	hardly	بالكاد/تقريبًا لا
wrong	خاطئ/مخطئ	wrong	بشكل خاطئ	wrongly	بظلم
near	قريب	near	بالقرب	nearly	تقريبًا

- She hardly ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).
- You wrongly accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly

٦) هناك صفات تنتهي بـ ly ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly	في كل ساعة	daily	يومي/يوميًا	weekly	أسبوعي/أسبوعيًا
monthly	شهري/شهريًا	yearly	سنوي/سنويًا	early	مبكر/مبكرًا

- My father is reading his daily newspaper. (adj)
- My father reads the newspaper daily. (adv)

٧) هناك صفات تنتهي ly وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالآتي:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly	مسن	lonely	وحيدًا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوي	lovely	محبوب	deadly	مميت
friendly	ودود	motherly	كالأم	heavenly	سماوي
lively	مفعم بالحيوية	silly	سخيف	cowardly	جبان
brotherly	أخوي	likely	متوقع/محتمل	sisterly	خاص بالأخت

- He is a friendly man. (adj)
- He greets/treats me in a friendly way. (adv)

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting was very .... organised. Most members were annoyed.
a) bad b) careful c) carefully d) badly
2. We didn't go out because it was raining ....
a) heavy b) heaviest c) heavily d) heavier
3. There was a .... change in the weather.
a) suddenly b) sudden c) terribly d) absolutely
4. He looked at me .... when I interrupted him.
a) angrily b) angry c) anger d) angered

Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

١) هى الظروف التى تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

extremely	للغاية	very	جداً
quite	تماماً	fairly/slightly	قليلاً

- Mount Everest is extremely high.
- My little brother speaks English very well.
- She is quite good at maths.
- The question is slightly difficult.

٢) الأحوال التى تصف الصفة تأتى قبلها وهى تساوى very فى المعنى تقريباً:

الاسم	الحال		الصفة
The Nile is	very		long.
	extremely	للغاية	
	fantastically	بشكل مدهش	
	incredibly	لا يصدق	
	tremendously	جداً/هائل	

٣) وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف ly ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

الاسم	الصفة		الاسم
The Nile has	an extreme ly	للغاية	length.
	a fantastic ally	بشكل مدهش	
	an incredible y	لا يصدق	
	a tremendous ly	جداً/هائل	

Practice  Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My brother isn't here, ...?
a) he is b) is there c) isn't he d) is he

2 Karim and Magid love comedy films, ...?
a) aren't they b) doesn't he c) don't they d) do they

3 The children haven't finished yet, ... they?
a) haven't b) have c) do d) don't

4 Reham arrived late, ... she?
a) didn't b) did c) wasn't d) was

5 He can't swim, ... he?
a) does b) is c) will d) can

6 The film will start soon, ... it?
a) can b) will c) won't d) should

7 She has never been to Egypt, ... she?
a) has b) does c) hasn't d) doesn't

8 We must be at school at 8 o'clock, ... we?
a) aren't b) mustn't c) needn't d) don't

9 You'd better leave now, ... you?
a) hadn't b) don't c) had d) wouldn't

10 I think he's from India, ...?
a) don't I b) doesn't he c) isn't he d) hasn't he

11 There has been no rain for the last couple of weeks, ...?
a) hasn't it b) hasn't there c) isn't it d) has there

12 ...., isn't it?
a) It's not your dog b) It's very hot in the Sahara
c) This isn't Ahmed d) It's never cold in Aswan

13 ...., aren't I?
a) I'm not your English teacher b) He is your English teacher
c) I'm your English teacher d) You're my English teacher

14 The teacher talked .... so that we could all hear her.
a) loudly b) loud c) loudness d) loudest

15 The footballer played .... today. He scored three goals!
a) brilliance b) brilliant c) brilliantly d) brilliancy

16 As he was found .... the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.
a) nearest b) near c) nearly d) nearing

17 Although he arrived an hour ...., he started work immediately.
a) late b) lately c) a late d) latest

18 My brother is a firefighter. He's very ....
a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave

19 That was a .... film – what a waste of money!
a) terrified b) terribly c) terrible d) terrific

20 There is a .... crowd outside the police station.
a) hostility b) hostile c) hostilities d) host

21 At the end of the school year, some students try ...... to make up for the wasted time.
a) hard b) hardly c) hardness d) harden

22 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off ....
a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically

23 As there was much time, we walked .... to school.
a) slowly b) slow c) a slow d) slowing

24 I haven't eaten for 5 hours, so I'm getting quite ....
a) hungry b) hungriest c) hungrily d) hunger

25 The cost of living has risen .... these days.
a) dramatic b) dramatically c) dramatical d) drama

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) He works hard.
b) He works hardly.
c) He arrived lately at the party.
d) The bird flew highly in the sky.

27 Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Ali is never lucky, is he?
b) Ali is always lucky, isn't he?
c) Ali is never unlucky, is he?
d) Ali is always unlucky, is he?

28 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?

a) The teachers in my school are friendly.

b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly.

c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way.

d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier.

29 Which one of the following is correctly structured?

a) She looked happily last week.

b) She looked happy last week.

c) She looked happy at the children.

d) She looked happiness at the children.

30 Which one of the following is incorrectly structured?

a) There are many people waiting for the train, aren't they?

b) There are many people waiting for the train, aren't there?

c) There aren't many people waiting for the train, are there?

d) There are no people waiting for the train, are there?

31 You think that Ali will come soon, but you aren't sure, ...?

a) don't you

b) aren't you

c) will he

d) do you

32 ...., aren't they?

a) Omar and I are from Maadi

b) Omar and Hazem aren't from Assuit

c) Everyone in your class is working hard

d) Your parents are never lazy

33 Give Ahmed this camera tomorrow, ...?

a) don't you

b) will you

c) do you

d) aren't you

34 All my friends speak ....

a) fluently English

b) fluent English

c) English more fluent

d) English fluent

35 I don't know how he plays football. Perhaps, he plays it ....

a) well

b) good

c) better

d) difficult

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 11
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is responsible for everything on making a film.
a) director b) officer c) employee d) clerk

2 My brother is fond of .... movies which are full of fights or racing scenes.
a) comic b) romantic c) historical d) action

3 There were some interesting incidents in the .... about President Sadat.
a) horror b) documentary c) musical d) historian

4 It was .... of you to frighten the poor boy like that.
a) friendly b) heartedly c) gentle d) cruel

5 The .... in the new animation film were so amazing that all the audience were very impressed.
a) scripts b) reviews c) visuals d) rehearsals

6 *'Romeo and Juliet'* is thought to be one of the most .... plays of all times.
a) terror b) romantic c) comic d) collaborative

7 The .... of the plane instructed everyone to remain seated.
a) crew b) staff c) cast d) flock

8 Experts believe that the painting is not ...., but it is a brilliant copy.
a) fake b) subordinate c) genuine d) wonderful

9 Pass me the salt, ...?
a) do you b) aren't I c) aren't you d) won't you

10 They used to live in the New Valley, ... they?
a) didn't b) aren't c) don't d) did

11 There's a fly in your soup, ...?
a) is it b) is there c) isn't there d) isn't it

12 Somebody has taken my dictionary, ...?
a) hasn't one b) haven't they c) don't they d) doesn't he

13 My father was .... respected by those who worked with him.
a) great b) greatness c) greatly d) greatest

14 Train services have been .... affected by the heavy snow.
a) bit b) a very c) extreme d) seriously

15 The witness .... recounted everything that had happened during the robbery.
a) accurately b) accurate c) accurateness d) accrete

16 The injured victims of the fire were .... taken to hospital.
a) quick b) quickly c) quickness d) quicker

❷ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The job interview is a strategic conversation with a purpose[1]. Your goal is to persuade[2] the employer that you have the skills, background, and ability to do the job and that you can comfortably[3] fit into his/her organisation. At the same interview, you should also be gathering information about the job, and future career opportunities of the organisation to determine[4] if the position and work environment are right for you. You should also realise that an interview is not an objective process in which the employer offers the job to the best candidate based on merits[5] alone. But rather, an interview is a highly subjective encounter in which the interviewer offers the job to the qualified person whom he/she likes best. Personality, confidence, enthusiasm[6], a positive outlook and excellent interpersonal[7] and communication skills count heavily.

One key to success at interviews is to use every means at your disposal[8] to develop effective interviewing skills: selective presentation of your background, thoughtful answers to interview questions, well-researched questions about the organisation, and an effective strategy to market yourself. There is no magic to interviewing: it is a skill that can be learned and improved upon with practice. A second key to success is careful research about the job and the organisation, agency, or company with whom you are having the interview. Knowing about the job will help you prepare a list of your qualifications so that you can show, point by point, why you are the best candidate. Knowing about the employer will help you prepare an interview strategy and appropriate questions and points to emphasise.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The underlined words "count heavily" mean ....

a) have a great weight
b) can't be carried easily
c) help to succeed
d) are worth a lot of money

2 One of the following sentences is not true: ....

a) Knowing about the employer is important to pass an interview
b) Personal contacts can always help you get a job
c) Qualifications and skills are important to pass an interview
d) Passing an interview can be done through knowledge and practice



(1) هدف (2) يقنع (3) بصورة مريحة (4) يقرر (5) مزايا (6) حماس (7) بين الأشخاص (8) أداة

3 The synonym of the word "appropriate" is ………………… .
a) difficult
b) opposite
c) wrong
d) suitable

4 To succeed in the interview, you should know about ………………… .
a) the company only
b) the employer only
c) the company and the employer
d) the dangers of the job

5 According to the passage, the employer chooses the best candidate who ………………… .
a) is qualified and he/she likes best
b) knows a lot about fashion
c) has a lot of money
d) looks smart and beautiful

6 The suitable title to the passage is "…………………".
a) What a person can do at interviews
b) The importance of knowing about the employer
c) Appearance is more important than qualifications
d) How to be a good employee

7 Any applicant for a job wishes to be a/an ………………… .
a) employer
b) employee
c) trainer
d) boss

8 Knowing about the job is necessary to show ………………… .
a) your knowledge about the agency
b) your love for the employer
c) your skill as a researcher
d) your qualifications

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Many young men and women are fond of watching horror and action movies. However, these types of movies can affect them psychologically and socially.

a) كثير من الشـباب رجالا ونسـاءً مغرمون بمشـاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

b) كثيـر من الرجال والنسـاء غير مغرمين برؤية أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركـة ولكن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام لاتؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

c) يغرم كثير من الرجال والنسـاء الصغار بمشـاهدة أفـلام الرعب وأفلام الكوميديا ولذلك فـإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

d) يغرم كثير من الرجال والنسـاء الصغار بالمشـاركة فى أفلام المغامرات وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام غير مؤثرة عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

2 Egypt can only reach an outstanding position among countries with hard work and production. Everyone should have sincere intentions and a strong will. The more effort we exert, the more advanced Egypt will be.

a) تستطيع ان تصل مصر إلى مكانة مميزة بين القارات بالعمل الجيد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل شخص النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودا أكثر كلما تقدمت مصر.

b) يمكن ان تصل مصر إلى مكانة مهمة بين الدول عن طريق العمل الصعب والإنتاج ولا ينبغى أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية فكلما بذلنا مجهودا أقل تقدمت مصر.

c) يمكن ان تصل مصر لمكانة مميزة بين الدول بالعمل الجاد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودا أكثر تقدمت مصر.

d) من الممكن أن تصل مصر لمكانة مختلفة بين الدول بالعمل الصعب والمنتجات ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودا أكثر كانت مصر متقدمة.

3 Optimistic people are those who see that everything in life is good. They live happily among their companions. On the other hand, pessimistic people see everything in life dull and gloomy.

a) الناس المتفائلون هم من يرون أنه ليس كل شىء فى الحياة جميل وهم يعيشون بسعادة بين أقرانهم ومع ذلك فإن المتشائمين يرون الحياة مملة وكليبة.

b) الناس المتفائلون هم من يرون أن كل شىء فى الحياة جيد وهم لا يعيشون بسعادة بين زملائهم ومن ناحية أخرى فإن المتشائمين يرون الحياة غير ممتعة ومظلمة.

c) الناس المتفائلون هم من يرون أن كل شىء فى الحياة جميل وهم يعيشون بسعادة بين رفقهم وعلى النقيض من ذلك فإن المتشائمين يرون كل شىء فى الحياة ممل وكليب.

d) الأشخاص المتفائلون هم من يرون أن كل شىء فى الحياة جيد وهم يعيشون بسعادة بين رفاقهم ومن ناحية أخرى فإن المتشائمين يرون كل شىء فى الحياة ممل وكليب.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 تمثل الدراما أهم وسائل قضاء وقت الفراغ لدى معظم الناس لذا يستخدمها المنتجون للوصول بمنتجاتهم إلى المستهلكين رغم التكلفة الكبيرة لهذه الإعلانات.

a) Drama is not one of the most main ways of spending free time for some people. Therefore, sellers use it to get their products to consumers though the high increase of these advertisements.

b) Drama is one of the most important means of spending free time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high cost of these commercials.

c) Drama is one of the most important methods of enjoying spare time for most people. Hence, producers use it to get their production to customs though the high cost of these announcements.

d) Drama is not one of the most main means of spending spare time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their produce to sellers in spite of the high rise of these commercials.

يعتقد الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة، كما يؤدي إلى تدهور علاقاتهم الاجتماعية بعائلاتهم وأصدقائهم.

2

a) Experts believe that young people's overuse of mobile phones affects their health and practising useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.

b) Experiences believe that young people's overdose of mobile phones effects their health and practising useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social connections with their family and friends.

c) Experts guess that young people's overuse of mobile phones influences their health and making useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.

d) Experiences say that young people's overdose of mobile phones affects their health and doing useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social communications with their family and friends.

3 عُقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة الوصول إلى حل لمشكلة التغير المناخي، لكنها مازالت مشكلة خطيرة تؤثر على الكثير من مجالات حياتنا.

a) Many international conferences were held to reach a solution for climate change. However, it is still a serious problem which affects many fields in our life.

b) Many international meetings were held to reach a solution for global warming. However, it is still a serious problem which affects some fields in our life.

c) Many national conferences were holding to give a solution for global warming. Though, it is still a main problem which affects many aspects of life.

d) Many national meetings were holding to find a solution for climate change. Although, it isn't still a serious problem which affects many aspects of life.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

Study 

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

animated (adj)	معروض برسوم متحركة	Malawi (n)	مالاوى (بلد إفريقى)
annoying (adj)	مزعج	partner (n)	شريك
awful (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	personally (adv)	شخصيًا
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب
ending (n)	نهاية	right (n) (adj)	حق/على صواب
harness (v) (ed)*	يستغل/يستخدم	windmill (n)	طاحونة هوائية
hilarious (adj)	مرح/مضحك جدًا		

★ Man could harness the power of waterfalls to generate electricity.

Vocabulary on Listening

boring (adj)	ممل	generally (adv)	بشكل عام
carefully (adv)	بحرص	gun (n)	سلاح نارى/مسدس
chase (n) (v) (d)	مطاردة/يطارد	politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة
fight (n) (v)	قتال/يقاتل	silly (adj)	سخيف

Workbook Vocabulary

burning (adj)	محترق	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
equipment (n)	معدات	scenery (n)	مناظر طبيعية
mistake (n)	خطأ	stupid (adj)	غبى
owner (n)	مالك	war (n)	حرب
prefer (v) (red)	يفضل		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

all the time	طوال الوقت	have the right to	لديه الحق أن
couldn't stop laughing	لم أستطع التوقف عن الضحك	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة
get married	يتزوج	tell a story	يحكى قصة
hostile to	عدائى/معاد لـ	terrible at	فظيع فى
look like	يشبه	think about	يفكر فى
opinion about	رأى عن	travel to	يسافر إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
animate	يصور برسوم	animation	رسوم متحركة	animated	معروض برسوم متحركة
annoy	يزعج	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying annoyed	مزعج منزعج
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning	محترق
prefer	يفضل	preference	تفضيل	preferred	مفضل
realise	يدرك	realisation	إدراك	realistic	حقيقى/واقعى

★ - The journalist annoyed the speaker with too many questions.
- Salim's silly jokes caused great annoyance to his colleagues.
- That noise is very annoying. I can't go on with my studies.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
annoying (adj)	مزعج	disturbing/irritating	agreeable/pleasant	مفضل/سار
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	joyful/merry	depressed/gloomy	مكتئب
harness (v)	يسخر/يستخدم	exploit/use/utilize	consume neglect	يستهلك يهمل
hilarious (adj)	مرح/مضحك جدا	humorous/funny	serious/tragic	جاد/دارامى
mistake (n)	خطأ	error/misunderstanding	correction/accuracy	تصحيح/دقة

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This fascinating village is surrounded by magnificent mountain ....
a) site
b) treasury
c) audience
d) scenery

2 Our attempts محاولات at dancing were .... We all kept stepping on each other's feet.
a) serious
b) hilarious
c) dangerous
d) romantic

3 For centuries, traditional .... used the wind to drive machinery for grinding wheat into flour.
a) waterfalls
b) transport
c) windmills
d) inspection

4 We can .... the power of the wind to generate electricity.
a) discover
b) harness
c) explore
d) expire

5 I don't think you .... how important this is to her.
a) realise
b) achieve
c) recognise
d) respire

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book

Reading Text (1)

I saw a great film last night. It was called *'The Boy who Harnessed[1] the Wind'*. It was about a boy in Malawi who built a windmill[2] and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful message about positive thinking and never giving up.



(1) يسخر
(2) طاحونة هوائية
(3) مصور برسوم متحركة

I also saw *'Toy Story 4'*, which was great fun. It's a brilliant animated[3] film, and personally, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy ending.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

1) If you like musicals, then you'll love the film "*We met in Greece*". It's about a man who travels to a Greek island and meets the daughter of a hotel owner[1].

2) At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises[2] he's both kind and talented, he lets his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a romantic story!

3) The music is brilliant and the scenery[3] on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.

(1) مالك
(2) يدرك
(3) مناظر طبيعية
(4) مرح/مضحك
(5) مزعج

1) Some comedies are hilarious[4], but I didn't think that "visit to a farm" was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.

2) The young man is terrible at farming, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was annoying[5]!

3) The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too stupid to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

Listening Text

Ramy : What kinds of film do you like watching, Dareen? Romantic ones, like Mum?

Dareen : Not really, most of them are a bit silly[1]. I love comedies, especially the old ones, they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer?

Tamer : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car chases[2] and gun[3] fights!

Dareen : Really? I think most of them are really boring[4] and they don't usually have a good story either.

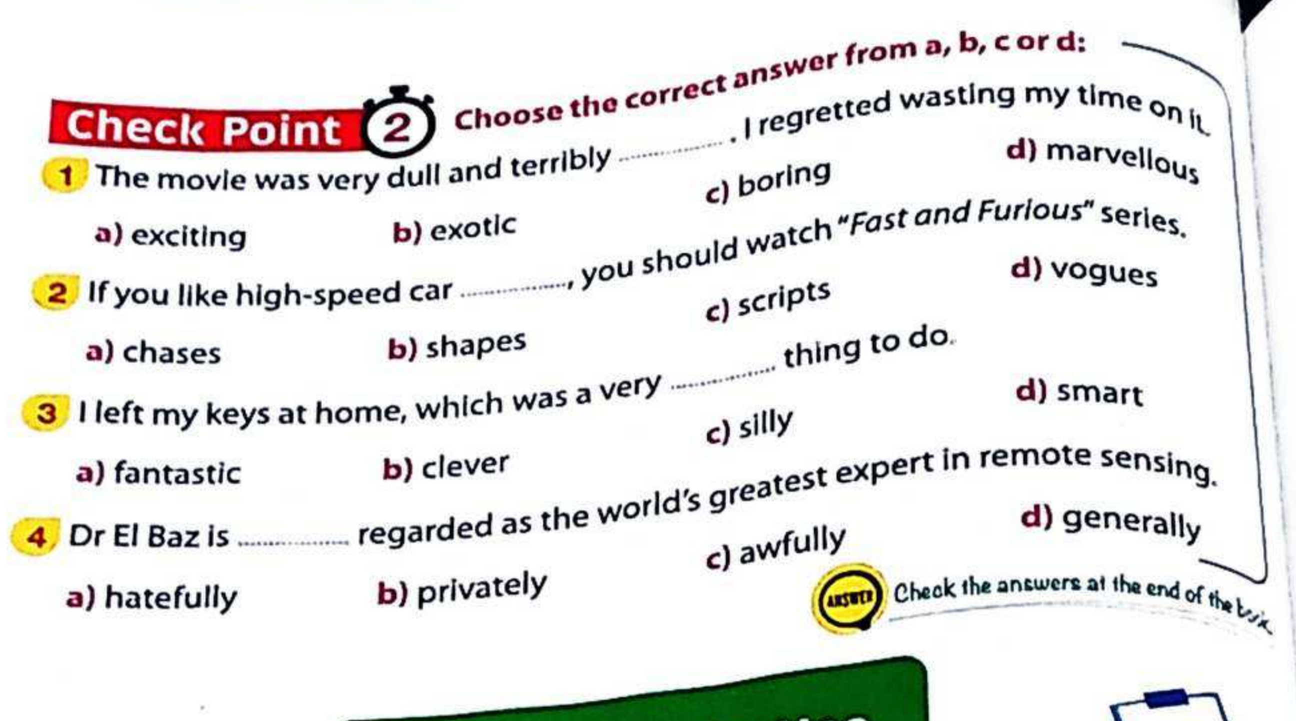
(1) سخيف
(2) مطاردات
(3) سلاح نارى
(4) ممل
(5) بشكل عام

Tamer : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too don't you, Ramy?

Ramy : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally[5] not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.

Dareen : Aren't you scared?

Ramy : Yes, but that's what I like about them.



Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The movie was very dull and terribly .... I regretted wasting my time on it.
   a) exciting b) exotic c) boring d) marvellous
2. If you like high-speed car ...., you should watch *"Fast and Furious"* series.
   a) chases b) shapes c) scripts d) vogues
3. I left my keys at home, which was a very .... thing to do.
   a) fantastic b) clever c) silly d) smart
4. Dr El Baz is .... regarded as the world's greatest expert in remote sensing.
   a) hatefully b) privately c) awfully d) generally

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

harness يستغل/يستخدم
- to control and use the natural force or power of something

hilarious مرح/مضحك جدًا
- extremely funny

scenery مناظر طبيعية
- the natural features of a particular part of a country that you can see, such as mountains, forests, deserts, etc.

windmill طاحونة هوائية
- a building or structure with parts that turn around in the wind, used for producing electrical power or crushing grain

Notes on Vocabulary

realise

١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا)
٢- يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)

- Do you realise you're an hour late?
- She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise

١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)
٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء

- I didn't recognise you in your uniform.
- The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) .... to + (v-ing/noun) — .... يفضّل .... عن
(would) prefer + to + inf. .... rather than + inf — .... يفضّل أن .... عن أن

- He prefers watching tennis to playing it.
- I'd prefer to stay at home rather than go out.
- I prefer English to physics.

most

- Love is what the children need most.
- The Pyramids at Giza are the most interesting monuments for many tourists.

تعبر عن التفضيل بمعنى (أكثر/الأكثر) و قد يتبعها صفة.

- Most people think of robots as machines that look like people.
- Most business meetings are held at the company's headquarters.

تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية بشكل عام ويتبعها اسم جمع.

- Most of the people who attended the party brought me presents.
- My cousin spent most of his life abroad.

تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية من عدد أو شيء محدد ويتبعها حرف الجر (of) مع اسم مفرد أو جمع وبعدها.

mistake
خطأ (شيء خاطئ في حسابات أو كتابة)
The article was full of spelling mistakes.

flaw
عيب (خطأ في نظام أو وجهة نظر تجعله غير مفيد أو غير فعال)
Your argument has a fundamental flaw.

fault
خطأ/ خلل (مشكلة في آلة أو تصميم أو نظام يسبب ضررا)
The fire was caused by an electrical fault.

defect
عيب/ خلل (مشكلة في منتج أو آلة ناتج عن خطأ في التصنيع أو التصميم)
Machines are usually tested for defects before they are sold.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... these kinds of films always make people feel good.

يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل ويتبعه المصدر بدون (to).

- .... and helped his village get water.

يتبع الفعل (help) المصدر بدون (to) أو (to + inf.).

- .... he lets his daughter marry him.

يستخدم الفعل (let) بمعنى يجعل ويتبعها المصدر بدون (to).

- I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة غير المباشر (why this was) بعد (I'm not sure).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I wonder if I'll .... Samy after all these years.

a) realise b) recognise c) organise d) forget

2 When he watched the TV show, he .... he'd seen it before.

a) realised b) recognised c) organised d) forgot

3 We always prefer .... abroad for our vacation.

a) go b) to go c) going d) went

4 .... the boys I know prefer football to any other game.

a) Most b) Most of c) Mostly d) Must

5 The rocket launch was delayed because of a technical .... which was harmful.

a) mistake b) flow c) defect d) fault

Check the answers at the end of the book



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Scientists designed systems to .... the energy of waves to produce electricity.
a) contain b) waste c) consume d) harness

2 The restaurant is extremely .... owing to its high standard of food.
a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting

3 Today, modern versions of ...., called wind turbines, are used to create electricity.
a) waterfalls b) windmills c) panels d) stations

4 You were .... to tell the teacher about the girl who you saw cheating. Her behaviour was really bad.
a) right b) punished c) wrong d) rightly

5 The teacher asked every student to choose a .... for the next activity.
a) servant b) partner c) hero d) champion

6 We went for a drive to enjoy the .... of the forest near our town.
a) sense b) flavour c) scenery d) scent

7 The local council is supplying new play .... for the playground at the sports centre.
a) discipline b) software c) design d) equipment

8 The athlete .... a lifelong dream by winning an Olympic medal.
a) recognised b) realised c) replied d) puzzled

9 My grandfather fought in the .... that took place in 1973.
a) tournament b) race c) war d) conference

10 *"Beauty and the Beast"* was the first .... film ever nominated for a ' Best Picture Oscar'.
a) allied b) historical c) apparent d) animated

11 The reviewer found two spelling .... in the student's essay.
a) mistakes b) guilts c) crimes d) marks

12 The stolen jewellery was found and returned to its rightful ....
a) consumer b) owner c) robber d) prisoner

13 "Robinson Crusoe" is a novel about a sailor who was shipwrecked تحطمت on a desert .... near South America.

a) beach b) road c) island d) village

14 Two girls were saved from the .... flat by some brave firefighters.

a) wealthy b) luxurious c) decorated d) burning

15 I might not .... the name of my old friend but I will know her face.

a) realise b) launch c) result d) recognise

16 The company is .... technology to provide better service to its customers.

a) consuming b) blaming c) harnessing d) avoiding

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 Car buyers have recently shown a growing .... for smaller vehicles.

a) prefer b) preferred c) preference d) preferable

18 Her most .... habit was eating with her mouth open.

a) annoy b) annoyance c) annoying d) annoyed

19 I keep practising and I'm improving .... the time.

a) all b) every c) none d) both

20 Many of the employees were hostile .... the idea of closing the factory.

a) in b) to c) at d) from

21 She greeted us with a cheerful smile. The adjective "cheerful" is the opposite of the adjective "..............".

a) merry b) terrible c) funny d) gloomy

22 Leaving school so young was the biggest mistake of my life. The noun "mistake" is similar in meaning to the noun "..............".

a) crime b) state c) error d) correction

23 My little sister thinks that "Tom and Jerry" cartoons are the most hilarious. The antonym of the word "hilarious" is ....

a) funny b) irritable c) hopeful d) serious

24 Everyone should have the right .... freedom of expression.

a) out b) in c) to d) up

25 That noise is very annoying. The synonym of the adjective "annoying" is ....

a) helpful b) disturbing c) romantic d) funny





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Tag questions

لغة المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنها:

١) إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ yes هى الموافقة و No للرفض مثل:

- You like chemistry, don't you?
  - Yes, I do. موافقة
  - No, I don't. رفض

٢) إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ No هى الموافقة و Yes للرفض مثل:

- You don't like chemistry, do you?
  - No, I don't. It's very difficult. موافقة
  - Yes, I do. I like it and I find it very easy. رفض

٣) يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الخبرية موجهًا إلى المخاطب وليس عائدًا على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A) I love comedy films, don't you?
B) Yes, I do. I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم وهذا لا يصلح إلا فى المحادثات.

٤) نبرة الصوت intonation ترتفع وتنخفض فى السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال:

- عندما يكون المتكلم متأكدًا من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

- He's your brother, isn't he? ↙

- عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شيء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

- You eat meat, don't you? ↗

٥) عندما تكون has و have للملكية يكون النفى بـ hasn't/haven't وعندما تكون بمعنى آخر نستخدم v. to do.

- He has a new car, hasn't he?
- He has lunch at 3 pm every day, doesn't he?

٦) فى الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على must have + P.P. هو mustn't.

- Hesham must have won the gold medal, mustn't he?

Adjectives and adverbs

بالإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضًا الحال مثله والجملة:

They started the race slowly.	الحال يصف الفعل
He is an incredibly amazing cook.	الحال يصف الصفة
He cooks really amazingly. (very well)	الحال يصف الحال
Interestingly, he won the first medal.	الحال يصف الجملة

- تستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جدًا أما في الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very).

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – awfully – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

- Mr. Ahmed is a very good teacher.
- Mr. Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلي:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge	tired	exhausted منهك
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified هلع
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted مغتبط
surprised مندهش	amazed منذهول	cold	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless نظيف جدًا	good	wonderful, excellent ممتاز
crowded مزدحم	packed مُكتَظ	hot	boiling مغتاظ/حانق
hungry	starving يموت جوعًا	old	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating خَلّاب	small	tiny دقيق
clever	brilliant بارع	pretty جَذّاب	gorgeous رائع

ملاحظة

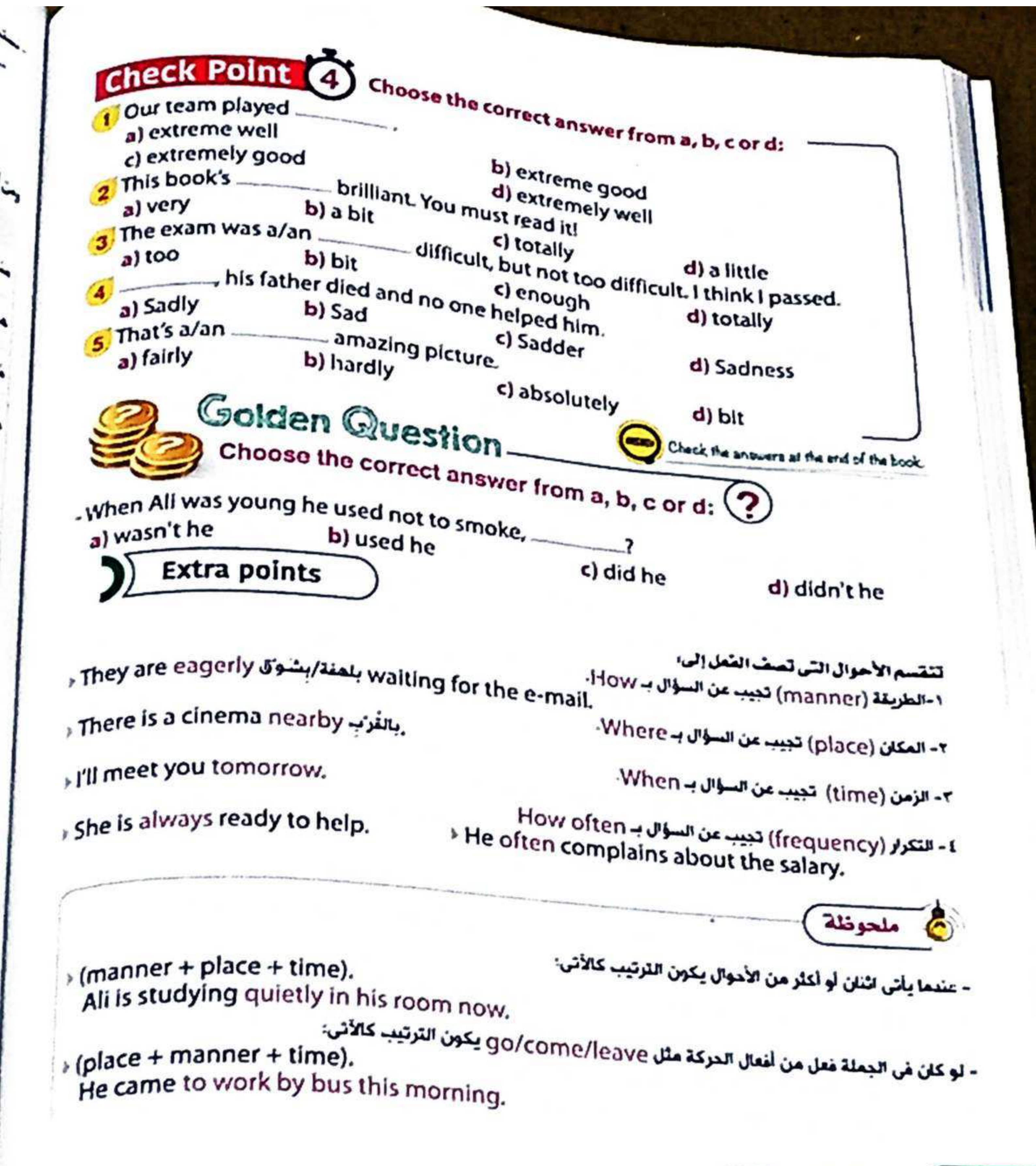
- هناك بعض الظروف التي تُستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost تقريبًا	partly إلى حد ما/جُزئيًا	a lot/much جدًا
enough بدرجة كافية	too أكثر من اللازم/جدًا	just فقط/تقريبًا/بصعوبة

a little	قليل
a bit	قليل

- تستخدم بعض الظروف قبل الفعل.

- The earthquake completely destroyed the area.



Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our team played ______ .
   a) extreme well b) extreme good c) extremely good d) extremely well
2. This book's ______ brilliant. You must read it!
   a) very b) a bit c) totally d) a little
3. The exam was a/an ______ difficult, but not too difficult. I think I passed.
   a) too b) bit c) enough d) totally
4. ______, his father died and no one helped him.
   a) Sadly b) Sad c) Sadder d) Sadness
5. That's a/an ______ amazing picture.
   a) fairly b) hardly c) absolutely d) bit

Golden Question

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When Ali was young he used not to smoke, ______?
  a) wasn't he b) used he c) did he d) didn't he

Extra points

تنقسم الأحوال التى تصف الفعل إلى:

١- الطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How.
- They are eagerly بلهفة/بشوق waiting for the e-mail.

٢- المكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ Where.
- There is a cinema nearby بالقرب.

٣- الزمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ When.
- I'll meet you tomorrow.

٤- التكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How often.
- She is always ready to help.
- He often complains about the salary.

ملحوظة

- عندما يأتى اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتى:
- (manner + place + time).
  Ali is studying quietly in his room now.

- لو كان فى الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل go/come/leave يكون الترتيب كالآتى:
- (place + manner + time).
  He came to work by bus this morning.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, ... you?
a) don't b) do c) won't d) will

2 The slide show was fantastic, ... it?
a) didn't b) isn't c) wasn't d) was

3 Nothing can be done at this moment, ...?
a) can it b) can they c) can't it d) can't they

4 You have never seen that movie before, ... you?
a) do b) have c) haven't d) don't

5 Playing a musical instrument isn't as easy as supposed, ...?
a) is it b) aren't you c) isn't it d) aren't they

6 She rarely cooks meat, ... she?
a) has b) doesn't c) does d) hasn't

7 They should have been informed long before his arrival, ... they?
a) mustn't b) didn't c) needn't d) shouldn't

8 Let's have a morning walk, ... we?
a) shall b) haven't c) don't d) should

9 He used to be a famous doctor, ... he?
a) wasn't b) didn't c) wouldn't d) weren't

10 Hassan has been painting the walls since morning, ... he?
a) has b) doesn't c) hasn't d) does

11 ...., could she?
a) The band couldn't sing well
b) Nour couldn't sing well
c) Shady couldn't sing well
d) Shady could sing well

12 ...., don't they?
a) They don't often talk to their neighbours
b) They often talk to their neighbours
c) We often talk to our neighbours
d) We often talk to their neighbours

13 A: I'm late, aren't I?
B: .... You are just on time.
a) Yes, you aren't
b) Yes, you are
c) No, you aren't
d) No, you are

14 The young woman spoke to us ....
a) mother
b) motherly
c) in a motherly way
d) motherhood

15 Your decision is .... easy, isn't it?
a) quite
b) seriously
c) absolutely
d) terribly

16 Sara thought that the film was .... interesting.
a) terribly
b) extremely
c) extreme
d) absolute

17 You can't win without working very .... with the other people on your team.
a) hardly
b) harden
c) harder
d) hard

18 There was a .... end to the film, but I won't tell you what happened!
a) surprise
b) surprised
c) surprisingly
d) surprising

19 Mona did .... in her exam. She was ill that day.
a) terrible
b) terribly
c) good
d) well

20 It's .... hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.
a) rather
b) quite
c) extremely
d) slightly

21 Everyone admires her because she plays the violin very ....
a) well
b) good
c) better
d) best

22 We could walk .... around the aircraft during the flight.
a) free
b) freedom
c) freeing
d) freely

23 The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very ....
a) carefully
b) careful
c) care
d) carefulness

24 They were .... delighted with the service in this hotel.
a) very
b) a bit
c) absolutely
d) extreme

25 In 2015, Messi was .... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.
a) a bit
b) incredibly
c) rather
d) a little

26 You look very .... What's the matter?
a) unhappily
b) happily
c) angrily
d) unhappy

27 I'm going to .... next term, because the exams are getting closer.
a) studying hard
b) study hardly
c) hardly study
d) study hard

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) I speak English fluently now.
b) I speak fluent English now.
c) I speak fluently English now.
d) I speak English more fluently now than last year.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) Yasser has a good chance to win the game.
b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.
c) Yasser has a better chance to win the game than others.
d) Yasser has the best chance to win the game.

30 Which sentence is correctly structured?

a) The food looked perfectly good to me.
b) The food looked perfectly well to me.
c) The food looked perfect well to me.
d) The food looked perfect good to me.

31 Hany doesn't know how to cook, does he?

a) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking.
b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
c) No, he does. He likes cooking.
d) Yes, he doesn't, but he is trying to learn.

32 Help your brother with his homework, ...?

a) isn't he
b) don't you
c) shan't you
d) will you

33 He was careful when he wrote the report to his boss. This means: ....

a) He was carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.
b) He carefully wrote the report to his boss.
c) He carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.
d) He careful wrote the report to his boss.

34 Hala thinks that the film will be interesting, ...?

a) won't she
b) doesn't it
c) won't it
d) does it

35 ...., Omar joined the basketball team despite being short.

a) Badly
b) Surprisingly
c) Terribly
d) Awfully





Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات برجى
الرجوع لملحق المعاصر



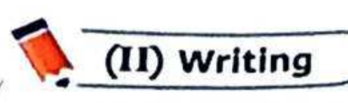
Creativity

- Creativity is defined as the tendency to generate or recognise ideas, alternatives, or possibilities that may be useful in solving problems, communicating with others, and entertaining ourselves and others.
- **Three reasons why people are motivated to be creative:**

1. need for novel, varied, and complex stimulation
2. need to communicate ideas and values
3. need to solve problems

- In order to be creative, you need to be able to view things in new ways or from a different perspective. Among other things, you need to be able to generate new possibilities or new alternatives. Tests of creativity measure not only the number of alternatives that people can generate, but the uniqueness of those alternatives. The ability to generate alternatives or to see things uniquely does not occur by chance; it is linked to other, more fundamental qualities of thinking, such as flexibility, tolerance of ambiguity or unpredictability, and the enjoyment of things heretofore unknown.

Reference https://www.csun.edu/~vcpsy00h/creativity/define.htm



Film review

- **Write about a film. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.**
  - Introduce the film.
  - Say if you would or would not recommend the film and why.
  - Say what happens in the film.
  - Try to include different adjectives and adverbs.

1) If you like action film, then you'll love the film Cazablanca. It's about a gang of three companions who worked in illegal acts and their struggle for a huge sum of diamond which was stolen. The events of the film are divided between Egypt and Morocco. The main actors Amir Karara, Amr Abdel Gileel and Eiad Nassar are all marvellous. Although the film is full of illegal acts, the atmosphere and action scenes are amazing. I would recommend this film for people who like excitement and adventure.

2) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that "El Harb El Alamia El Talta" "The Third World War" was funny at all! It's about a young man who lives near a wax museum where statues come alive at night. It is an imitation of an American film. The events are all farfetched, the script is not nice and acting is exaggerating. I really regret wasting my time on this film and I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.

Test Yourself (In 20 mins)



Unit 11
Lessons 3 & 4

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The manager blamed me .... for causing the problem with the customer.
a) faintly b) personally c) gradually d) funnily

2 Tourists come to Hurghada to enjoy water sports and the beautiful ....
a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

3 My friends thought that the film by Henidi was so .... that they couldn't stop laughing.
a) serious b) hilarious c) dangerous d) romantic

4 I couldn't .... my friend Munir who has just returned home from his long stay in Europe.
a) realise b) achieve c) recognise d) respire

5 Solar panels enable us to .... the power of the sun to generate electricity.
a) discover b) harness c) explore d) expire

6 *"The Lion King"* was the first .... film to make profits of more than one hundred million dollars in its time.
a) bad b) historical c) apparent d) animated

7 Mohamed was ...... to complain about the service in the restaurant; it is really bad.
a) right b) punished c) wrong d) rightly

8 Tea and coffee are considered the most .... drinks all over the world.
a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting

9 You have read all Charles Dickens' novels, ...?
a) isn't it b) don't you c) have you d) haven't you

10 He never thought what might come out of it, ...?
a) hasn't he b) didn't he c) did he d) won't he

11 **A:** The manner of addressing people in Britain is quite different from ours, ...?
B: Yes, it is you're right.
a) isn't it b) isn't there c) it is d) is it

12 Please, call me when he comes, ...?
a) won't I b) shall I c) aren't you d) will you

13 His arm was so .... injured that he couldn't play anymore.
a) bad b) lately c) badly d) hardly

14 I'm feeling .... thirsty.

a) really   b) fantastically   c) extreme   d) terrible

15 The children are very .... What are they doing?

a) quietness   b) quiet   c) quietly   d) quieter

16 When I play football indoors, I feel .... exhausted.

a) very   b) absolutely   c) a bit   d) a little

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dana Miller is a bus driver. She drives a bus in the city of Philadelphia. She starts work at 10:00 at night and gets off at 6:00 in the morning. In the world of bus driving, this is sometimes called third shift[1]. Dana has been driving a bus for 15 years. She started when she was 23 years old. She loves her job most of the time. She gets to see the beautiful city from her seat. She gets to meet all kinds of people. There is the guitar player. He lugs[2] his heavy guitar on the bus every Friday night. He plays at a nightspot[3] downtown. People call him Get Low. That is because he likes to play the guitar on his knees. If the bus is not too crowded, Get Low plays in the back of the bus. The bus is seldom crowded at night. He likes to warm up on the bus before shows. There is the woman who works at the pretzel factory. Each day the "Pretzel Lady" brings Dana a bag of fresh, soft pretzels[4]. They fill the bus with a wonderful smell! Sometimes Dana's job is hard. It is hard when Dana sees people down on their luck. One time, a young woman left her sleeping baby on the bus. There was a note on the baby's blanket asking for help. Dana had to call the police. Another time, a teenaged boy stole money from Dana on the bus. He had a fake gun. Dana thought it was real. She was very scared. Occasionally[5], driving the bus can be scary. But most of the time, driving the bus is great.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How old is Dana?

a) 15.   b) 23.   c) 38.   d) 39.

2 How long is Dana's shift?

a) 6 hours.   b) 8 hours.   c) 10 hours.   d) 12 hours.

3 Who gives Dana pretzels?

a) The guitar player.   b) The teenager.

c) The young mom.   d) The woman who works at the factory.



(1) ورديّة   (2) يسحب   (3) ملهى ليلي   (4) قطع بسكويت مملحة   (5) من وقت إلى آخر

4 The main reason Get Low rides the bus is because ....

a) he needs to get to a show
b) he likes to see the city
c) he enjoys talking to Dana
d) he likes to play the guitar there

5 Dana drives the bus ....

a) in the morning
b) during rush hours
c) around Philadelphia
d) to help people at night

6 The guitar player is called Get Low because he ....

a) plays at night
b) likes to play on his knees
c) plays when the bus is crowded
d) plays in the back of the bus

7 Dana loves her job because she ....

a) meets all kinds of people
b) gets pretzels
c) can call the police
d) has got a bus

8 The antonym of the word "scared" is ".................." .

a) frightened b) terrified c) brave d) anxious

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 To solve the problem of unemployment, young people should take training that will allow them to get several kinds of jobs and mainly studies connected with technology.

a) لكى نحل مشـكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشـباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع عديدة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.

b) لأننا لا نجد حل لمشـكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشـباب بتمارين تسـمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.

c) لإيجاد حل لمشكلة البطالة يجب ألا يقوم الشباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.

d) لكى نحل مشـكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشـباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بايجاد أنواع عديدة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات ليس لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.

2 Many people fear change, so they oppose those who have different ideas. We should accept others' opinions and be tolerant towards them. We also may expect that our own opinions may not be absolutely right.

a) يخـاف الكثيـرون من التغير لذلك لا يمانعون الذيـن لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا ألا نقبـل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

b) الخـوف من التغيير لايخشـاه الكثيرون لذلك يوافقون الذين لديهم أفـكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل وجهات نظر الأخرين ونكون غير متسامحين معهم لأننا قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

c) يخشـى الكثيـرون التغيـر لذلك يعارضـون الذين لديهم أفـكار مختلفة وعلينـا أن نقبـل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

d) يخشـى معظـم الناس من التغير لذلك لا يعارضون الذين لديهم اقتراحـات مميزة وعلينا أن نقبل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتنبأ أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

3 Nowadays, young people, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character.

a) فى الوقت الحاضر لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم أحيانا لا يضيعون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الأشخاص السيلين الذين لا يفسدون حياتهم.

b) فى الوقت الحالى يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة غير مفيدة فهم غالبا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس السيلين الذين يفسدون شخصيتهم.

c) فى الوقت الحاضر يعرف الشباب كيفية قضاء وقت الفراغ بطريقة غير مثمرة فهم أحيانا لا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس السيلين الذين يفسدون حياتهم.

d) فى الوقت الحالى لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الأشخاص السيلين الذين يفسدون شخصيتهم.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 أصبحت التكنولوجيا الحديثة جزءًا هامًا من حياتنا اليومية، لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنها لدرجة أننا نتعجب كيف كان الناس يعيشون فى الماضى بدون الأجهزة الحديثة التى نستخدمها يوميًا.

a) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are admired how people lived in the past without these technological tools that we use every day.

b) Modern technology is an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we admire how people now lived with these technological devices that we use every day.

c) Modern technology isn't an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are puzzled how people now lived without these technological tools that we use every day.

d) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we are puzzled how people lived in the past without these technological devices that we use every day.

2 تُعتبر الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والبراكين فرصة لاختبار وحدة وتماسك اى أمة، فكلما كان الأفراد متعاونين قلت الخسائر التى يمكن لهذه الكوارث أن تخلفها.

a) Natural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a chance to test the unity and integrity of any nation. The more cooperative people are, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.

b) Interneural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a choice to test the unity and integrity of any people. The more people are cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.

c) Unnatural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are an option to check the unity and integrity of any nation. The most cooperative people are, the least the losses that these disasters can cause.

d) Environmental disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes have a chance to examine the unity and integrity of any country. The more people have been cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can be caused.

3 أصبحت القاهرة إحدى أكثر المدن اكتظاظًا بالسكان في العالم، ويؤدي هذا إلى تعقيد مشاكل الإسكان والنظافة والخدمات العامة، لذا لزم بناء العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.

a) Cairo was become one of the most populated cities all over the world. This leads to the complexity of the problems of habitats, cleanliness and public service. Moreover, it became a must to build the New Administrative Capital.

b) Cairo has become one of the most populated cities in the world. This leads to the complexity of the problems of housing, cleanliness and public service. Therefore, it became a must to build the New Administrative Capital.

c) Cairo has become one of the most crowded cities in the world. This leads to the problems of housing, sanitation and public service became complex. Therefore, it is not only necessary to build the New Administrative Capital.

d) Cairo was become the most crowded cities all over the world. This leads to the complexity of the problems of habitats, cleanliness and public service. In addition, it became a must to establish the New Administrative Capital.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The importance of scientific research"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

Study 

King Lear: Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

apart	بعيدًا	honestly	بشرف/بأمانة
birth	ميلاد	invade	يغزو
blow	ينفخ	join	يتحد/يضم
brave	شجاع	officers	ضباط
cage	قفص	poison	سم
death	موت	ruler	حاكم
disguise	يتخفى	starve	يتضور/يموت جوعًا
dry	يجفف	suffer	يعانى
equal	مثيل/ند	support	يدعم
forget	ينسى	trumpet	بوق
forgive	يسامح/يغفر	trust	ثقة/يثق
guard	يحرس	wheel	عجلة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

bitter pill to swallow	حقيقة صادمة	day or night	نهارًا أو
take control	يستولى على السلطة		

Practice

Practise more

King Lear Exercises

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed was a good driver and I .... him completely.
   a) refused b) trusted c) agreed d) doubted
2. The Romans .... Britain 2,000 years ago.
   a) viewed b) discovered c) invaded d) accepted
3. Students should be encouraged to .... control of their own learning, rather than just depending on the teacher.
   a) beat b) win c) give d) take
4. A .... is a musical instrument that you blow into ينفخ فيها.
   a) trumpet b) drum c) violin d) piano
5. The player .... an injury, but he completed the match.
   a) rejoiced b) suffered c) treated d) cured
6. Thousands of people will .... if food doesn't reach the city.
   a) stay b) feed c) starve d) plead
7. I don't like seeing animals in .... It's really cruel.
   a) deserts b) clouds c) space d) cages
8. Samy is the best player in our school. He has no .... at chess.
   a) enemy b) friend c) equal d) colleague
9. My brother will never .... me for losing his camera.
   a) assist b) forgive c) plead d) fight
10. The officer told the soldier to .... the entrance of the police station.
    a) guard b) attend c) repent d) rebuild
11. .... is a substance that causes death or harm if it gets into the body.
    a) Medicine b) Sugar c) Vaccine d) Poison
12. The knowledge that his friends no longer trusted him was a .... pill to swallow.
    a) sweet b) delicious c) bitter d) sour

Unit 11  Al-Adwaa Test 

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My cousin joined the .... of a large fishing boat as he had always dreamed of working in the sea.
a) crew b) staff c) cast d) group

2 The children read the novel in its simplified ....
a) video b) version c) episode d) animation

3 At the University gate, you must present .... proof of your admittance.
a) correspondence b) forged c) documentary d) competitive

4 The Nile passes through a rich variety of .... in some African countries.
a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

5 The manager was openly hostile .... any kind of criticism of his project.
a) to b) for c) about d) in

6 This game is recommended for children aged 12 and above. The antonym of the word "recommend" is ....
a) propose b) depress c) create d) oppose

7 Don't eat the whole chicken, ...?
a) will I b) won't you c) will you d) won't I

8 They had a party last night, ...?
a) didn't they b) weren't they c) do they d) hadn't they

9 I'm shorter than her, ...?
a) am I b) aren't I c) am not I d) don't I

10 Which one is grammatically incorrect?
a) I'm really helpful, aren't I?
b) Stay here, won't you?
c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?
d) Everybody is coming to the party, aren't they?

11 How .... can a sportsman run?
a) quick b) quicker c) quickest d) quickly

12 It's a pretty village, but there's .... anything to do here.

a) hardly b) harden c) hard d) nearly

13 We all love our teacher of English because he treats us ....

a) in a kindly way b) kindly
c) kind d) kindness

14 Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ....

a) rashly b) rash
c) in a carefully way d) carefully

15 All heavenly religions call for peace and cooperation. The word "heavenly" is a/an ....

a) adjective b) adverb c) verb d) noun

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Generally, rainforests[1] are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous[2] ways, but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

Rainforests have been called the womb[3] of life because they are home to 50 – 90 % of the species[4] on earth, although tropical[5] forests cover only 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated[6] that, as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day.

No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems[7] depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital[8] source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty[9] of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose[10], they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed[11] by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows[12] quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion[13].



(1) الغابات (2) مهول/متعدد (3) رحم
(4) صنف/فصيلة (5) استوائي (6) يخمن يقدر القيمة
(7) أنظمة بيئية (8) حيوي (9) منحة/محصول
(10) يتحلل (11) يمتص (12) ينساب
(13) تآكل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of ....

a) global warming

b) high rainfall and flood

c) cutting down rainforests

d) global ecosystems

17 The species mentioned in the passage are ....

a) plants and animals

b) medicine and food

c) plants

d) animals

18 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) floods and erosion

b) rain and water

c) absorbed water

d) trees and plants

19 The word that gives the opposite to the word "veritable" is ....

a) real

b) false

c) genuine

d) true

20 As they are a vital source of medicine, rainforests ....

a) are rarely found around the world

b) are useful to humans

c) don't offer any kind of food

d) grow everywhere

21 When rainforests decompose, they release ....

a) carbon dioxide

b) global warming

c) oxygen

d) erosion

22 If rainforests disappeared, ...

a) we would suffer from global warming

b) life would be impossible

c) some species of animals would disappear

d) all of the previous answers

23 The best title to the passage is " .... "

a) The importance of rainforests to man

b) The effect of rainforests on the earth

c) The importance of rainforests to animals

d) The importance of rainforests to medicine

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:** (2)

- Mass media – represented in television, the radio and the press – have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

a) وسـائل التواصل الإعلامى على رأسـها التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهم يشكلون الرأى العام لأى شعب.
b) وسائل الإعلام مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة ليس لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهم يشكلون الرأى العام لأى شعب
c) وسائل الإعلام ممثلة فى التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة لها تأثير حيوى على الجميع فهم يشكلون الرأى العام لأى أمة.
d) صفحات التواصل الإعلامى مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف ليس فقط لها تأثير قوى على الجميع بل لا يشكلون الرأى العام لأى أمة.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:** (2)

- لـو اسـتطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره علـى أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر فى كل المجالات، ولأصبحنـا من أرقى الأمم. فتنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

a) When somebody plays their role in a complete way, Egypt will develop in all fields and we will be one of the most developing countries. Developing a country can be achieved with hard work and patience.
b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields and we would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country cannot be achieved without hard work and patience.
c) If everyone played their role right, Egypt would develop in all fields and we wouldn't be one of the most developing nations. Development of a country cannot be achieved with hard work and patience.
d) Unless nobody had played their role in a complete way, Egypt would have developed in all fields and we have been one of the most developing countries. Development of a country can be achieved without hard work and patience.

26 **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:** (5)

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit
12



Achievements and goals

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about a young entrepreneur
- **Writing** : A report about an experience
- **Listening** : A talk about SMART goals
- **Speaking** : Discussing goals and how to achieve them
- **Language** : Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- **Life Skills** : Self-management; Decision-making; Collaboration





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

achievable (adj) قابل للتحقيق	recipe (n)* وصفة طعام
entrepreneur (n) رائد عمل	relevant (adj) ذو صلة
goal (n) هدف	set (v) يحدد
honeybee (n) نحلة عسل	specific (adj) محدد
measurable (adj) قابل للقياس	time-bound (adj) مقيد زمنيًا
profit (n) (v) (ed) ربح/يربح	

* I enjoy trying out new food recipes from different countries.

Vocabulary on Reading

aim (n) (v) (ed) هدف/يهدف	manage (v) (d) يدير/ينجح/يتمكن
business (n) عمل تجارى	manager (n) مدير
charity (n) منظمة خيرية/عمل خيرى	mention (v) (ed) يذكر
company (n) شركة	passionate (adj) عاطفى/متحمس
conservation (n) محافظة/حفاظ	possession (n) ملكية
donate (v) (d) يتبرع بـ	president (n) رئيس (شركة أو مؤسسة)
educate (v) (d) يعلم/يدرس	protect (v) (ed) يحمى
experience (n) خبرة	range (n) معدل/سلسلة
give up (v) يتوقف عن/يستسلم	share (v) (d) يشارك
highlight (v) (ed) يلقى ضوءًا/يميز نصًا	smart (adj) ذكى
honey (n) عسل	unlikely (adv) من غير المحتمل
importance (n) أهمية	well-known (adj) معروف
locally (adv) محليًا	whenever (conj) حينما

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

coach (n)	مدرب	qualify (v) (y ied)	يتأهل/يؤهل
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل
drop (v) (ped)	يسقط/يخرج (من فريق)	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
end date (n)	تاريخ الانتهاء	series (n)	سلسلة
failure (n)	فشل/حالة فشل	short-term (adj)	قصير الأمد
final (adj)	نهائى	stand for (v)	يمثل/ينوب عن
long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد	vague (adj)	غامض/غير واضح
physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء	winner (n)	فائز
progress (n)	تقدم/يتقدم		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

architecture (n)	العمارة	memory (n)	ذاكرة
detailed (adj)	مُفصَل	multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
essential (adj)	ضرورى	non-essential (adj)	غير ضرورى
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشى	objective (n)	هدف
fit in (v)	يجد وقتا لـ	practise (v) (d)	يمارس/يتدرب
forever (adv)	للأبد	profession (n)	مهنة
guitar (n)	جيتار	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردى	related (adj)	مرتبط
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
magnificent (adj)	رائع	tutorial (n)	فترة تعليمية/درس خصوصى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve their goals	يحققون اهدافهم
feel different	يشعر بانه مختلف
had my first sight	رايت لأول مرة
in public	علنًا/امام الجمهور
depending on	اعتمادًا على
donate to	يتبرع لـ
get over	يتغلب على
importance of	اهمية لـ
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا
pass my driving test	يجتاز اختبار القيادة
play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار
reach my goal	أصل لهدفي
look after	يعتني بـ
passionate about	متحمس بخصوص
related to	مرتبط بـ
relevant to	ذو صلة بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
conserve	يحافظ على	conservation	حفاظ	conservative	محافظ
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	إدارى
measure*	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
________		passion	عاطفة/حماس	passionate	عاطفى/متحمس
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملكى/اقتنائى
profit	يربح	profit	ربح	profitable	مربح
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مستريح/مسترخ
________		relevance	صلة/علاقة	relevant	ذو صلة

★ - We can measure the energy that food provides in calories.
- Take measurements of the room before you buy any new furniture.
- There has been a measurable improvement in the company's performance.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
achievable	قابل للتحقيق	attainable/feasible	impossible unattainable	مستحيل بعيد المنال
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	destruction/waste	تدمير/إهدار
detailed	مُفصّل	precise/specific	inaccurate/incomplete	غير دقيق/غير كامل
entrepreneur	رائد عمل	administrator/manager	employee	موظف
forever	للأبد	everlasting/eternally	temporarily	مؤقتًا
individual	فردي	single	team	جماعي
manage	يدير	direct/administer	obey/follow	يطيع
measurable	قابل للقياس	determinable	immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
passionate	عاطفي/متحمس	enthusiastic	unconcerned	غير مهتم
profit	ربح/يربح	benefit/interest	loss	خسارة
progress	تقدم	advance/growth	decline/failure	تدهور/فشل
related	مرتبط	associated/linked	irrelevant	ليس له صلة
relax	يسترخي	calm	worry	يقلق
sensible	عاقل/حكيم	reasonable/rational	irrational/unwise	غير عقلي/غير حكيم
smart	ذكي	intelligent/brilliant	foolish/stupid	أحمق/غبي

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor gave the patient .... instructions on how to care for the wound.
   a) silly b) hilarious c) timing d) specific
2. They are looking for someone with .... experience in childcare.
   a) unaccepted b) achievable c) relevant d) unreliable
3. The president is a .... supporter of the space programme.
   a) special b) passionate c) specific d) secret
4. After retirement, the head teacher now runs a local .... that gives books to poor children.
   a) charity b) chain c) chorus d) market
5. It is important to encourage environmental .... and awareness.
   a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation



Check the answers at the end of the book

Reading Text (1)

Do you set yourself some goals at the beginning of the school year?





To succeed in life, it's important to have specific[1] aims or goals. How often have you started something and then given up because it was either too difficult or took too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we achieve the goals we set ourselves? One way, often mentioned by managers[2], is to have SMART goals. These are five different things you need to consider if you want to meet your goal.

Whenever you plan to set a goal[3], you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it measurable[4]? Is it achievable[5]? Is it relevant[6]? and finally Is it time bound[7]? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are unlikely to reach your goal.

(1) محدد
(2) مديرون
(3) يحدد هدفًا
(4) قابل للقياس
(5) قابل للتحقيق
(6) ذو صلة
(7) مقيد زمنيًا

- What can help you achieve your goals in life?

- What qualities do you think a successful entrepreneur should have?

Reading Text (2)



Andy Robson, who is still a teenager, is the president of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice business in Maine. What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.

Andy adapted a 1920s recipe that he got from his grandmother, but he added honey to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The reason he decided to add honey[1] was because he is passionate[2] about helping bees and wants to help protect them. His company now donates 15% of its profits to bee conservation[3] groups who are fighting to save the honeybee[4].

(1)	عسل
(2)	عاطفي/متحمس
(3)	حفاظ/وقاية
(4)	نحلة العسل
(5)	منظمة خيرية
(6)	رائد/رائدة أعمال

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very well-known in Maine. And Green and Red, which has been sold in a range of shops across Maine for years, is now selling in some restaurants and is very popular.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own charity[5] with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young entrepreneur[6] – she sells her own honey locally. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about the importance of bees and why we need to look after them.

- How does Andy Robson help his community?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have a little more time, and so I'm going to do it! I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to classes once a week. I've set myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I practise the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams.

Salma

I want to be a newsreader when I'm older, so I know I have to get over my fear of speaking in public. The presentations I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very nervous. I've been talking in front of the mirror and recording myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week, I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet. Wish me luck!

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Cairo from a visitor's view

Cairo, 1) which is the capital city of Egypt, is a place which offers the visitor a wide range of experiences. Therefore, depending on 2) who/whom you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.

Last year was a time 3) when I decided to fit in as many difference experiences as possible and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend 4) whose family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My friend Fares, with 5) whom I had shared a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses Railway Station 6) where I had my first sight of the magnificent architecture the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next blog post, I will tell you about all the wonderful people 7) who/whom I will never forget and the places 8) which will forever live in my memory.



How can you set yourself good goals?

Listening Text (1)



Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are sensible and definitely[1] something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too general or you'll never reach them. So if your goal is to get fit by next month, it's too vague[2]. Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, 'I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.'

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, short-term goals along the way. Instead of saying 'I want to run ten kilometres', start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller targets, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final[3] goal. So, the 'A' in SMART means 'achievable', and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible.

Now let's look at the last two letters 'R' and T'. The 'R' stands for[4] relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about the goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, 'T' is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point saying, 'I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day,' because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a series[5] of SMART questions.

(1) بالتأكيد
(2) غامض/غير واضح
(3) نهائي
(4) يمثل/ينوب عن
(5) سلسلة

In your opinion, what is the most important quality of SMART goals?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Let's check our memory!

1. As the player was injured, he was .... from the team in the next match.
   a) broken b) included c) dropped d) contained
2. A team should learn from experience, both successes and ....
   a) achievements b) failures c) exercises d) trainings
3. World financial organisations say that much .... was made in Egypt's economy and it is getting better.
   a) suspicion b) search c) failure d) progress
4. The instructions he wrote were .... and difficult to follow.
   a) vague b) clear c) precise d) accurate
5. The colour white often .... for innocence and purity.
   a) sits b) fights c) stands d) represents

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

achievable قابل للتحقيق
- when a goal is not impossible

entrepreneur رائد عمل
- someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money

honeybee نحلة عسل
- a bee that makes honey

measurable قابل للقياس
- when you can test a goal and see if it has been completed correctly

profit ربح
- money that you gain by selling things or doing business

recipe وصفة طعام
- a set of instructions for cooking a particular type of food

relevant ذو صلة
- when a goal is related to the plans of an individual person

set one goal يحدد هدفًا واحدًا
- when there are not many objectives to meet

specific محدد
- when an objective is very detailed

time-bound مقيد زمنيًا
- when an objective has to be met by a specific date

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

work
عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)
- I started work when I was sixteen.
- Much of the heavy work on farms is now done by machines.

works
أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)
- The works of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

1 **job** وظيفة (اسم يعد)
- It's not his job to tell us what we can and can't do.
- I've applied for several jobs without success.

career مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)
- Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision.

profession
مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)
(the medical الطبية /legal القضاء /nursing/teaching profession)
- We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

recipe وصفة (مجموعة من الإرشادات لطبق معين)	Could you give me the recipe for that chocolate cake?
2 **prescription** روشتة (وصفة طبية)	Dr. Magdy gave me a prescription for some sleeping tablets.

goal	something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time هدف (مستقبلي هام قد يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا) The country can still achieve its goal of reducing poverty by a third.
3 **objective**	the specific thing that you are trying to achieve – used especially about things that have been officially discussed هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديده مسبقًا) We met to set the business objectives for the coming year.
target	a particular amount or total that you want to achieve هدف/مستهدف (كم أو مقدار محدد تتمنى تحقيقه) The company is on track to meet its target of increasing profits by 10%.

manage ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضميرا) أو (المصدر + to)	I don't think I can manage a long walk today. We managed to persuade him to come with us.
4 **succeed** ينجح/يتمكن من يتبعها noun أو (in + verb + ing)	Many women were able to succeed in politics. My brother succeeded in passing his final tests.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (بالإضافة إلى as well as) لأن الفاعل في الجملتين واحد.

- Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (saw) كما يمكن استخدام الفعل في صيغة المصدر أيضًا.

- .... and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams

- لاحظ استخدام المصدر بعد (help) ولاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (after) لعدم وجود فاعل بعدها.

- Yet a lot of successful people failed many times before they achieved success.

- لاحظ استخدام جملتين في زمن الماضي البسيط مع أداة الربط (before) لأن استخدام الماضي التام ليس ضروريا مع أداة الربط (before).

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The dishes at this restaurant are made according to a traditional Italian ....
a) prescription b) recipe c) direction d) observation

2 We .... to persuade our father to go to Aswan in January.
a) succeeded b) passed c) managed d) accepted

3 Doctors and nurses belong to the medical ....
a) work b) job c) career d) profession

4 The factory workers are working towards a/an .... of twenty cars a week.
a) target b) aim c) consumption d) goal

Check the answers at the end of the book



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 In order to succeed in your life, you must set .... and specific goals.
a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary

2 A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant

3 By the second year, the restaurant began to make a good ....
a) profit b) loss c) charity d) list

4 I'm not a great cook, but I can follow a .... of any dish quite well.
a) prescription b) study c) research d) recipe

5 The new nursery is looking for someone with .... experience in childcare.
a) charitable b) affecting c) relevant d) subsiding

6 Experts advise everyone to .... realistic goals that they can achieve.
a) cut b) set c) prevent d) destroy

7 The company began as a small family .... and now it is a big corporation.
a) business b) penalty c) income d) profit

8 Our neighbours are proud people who don't accept .... although they are poor.
a) entertainment b) charity c) ability d) loyalty

9 We usually .... our old clothes to a home for homeless children.
a) renew b) consume c) apply d) donate

10 Our teacher asserted that important names and dates in each chapter are ....
a) highlighted b) exported c) expelled d) expired

11 The shop is .... by the owner's son as his father is now an old man.
a) succeeded b) researched c) managed d) devised

12 My daughter has a/an .... interest in animal rights and conservation.
a) criminal b) passionate c) illegal d) awful

13 The young clerk was presented with an award by the bank .... for his hard work.
a) minister b) president c) member d) secretary

14 These curtains are available in a much wider colour .... in the new shop.
a) serial b) route c) range d) paint

15 I think that mankind is destroying the planet, all in the name of ....
a) destruction b) affection c) reflection d) progress

16 It would have been more .... to save the money than to spend it all on unnecessary things.

a) sensitive b) unreasonable c) sensible d) irresponsible

17 We need to clarify the .... of the present project before starting it.

a) causes b) losses c) goals d) diaries

18 Samy was disappointed to be .... from the school handball team.

a) hired b) dropped c) included d) appointed

19 The problems of pollution and global warming are closely ....

a) achievable b) specific c) related d) relevant

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20 Just five minutes' exercise a day could .... a difference to your health.

a) do b) make c) devise d) design

21 The lady was able to give a detailed description of her attacker. The synonym of the adjective "detailed" is ....

a) general b) private c) specific d) public

22 The students hope to .... their goal of raising 10,000 pounds for charity.

a) sit b) set c) arrive d) reach

23 Most young people feel nervous about speaking .... public.

a) at b) in c) of d) about

24 The UN warns that too many nations already .... chemical weapons.

a) possess b) possession c) possessed d) possessive

25 Squash is an individual game in which a lot of Egyptians are champions. The antonym of the word "individual" is ....

a) team b) single c) unique d) distinctive

26 The amount of protein you need is directly related .... your lifestyle.

a) in b) to c) at d) for

27 I listen to music for .... before I go to bed.

a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxed d) relaxes

28 I don't know how we're going to get .... this problem.

a) off b) in c) into d) over

29 The supermarket's daily profit is usually around five thousand pounds. The synonym of the word "profit" is ....

a) benefit b) loss c) exhibition d) charity

30 Experts are asking people to be sensible about the amount of water they use. The opposite of the adjective "sensible" is ....

a) logical b) rational c) sensitive d) unwise





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Relative clauses

جمل الوصل

- هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هى:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
- يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

1 اسم عاقل + **who/that** الذى/التى/الذين + **verb**

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهما فعل.

- Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.
- Mr Said, who ~~(He)~~ owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)
- The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- The footballer who/that ~~(He)~~ took drugs has been banned from playing again.

- فى الجملة الأولى Mr Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التى بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة extra information فالجملة الأصلية Mr Said is very rich تؤدى معنى تام بمفردها ولا نضع that هنا ونضع comma.

- فى الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذى منع من اللعب، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل defining وهنا يمكن استخدام that وعدم وضع comma.

2 اسم عاقل + **who/whom/that** الذى/التى/الذين + **subject**

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهم فاعل.

- The woman was happy. We gave her the money.
- The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
- The people were very friendly. We met ~~them~~ at the party.
- The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

بعدها فاعل فهى محل مفعول

- Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to school with him.
- Ahmed, who/whom I go to school with, is my neighbour.

- لاحظ عدم وضع that لأن الجملة بها comma لأن جملة الوصل non-defining ولاحظ أيضا أن حرف الجر with لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا whom.

- Ahmed, with whom I go to school, is my neighbour.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My mother, ... works as a teacher, is always helping me with my study.

a) whom b) that c) who d) whose

2 This is the boy about .... we have been talking.

a) what b) whom c) who d) that

3 The boy .... we met at the club is the cleverest one in our class.

a) whom b) which c) when d) whose

4 The police caught the boy .... started the fight.

a) whose b) he c) whom d) who

5 I thought I recognised the assistant .... sold me the suit.

a) whom b) that c) where d) whose

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book

3 اسم غير عاقل + which/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb/subject

- تحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.

إذا كانتا فى محل فاعل يأتى بعدهما فى الربط فعل وإذا كانتا فى محل مفعول فيأتى بعدهما فاعل.

- The food went bad. ~~It~~ was left out of the fridge.

The food which/that was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)

- The film was boring. We watched ~~it~~ yesterday.

The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهى فى محل مفعول)

فى الجمل السابقة وضعت that لأن جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma أيضًا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

- The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.
- The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

- جملة «ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال» معلومة إضافية فهى تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

- The car in which (~~that~~) I go to work needs replacing.

ملحوظة يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به مثل:

- The boy was very polite. We met him at Adly street yesterday.
- The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly street yesterday was very polite.
- The boy ~~who/whom/that~~ we met at Adly street yesterday was very polite.
- The stories were interesting. We read them at the school library.
- The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.
- The stories ~~which/that~~ we read at the school library were interesting.

4 اسم عاقل/غير عاقل + whose للملكية + Sentence (S +V+O)

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/her/its/their

- The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.
- The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely delighted.
- My cousin visits Italy a lot. His wife is Italian.
- My cousin, whose wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

فى الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل «زوجته إيطالية» معلومة إضافية non-defining .

ملحوظة من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع whose كما فى المثال التالى:

- Mr. Ali, in whose house we had our meal, is a generous man.

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The mistake .... Ola made was fortunately not very serious.

a) whose b) which c) what d) who

2 The man .... wife is seriously ill is very sad.

a) whose b) whom c) which d) that

3 The programme .... we missed is repeated this evening.

a) whose b) when c) what d) that

4 Mount Everest, ... Omar Samra climbed, is the highest mountain in the world.

a) what b) that c) whom d) which

5 Hossam, ... hobby is horse riding, has broken his leg.

a) who b) when c) whose d) that

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

5 مكان + **where = which** .... حرف جر + **Sentence**

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.
المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + place/here - there)

- The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday ~~there~~.
- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed ~~there~~ for 3 days.
- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

- تحل where محل ظروف المكان here - there أما which تحل محل it/they لغير العاقل ولذلك يمكن أن تأتى which وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضمير المكرر it أو they .

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.
- Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.
- The flat is very small. I live ~~in it~~.
- The flat where I live (which I live in) is very small. (حيث أسكن = التى اسكن فيها)
- The flat where I live (in which I live) is very small.

- يأتى قبل which حرف جر.

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + **when = that/which** ... حرف جر + **Sentence**

- تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى (عندما) المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- It's seven o'clock. I get up ~~at that time~~.
- It's seven o'clock when I get up.
- Ramadan is a holy month شهر مقدس. We fast ~~in it~~.
- Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.



Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are many reasons for the closure of the shop, most of .... have already been explained fully.

a) when b) which c) what d) where

أنواع جمل الوصل

١) النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود. ونستخدم في هذا النوع (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلاً من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

٢) النوع الثانى يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) فى هذا النوع.

- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

- My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.
- My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- فى المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا يعنى أن لدى أخت واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.
- فى المثال الثانى جملة الوصل تعطى معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعنى أننى لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق من التى زارتنى منهن.

Check Point 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Let's check our memory!

1. August is the month .... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.
   a) when b) which c) what d) where
2. The town .... I grew up was very small.
   a) which b) where c) that d) when
3. The house .... my grandparents lived is being demolished.
   a) which b) that c) where d) whose
4. 2001 is the year .... my brother graduated from university.
   a) where b) whose c) when d) which
5. My son reached the age .... he can have his independent bank account.
   a) at when b) on which c) in which d) at which



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The man .... killed his wife has gone to prison.
a) whose b) who c) whom d) which

2 My uncle, ... I love most, helps me with maths.
a) which b) that c) whose d) whom

3 I must tell you about the courageous man .... I met on my last holiday.
a) which b) what c) that d) whose

4 Heba, ... works as a nurse, comes from Alexandria.
a) who b) whose c) whom d) that

5 The book .... I'm reading now is very exciting.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) which

6 This is the factory .... my father used to work.
a) where b) that c) which d) when

7 Mother's Day is the time .... people buy their mothers presents.
a) that b) when c) which d) what

8 I'm not one of those people .... deceive others.
a) whom b) whose c) who d) they

9 We met the man .... car was advertised in the local newspaper.
a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom

10 The ice cream .... comes from Italy is delicious.
a) what b) whose c) who d) which

11 That's the beach............ I used to go swimming.
a) which b) where c) that d) when

12 The person .... the police were questioning has been released.
a) which b) where c) that d) whose

13 You wanted to tell me about the time .... you lost your keys. What happened?
a) that b) where c) which d) when

14 My mother .... is the best person in the world.
a) who I love b) , who I love, c) that I love d) , which I love,

15 My friend with .... I went out was generous.

a) whom b) that c) whose d) who

16 My sister made a big mistake, ... she should apologize for.

a) which b) whom c) that d) why

17 That's the hospital .... Ola went when she was ill.

a) whose b) where c) who d) which

18 Tom, ... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.

a) that b) whom c) whose d) who

19 The meeting at .... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.

a) where b) what c) that d) which

20 Cairo, ... we live, is a crowded city.

a) what b) which c) where d) that

21 This is the bus .... I have been waiting for.

a) who b) where c) what d) that

22 What is the name of the teacher .... used to teach us maths?

a) who b) whom c) who's d) that

23 18 is the age .... we can get licences and identity cards.

a) at when b) at which c) in which d) on which

24 Alexandria, ... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.

a) where b) when c) which d) that

25 El-Shamadan is a food company .... most famous product is chocolate.

a) who b) which c) whose d) where

26 Which sentence of the following shows that I have only one sister.

a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old.

b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France.

c) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France.

d) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France.

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) Look! That's the boy the teacher punished.

b) Look! That's the boy who the teacher punished.

c) Look! That's the boy punishing by the teacher.

d) Look! That's the boy punished by the teacher.

28 One of the following sentences is correctly structured

a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.

b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.

c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.

d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.

29 One of the following sentences is correctly structured

a) Do you remember the date when we have to submit the essay?

b) Do you remember the date which we have to submit the essay?

c) Do you remember the date where we have to submit the essay?

d) Do you remember the date what we have to submit the essay?

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections.

b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections.

c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.

d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections.

31 I saw a friend .... I hadn't seen for ages.

a) whom
b) whose
c) which
d) for whom

32 This is the house .... belongs to my uncle.

a) whose
b) which
c) what
d) where

33 She went to a school .... all subjects in English.

a) which they studied
b) that they studied
c) they studied
d) in which they studied

34 Hong Kong is a place .... a lot of tall buildings.

a) which has
b) where has
c) in which has
d) which there are

35 Tarek has four cats. Two of them are black. Tarek's two cats .... like p
outside.

a) , that are black,
b) whose colour is black
c) ,which are black,
d) , whose are black,

Test Yourself 20





Unit 12
Lessons 1 & 2

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Check your vocab, grammar, comprehension and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I visited Italy, I was amazed by the .... of Old Venice; the buildings are nearly surrounded by water canals.
a) fracture b) architecture c) structure d) lecture

2 Mobil Oil company is a .... corporation which has branches all over the world.
a) national b) local c) multinational d) multimedia

3 To finish the project, we need to perform as a team rather than a group of ....
a) individuals b) parts c) hikers d) fighters

4 A high proportion نسبة of people in the nursing .... are women.
a) work b) profession c) mission d) works

5 The doctor had to .... ten appointments in one morning as he won't work in the evening.
a) fit b) give c) make d) assign

6 I'll .... the lecture on video and we can all watch it later.
a) rehearse b) overload c) reload d) record

7 Her comments were not relevant .... the discussion we had.
a) in b) at c) to d) into

8 We spent an hour trying to buy the movie tickets, but eventually .... up and went home.
a) took b) gave c) looked d) got

9 The bomb .... went off this morning caused a lot of damage.
a) what b) whom c) which d) where

10 Look at that building .... windows are all broken.
a) that b) whose c) which d) where

11 Mr Emad is the person from .... I got the information.
a) whom b) that c) who d) whose

12 We met the woman .... husband went to school with my father.
a) that b) which c) where d) whose

13 In hospitals, they wake patients at 6 a.m., ... is much too early.
a) when b) which c) where d) what

14 We called a doctor .... works at a hospital in Aswan.
a) where b) whose c) who d) whom

15 The accountant .... for my father's company was arrested.

a) that works b) who work c) works d) whose works

16 The man .... son I shouted was extremely furious.

a) who's b) whose c) at whom d) at whose

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nine thousand years ago, people did not have money. They traded animals for things they wanted. They traded crops for what they wanted.

In China, in about 1200 B.C., people traded shells(1) for the things they wanted. Chinese people also traded metal tools(2) for the things they wanted. For example, they traded metal knives and shovels(3) for the things they wanted. Later in China, people made metal money. In about 100 B.C., the Chinese made money of animal skin. The first paper money was made from white coloured deer skin. It came from China about 900 years later.

In about 700 B.C., people made the first round metal coins(4). The coins were made of gold and silver. They looked very similar to the coins we use today. These coins came from Lydia. Lydia was located(5) where the country called Turkey is located today. After people made coins in Lydia, people in Rome, Iran, and Greece also began making coins. Coins were very durable(6) – they were strong and could last a long time without becoming damaged.

Wampum(7) are necklaces made from beads(8) and seashells. The beads had holes in them. People put beads on strings. American Indians used wampum for money in the 1500's. Money changes with time. No matter what it looks like, money is an idea (9). It is the thought that people can trade something they have for something they want. Money makes trading easier.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Before people had money, they traded ....

a) crops for what they wanted
b) animals for what they wanted
c) metal tools for what they wanted
d) All of the previous

2 The first paper money was made in ....

a) the year 1200 B.C. in China
b) the year 700 B.C. in Lydia
c) the year 800 A.D. in China
d) the 1500's in North America

3 The deer is ....

a) a kind of money
b) a kind of animal
c) made of shells
d) gold or silver



(1) أصداف (3) معاول (5) وضع في مكان معين (7) عقد من الصدف (9) فكرة

(2) أدوات (4) عملات معدنية (6) مستديم (8) عقد

4 If something is durable, it ....
   a) is strong and can last a long time   b) is made of metal
   c) can be used as money   d) None of the previous

5 The first paper money was made of ....
   a) cotton   b) carton   c) animal skin   d) banknote

6 The round, flat, metal pieces of money are called ....
   a) hard currency   b) currency   c) pounds   d) coins

7 The first coins were made of ....
   a) plastic   b) gold and silver   c) wood   d) iron

8 When people trade something, they have for something they want, this is called ....
   a) barter system   b) slave trade
   c) international trade   d) technology system

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Technology is a double-edged weapon. It is the ladder by which humanity upgrades and develops, but it may also be a means of destruction and ruin.

a) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح نو حدين فهى السلم الذى به تتطور البشرية وترتقى ولكنها يمكن أن تكون أيضا وسيلة للتدمير والخراب.

b) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح نو استخدامين فهى الطريق الذى يجعل البشرية تتقدم وترتقى وعلاوة على ذلك يمكن أن تكون أيضا من وسائل للتدمير والخراب.

c) تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحًا ذا حدين فهى الأساس الذى به تتطور البشرية وترتقى ولكنه يمكن أن يكون أيضا من وسائل التدمير والخراب.

d) أصبحت التكنولوجيا سلاحًا ذا وجهتين فهى السلم الذى به تتطور البشرية وترتقى إضافة إلى إنها يمكن أن تكون أيضا وسيلة للتعمير والإنشاء.

2 Scientific research proved that there are different kinds of food which have a great effect on preventing the elderly from having cancer, such as garlic and cabbage.

a) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن هناك أنواعا متنوعة من الأغذية لها تأثير كبير على منع كبار السن من الإصابة بالسرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.

b) أثبت البحث العلمى أن هناك أنواعا عديدة من الغذاء لها تأثير كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.

c) لقد تم إثبات أنه بالبحث العلمى هناك أنواع عديدة من الأطعمة لها اثر كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.

d) أثبت البحث العلمى أن هناك أنواعا مختلفة من الطعام ليس لها تأثير كبير على تجنب كبار السن من الوقاية من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.

3 The essence of good manners is consideration for other people. You cannot help admiring decent people who naturally think of others and help them with good will.

a) إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاعتبار بالآخرين فلا يمكننا المساعدة فى الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذين يراعون الآخرين ويساعدونهم بإرادة صادقة.

b) إن أساس الخلق الحميد هو الاهتمام بالآخرين فيمكنك المساعدة فى الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذين لا يهتمون بالآخرين ويساعدونهم بعزيمة صادقة.

c) إن أصل الخلق الحميد هو رعاية الآخرين فيمكننا التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذين يهتمون بالآخرين ولا يساعدونهم بعزيمة حميدة.

d) إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاهتمام بالآخرين فلا يمكنك التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذين يهتمون بالآخرين ويساعدونهم بحسن نية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 تعد كثير من المنظمات برامج خاصة لتدريب الشباب على أن يكونوا رواد أعمال صغارًا وأن يبدءوا مشروعاتهم الصغيرة وخاصة تلك التي ترتبط بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة والتي لا تحتاج إلى استثمارات كبيرة.

a) Many organisations count special programmes to projects, young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are joined with modern technology and don't need big investments.

b) Many organisations prepare special programmes to train young people to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need big investments.

c) Many organisations get ready for special programmes to practise young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need great investments.

d) Many organisations number special programmes to exercise young persons to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are contacted with modern technology and don't need big investments.

2 يشكل الوالدان شخصية أبنائهم منذ بداية طفولتهم، فهم يعلمونهم القيم والعادات وأيضا يشاركونهم الاهتمامات والألعاب ويطورون الروابط العاطفية معهم.

a) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They learn them the values and hobbies as well, take part with them interests and plays and develop the sensitive ties with them.

b) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habitats as well, participate them importance and games and develop the emotional contacts with them.

c) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, share them interests and games and develop the emotional ties with them.

d) Parents frame their sons and daughters' character from the start of their childhood. They learn them the values and habits as well, share them interests and plays and develop the sensible connections with them.

3 يؤكد الأطباء أن الحياة الصحية وممارسة التمرينات بانتظام من أهم وسائل الوقاية من الأمراض؛ لأن ذلك يدعم جهاز المناعة الذى يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض.

a) Doctors assert that a health life and doing exercises regularly are one of the most important ways which protects diseases. That's why this helps the immune system which can prevent diseases.

b) Doctors reassure that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways which avoids diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can fight illnesses.

c) Doctors assure that a health life and practising exercises regularly are one of the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's why this supports the immune system which can avoid illnesses.

d) Doctors assert that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can fight diseases.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The advantages and disadvantages of social media"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
boil (v) (ed)	يغلي
competition (n)	منافسة
corn cob (n)	كوز الذرة
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع
describe (v) (d)	يصف
device (n)	جهاز
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض/يعرض
dried (adj)	مجفف
entry (n)	دخول
expand (v) (ed)	يمد/يوسع
filter (n) (v) (ed)*	مرشح/يرشح
finalist (n)	متسابق نهائي
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
invention (n)	اختراع
inventor (n)	مخترع
life-changing (adj)	مغير للحياة
motivated (adj)	متحفز/مندفع
organiser (n)	منظم
outline (v) (d)	يوجز/يحدد الخطوط العريضة
overall (adj) (adv)	كلي/في المجمل
pedal-powered (adj)	يعمل ببدال (دراجة)
present (v) (ed)	يقدم
prize (n)	جائزة
purpose (n)	غرض
recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
sort out (v) (ed)	يفرز/يقوم بـ/يحل
variety (n)	تنوع
venue (n)	مكان إقامة حدث
vote (v) (d)	يصوت/يدلي بصوته

* Many people use water filters in their home for pure drinking water.

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
access (n)	مدخل/سبيل
accessible (adj)	سهل المنال
available (adj)	متاح/متوفر
benefit (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد
bleeding (n)	نزيف
blood (n)	دم
breakthrough (n)	إنجاز/اختراق (علمى)
cent (n)	سنت (عملة أمريكية)
context (n)	سياق
deaths (n)	وفيات
detailed (adj)	مفصل
ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
experiment (n)	تجربة
innovation (n)	إبداع
laboratory (n)	معمل
liquid (n)	سائل
major (adj)	رئيسى
nationality (n)	جنسية
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
pharmaceutical (adj)	دوائى
surgeon (n)	جراح

Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
accessories (n)	مستلزمات/إكسسوارات
amongst (prep)	بين
collection (n)	مجموعة
come across (v)	يصادف
community (n)	مجتمع
complex (adj)	معقد
crawl (v) (ed)	يزحف
dairy (n)	منتجات ألبان
effort (n)	مجهود
everyday (adj)	يومى
fast (n) (v) (ed)	صوم/يصوم
fruity (adj)	بطعم/برائحة الفاكهة
global (adj)	عالمى
joint (adj)	مشترك
matching (adj)	ملائم/متجانس
minor (adj)	فرعى/غير أساسى
neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحى
non-governmental (adj)	غير حكومى
option (n)	اختيار
outfit (n)	ملابس/زى
promote (v) (d)	يطور/يرقى
practical (adj)	عملى
produce (v) (d)	ينتج
range (n)	تنوع
reduce (v) (d)	يقلل/يخفض
secondary (adj)	ثانوى/غير أساسى
unique (adj)	متميز

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

by accident	بالصدفة	make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل
(be) a great success	ينجح كثيرا	make recommendations	يقدم ترشيحات
keep you fit	يحافظ على لياقتك	stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة
aim at	يهدف إلى	plenty of	وفرة/كثرة من
available to	متوفر لـ	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
crawl around	يزحف حول	solution to/for	حل لـ
experience with	خبرة بـ	successful in	ناجح في
match with	يتناسب مع	vote for	يصوت لصالح

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
attend	يحضر	attendance/attendee	حضور/حاضر	----------	----------
collect	يجمع	collection collector	مجموعة محصل/مجمع	collective	جماعي/جمعي
describe*	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
expand	يمد/يوسع	expansion	مد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
motivate	يحفز	motivation motivator	حافز/دافع محفز	motivated	متحفز/مندفع
promote	يطور/يُرقّي	promotion	تطور/ترقية	promotional	مطور/مُرقّي
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled recyclable	معاد تدويره قابل للتدوير
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	خفض/تقليل	reduced	مخفض
remove	يزيل	removal remover	إزالة مزيل	removable	قابل للإزالة
train	يدرب	training trainer trainee	تدريب مدرب متدرب	trained	متدرب

* - The man was described as tall and dark, and aged about 20.
- The catalogue gives a full description of each product.
- The writer gives a highly descriptive account of his/her journey through Africa

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
collection	مجموعة	selection	separation	فصل
complex	معقد	complicated	simple	بسيط
display	عرض/يعرض	demonstrate/present	hide/cover	يُخفى
filter	مرشح/يرشح	clean/refine	pollute	يلوث
global	عالمى	worldwide	local	محلى
outline	يوجز	summarise	expand	يمد
practical	عملى	useful/factual	theoretical	نظرى
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse	waste	يهدر
unique	متميز	extraordinary/uncommon	common	شائع
variety	تنوع	range/diversity	similarity	تشابه

Check Point 1

Let's check our memory!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts are studying various ways to .... garbage القمامة into fuel.
   a) rewind b) cycle c) rewrite d) recycle
2. The store sells TVs, VCRs, and other electronic ....
   a) devices b) mails c) books d) designers
3. The list of .... in most squash championships usually includes Egyptian players.
   a) finders b) bounders c) finalists d) journalists
4. The museum has a magnificent .... of ancient silver and leather objects.
   a) show b) display c) present d) shape
5. The communication industry has .... greatly over the last decade.
   a) expanded b) expired c) expelled d) exhaled



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

What do you think a pedal powered washing machine is like?

Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention. When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she recycled[1] some bicycle parts and built a pedal-powered[2] washing machine which saves time and keeps you fit! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have electricity.

Her next goal is to make a simple device[3] that can create electricity to use at home.

(1) يعيد تدوير
(2) مدار ببدالات
(3) جهاز

How did the girl help herself and her community as well?

Reading Text (2)

In your opinion, why is it important to filter drinking water?

Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't afford to buy expensive filters[1]. In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn[2], but they only sell part of the plant. The rest of the corn cob isn't used.

When she saw all the dried corn cobs on the side of the road, she wondered if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter removes[3] 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be boiled[4] to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the cheap device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

(1) مرشحات
(2) ذرة
(3) يزيل
(4) يغلى

How did Lalita recycle things to help her community?

Reading Text (3)

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Why are scientific competitions for young inventors important?

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's Competition[1] and recommend any changes that could improve how it worked.

The organisation

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition finalists[2] were invited to go to Toronto to present their inventions. The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements. They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition venue[3].

(1) مسابقة
(2) المتأهلون للنهائيات
(3) مكان حدث
(4) يعرض
(5) يحضر
(6) يمد/يوسع

The competition

The competition was very well organised and there was plenty of time for the finalists to display[4] and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to attend[5], so I was lucky to get lots of interest in my invention.

Suggested improvements

Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should be expanded[6] to include teenagers from other countries too.

Conclusion

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

According to the writer, what are the good points of the competition?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all inventors have been successful in finding good solutions to everyday problems. Some of the craziest ideas include mini umbrellas to attach to your shoes or even a sleepsuit[1] made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl[2] around the house! However, luckily enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community experiences.

Several teenagers from Aswan have been trained to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a range[3] of useful solutions. One of the tastiest options by Azhar is a fruity dessert for those who are breaking fast and don't want to eat dairy[4] products.

Eman has created a collection of clothes with a complete range of matching accessories[5] so those in her neighbourhood do not have to go to several different shops to get the perfect outfit. The unique[6] selling point of these ideas is that they are offering practical solutions to real problems, and also help to reduce pollution, as their customers do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which is a joint[7] effort between governmental and non-governmental organizations, has been a great success amongst both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those common problems we come across[8] every day.

(1) بدلة نوم
(2) يزحف
(3) تنوع
(4) منتجات ألبان
(5) إكسسوارات
(6) متميز
(7) مشترك
(8) يصادف

Listening Text (Workbook)



Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you detailed information about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of deaths[1] in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a solution to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena , whose parents are Egyptian, carried out her first experiment on plants. Since that moment she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her objective has always been to find answers to the everyday issues we all face. At the age of fifteen, and with the help of her father, who works in a lab, Deena gained access to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal liquid[2] drops.

Before she had made the breakthrough[3] the usual time it took for medicines to stop bleeding[4] in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her chemical invention can stop bleeding in as little as 10 seconds. This major[5] innovation[6] means the difference between a patient losing millilitres or litres of blood.

وفيات (1)
سائل (2)
إنجاز/اختراق علمى (3)
نزيف (4)
رئيسى (5)
إبداع (6)
سياقات (7)
جنود (8)
جراحون (9)
عمليات جراحية (10)
يضمن (11)
دوائى (12)
سهل المنال (13)

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's invention can save a huge number of lives in a wide range of contexts[7]. While this is clearly good news for soldiers[8] in the army, surgeons[9] in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid in the case of unexpected problems during operations[10] and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to ensure[11] her solution reaches as many people as possible at an affordable price, which is why she is in discussions with pharmaceutical[12] companies. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is widely accessible[13].

In a recent interview Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will inspire others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The information about the new disease should be .... to all people of the world.
   a) accessible b) avoidable c) stressful d) unreliable
2. The Ministry of Transport took steps to .... the safety of the train passengers.
   a) damage b) ensure c) test d) approach
3. The peace treaty was a historic .... in political history of the area.
   a) expansion b) access c) breakthrough d) argument
4. There is an extensive competition between .... companies to produce new effective medicines for diseases.
   a) estimation b) agricultural c) industrial d) pharmaceutical
5. We need to encourage .... in industry in order to be able to compete with foreign products.
   a) failure b) reduction c) innovation d) solution

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

crawl — يزحف
- to walk on your hands and knees

accessories — مستلزمات/إكسسوارات
- bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes

outfit — ملابس/زى
- different clothes which you can wear together

range — تنوع
- a synonym for 'variety'

come across — يصادف
- to discover something usually by accident

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

position موقع محدد
(the place where someone or something is, especially in relation to other objects and places)
- She showed me the position of the village on the map.

venue مكان (إقامة حدث)
(a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game etc. takes place.)
- The meeting will be held at a venue in the south of the city.

2

display عرض الأشياء للبيع أو المعاينة
(an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy)
- There was a special display of local photographs.

show عرض فنى
(a performance for the public, especially one that includes singing, dancing, or jokes.)
- Tonight's show is live from Cairo Stadium.

3

global عالمى
affecting or including the whole world
- Only the UN can tackle global problems like pollution of the atmosphere.

international دولى
relating to or involving more than one nation
- This is CNN, bringing you all the latest international news.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention

ـ لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) فى مثل هذه التعبيرات

- The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements.

ـ لاحظ استخدام (verb+ing) بعد حرف الجر (at)

- They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition venue.

ـ لاحظ استخدام صيغة المبنى للمجهول (to be sent) بعد الفعل (organised)

- .... a sleepsuit made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!

ـ هذه الجملة أصلها

.... a sleepsuit which is made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!

ـ لاختصار الجملة حذف ضمير الوصل (which) و صيغة (verb to be)

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Qatar is the .... for the next World Football Club 2022.

a) venue b) position c) road d) placement

2 The young actress is presenting a new television quiz .... these days.

a) display b) show c) presentation d) fair

3 The New Administrative Capital will surely have a/an .... airport.

a) internal b) global c) international d) outside

4 Radars are the devices which are used to determine the aircraft's ....

a) venue b) scenery c) placement d) position

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Father says that we can't .... to go anywhere this summer because of his financial مالى problems.
a) produce b) afford c) attend d) apply

2 All members of the team are requested to .... this important meeting.
a) afford b) reject c) refuse d) attend

3 Prices are lower when there is .... between the big stores.
a) compilation b) accommodation c) competition d) consolidation

4 The children were silenced by the sudden .... of the serious headmaster Mr Kamel.
a) entry b) exit c) display d) show

5 The robber was .... as tall and dark, and aged about 20.
a) prescribed b) described c) ascribed d) preserved

6 Our national team will play three of last year's beaten .... in the championship.
a) minors b) losers c) finalists d) locals

7 I'll make .... for you to be met at the airport by my driver.
a) agreement b) accommodation c) management d) arrangements

8 There are some plans to .... the local airport in Hurghada to make it fit for bigger flights.
a) describe b) reduce c) expand d) balance

9 The ozone layer .... harmful ultraviolet rays from the sun.
a) charges b) filters c) shares d) stores

10 The concert's still on Saturday, but its .... has been changed.
a) venue b) position c) scenery d) avenue

11 The manager briefly .... what we are trying to achieve this year.
a) lined b) inclined c) outlined d) underlined

12 There is wheelchair .... to most of the public buildings in the city.
a) access b) road c) rail d) stop

13 The young couple were very excited when their baby first .... across the floor.
a) dug b) flew c) cried d) crawled

14 This creative project shows the .... effort exerted by a group of good students.
a) single b) joint c) pointed d) individual

15 My uncle's shop sells bathroom .... such as mirrors and towel-rails.
a) accessories b) accesses c) tools d) jewellery

16 The book suggests some .... ways to save money. You should read it.
a) minor b) unimportant c) practical d) invaluable

17 Youssef Shaheen .... a new style of films that are repeated by his colleagues.
a) created b) consumed c) affected d) recognised

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 Experts say mild exercises such as jogging can .... you fit as much as training hard.
a) stay b) keep c) give d) do

19 Each person's fingerprints are unique. The word " unique" is the opposite of the word ....
a) common b) fascinating c) dull d) agreed

20 The small company was successful .... winning the contract for the new Mall.
a) by b) to c) for d) in

21 The art gallery has an impressive .... of modern art.
a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

22 The committee لجنة .... recommendations to the board on teachers' pay and conditions.
a) followed b) took c) did d) made

23 You can .... healthy by eating well and exercising regularly.
a) stay b) pass c) save d) rescue

24 The new water tank has a .... filter to clean the water in it.
a) remove b) removal c) removable d) removed

25 Few people understand the complex issues of environmental science. The adjective "complex" is similar in meaning to ....
a) simple b) complicated c) clear d) fragile

26 The aim of the meeting is to .... trade between the two countries.
a) promote b) promotion c) promotional d) promoted

27 Nour proudly displayed her certificate to her parents. The antonym of the word "display" is ....
a) show b) hide c) uncover d) invent

28 Mother always insists that the curtains and carpets in the room match .... the colours of the furniture.
a) for b) against c) with d) at

29 It is said that Fleming discovered penicillin almost by ....
a) event b) incident c) accident d) option

30 To clean the new office, I've sorted .... the papers that can be thrown away.
a) at b) of c) in d) out




Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Relative pronouns

١) تستخدم what كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهى تساوى the thing(s) that

فاعل/فعل **What** فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هى عليه

- I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
  I can't give him (Ahmed) what he needs.

- يمكن أن تكون what أول الكلام
- What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

٢) تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.
- My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

٣) تستخدم whose بدلًا من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:
- The girl ~~with~~ blue eyes is my sister.
  The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.
- The man is rich. ~~He has~~ a red car.
  The man whose car is red is rich.
- The car won the race. Its colour is red.
  The car whose colour is red won the race.

٤) لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's

who's + v-ing/noun = who is ... **who's + P.P.** = who has ...
- The boy who's running there is my cousin.
- The boy whose phone was stolen was furious.

٥) هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose (ومن الممكن أن تعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

stay, dream, work, play, like, dislike, end, hope, etc.
- The boy whose dream has come true is happy.
- I like ~~the~~ stories whose ends are happy.

٦) نستخدم that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all - any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)
- Is this all that you want me to do?
- There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
- This is the best book that I have ever read.

٧) يمكن استخدام why (for which) كضمير وصل كالآتى:
- I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided not to come.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

١) إذا كان في محل مفعول به.

- The meat was delicious. We ate it yesterday.
- The meat (which/that) we ate yesterday was delicious.
- The man is my neighbour. I meet him every day.
- The man (who/whom/that) I meet every day is my neighbour.

٢) إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف which + v-to be ونضع P.P:

- I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

٣) إذا كان بعده مبنى معلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing:

- The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

٤) إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v-to be ولا نضع شيئا:

- Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He told me about all .... happened to him in his childhood.

a) that b) what c) which d) where

2 Shakespeare, ... plays are well-known worldwide, is a great playwright.

a) who's b) that c) whose d) who

3 My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.

a) that b) who's c) whom d) whose

4 I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find .... I wanted.

a) which b) whose c) that d) what

5 There's a girl .... for you outside the gate to help her.

a) waiting b) waits c) waited d) is waiting



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Khalid, ... father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.
a) whose his b) whose c) who's d) who

2 Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, ... was a doctor by profession, invented Sherlock Holmes.
a) whose b) that c) whom d) who

3 Biology is a subject about .... I know very little.
a) when b) which c) that d) whom

4 My local tennis club, ... I learned to play tennis, was on television yesterday.
a) where b) that c) which d) when

5 I study four languages, ... is a lot for me to learn.
a) that b) who c) which d) what

6 The President met the man .... son came first in the competition.
a) whom b) whose c) that d) who's

7 Here's the barber's .... I have my hair cut.
a) that b) who c) whom d) where

8 In the summer holidays, ... most people take their holidays, seaside towns are usually very busy.
a) when b) which c) that d) whose

9 The teacher .... I had a tutorial دورة تعليمية last week explains things really clearly.
a) that b) whom c) to whom d) with whom

10 The company, ... is in Helwan, employs 1,000 employees.
a) which b) what c) where d) that

11 Judy, ... father works for a multi-national company, often travels abroad with her family.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) that

12 They treated the poor man rudely, ... made me angry.
a) which b) whom c) who d) in which

13 The furniture .... by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.
a) which made b) made c) is made d) which making

14 Ten people, ... three children, were injured in the plane crash.

a) included
b) which included
c) including
d) who were included

15 Heba lost the book .... her last month.

a) which I lent it
b) which lent
c) who lent
d) I lent

16 The reason .... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.

a) where
b) which
c) why
d) whose

17 I don't like people .... words are so rude.

a) whose
b) who
c) whom
d) that

18 The flat .... is overlooking the Nile.

a) which he bought it
b) he bought
c) he bought it
d) he buying

19 No one knew exactly .... happened to cause that terrible accident.

a) which
b) who
c) whom
d) what

20 A stamp is something .... on a letter if you want to send it.

a) you put
b) you put it
c) which you put it
d) putting

21 The Thames is a river .... through London.

a) ran
b) which runs
c) running
d) b and c

22 I didn't buy anything because I didn't see .... I wanted.

a) which
b) what
c) that
d) when

23 The man .... this luxurious house is very modest.

a) owned
b) owning
c) who is owned
d) owns

24 A calendar is something .... you the date.

a) it tells
b) tells
c) which it tells
d) which tells

25 My teacher is a person ....

a) who everybody likes him
b) everybody likes him
c) everybody likes
d) that everybody likes him

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.

a) This is the dress my mother has made for me.

b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.

c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.

d) This is the dress that my mother has made for me.

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) The village where I grew up is very small.
b) The village which I grew up is very small.
c) The village when I grew up is very small.
d) The village in where I grew up is very small.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct
a) The pyramids which we visited them yesterday are very old.
b) The pyramids, which we visited yesterday, are very old.
c) The pyramids to which are very old were visited yesterday.
d) The pyramids, that we visited yesterday are very old.

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct
a) I spoke to the assistant which deals with complaints.
b) I spoke to the assistant who deals with complaints.
c) I spoke to the assistant dealt with complaints.
d) I spoke to the assistant deals with complaints.

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.
a) Mr Ahmed in whose car we go to work is very generous.
b) Mr Ahmed whose car we go to work is very generous.
c) Mr Ahmed whose car is new is very generous.
d) Mr Ahmed who has a new car is very generous.

31 This is the man .... for a job.
a) that looking
b) who's looking
c) whose looking
d) who looking

32 Give me the plate .... the table.
a) which is on
b) where is on
c) on which is
d) ,which is on,

33 She's the teacher .... came to our school last week.
a) whom
b) whose
c) where
d) who

34 I work for a company ....
a) what exports clothes
b) exporting clothes
c) whose exports clothes
d) exports clothes

35 I bought a laptop ....
a) which it has got a Chinese-English dictionary built in
b) which has got a Chinese-English dictionary built in
c) got a Chinese-English dictionary built in
d) whose Chinese-English dictionary built in

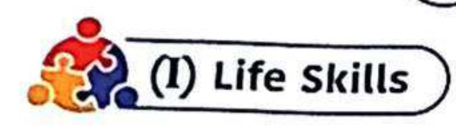


Lessons 3 & 4

للمزيد من الشرح والفيديوهات برجاء
الرجوع لملحق المصادر



C Communication Skills



(I) Life Skills

Decision-making

Decision making is the process of making choices by identifying a decision, gathering information, and assessing alternative resolutions.

Using a step-by-step decision-making process can help you make more deliberate, thoughtful decisions by organizing relevant information and defining alternatives. This approach increases the chances that you will choose the most satisfying alternative possible.

Step 1: Identify the decision

Step 2: Gather relevant information

Step 3: Identify the alternatives

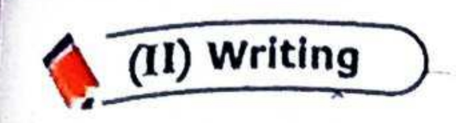
Step 4: Weigh the evidence

Step 5: Choose among alternatives

Step 6: Take action

Step 7: Review your decision & its consequences

Reference https://www.umassd.edu/fycm/decision-making/process/



(II) Writing

A report about an experience تقرير عن تجربة عملية

Imagine that you attended a three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur. The organisers have asked you to write a report on your experience.

Plan your report. Your report should:

- outline what the course involved and how it was organised.
- explain what was good for you.
- make recommendations for how the course could be improved.
- say if you would recommend the course or not.

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Introduction: The purpose of this report is to describe my experience of the three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur in Centre of Leader Preparation in Helwan.

The organisation: I live in Alexandria. I took part in a competition for young people who have ideas or inventions that could be used as a basis for a business. I was chosen for the course with some other young people. The organisers arranged our accommodation at a youth hostel near the centre and there were good lectures with practical ideas about the course.

Suggested improvements: Although it was great to be part of this course, one thing was missing. In my opinion, the course organisers should have invited some businessmen who can support and help the best young people to start a new business.

Conclusion: Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend taking part in such courses. In my view, this may lead to good results for the participants and our country.

Test Yourself (In 20 min)



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The students in our school are all highly .... to get the first prize in the competition.
a) moved b) motivated c) removed d) described

2 The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to .... their work.
a) prove b) improve c) buy d) display

3 The medical company uses animals in .... tests for some of its drugs
a) crime b) history c) laboratory d) print

4 The government has made a big .... to tackle the problem of poverty.
a) effort b) attack c) fight d) right

5 My little daughter always prefers yoghurt with a .... flavour especially strawberry.
a) leafy b) fruity c) spicy d) meaty

6 Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help .... damaged hair.
a) repair b) destroy c) defect d) display

7 All new staff will be .... in customer service skills.
a) requested b) applied c) trained d) offered

8 Some employees were given the .... of retiring early.
a) violence b) obligation c) necessity d) option

9 Show me .... you've got in your hand.
a) which b) what c) who's d) that

10 The meat .... yesterday was delicious.
a) eating b) which ate c) eaten d) which eaten

11 This is the hotel .... rooms have a view of the sea.
a) which b) where c) who's d) whose

12 That house, ... was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.
a) which b) whose c) where d) that

13 A racket is something .... to hit a ball when you play tennis or badminton.
a) which you use b) which you use it
c) you use it d) b and c

14 Arthur Conan Doyle, ... wrote the Sherlock Holmes stories, was born in Edinburgh.
a) which b) whom c) who d) that

15 My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
a) that b) who's c) whom d) whose

16 I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find .... I wanted.
a) which b) whose c) that d) what

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Yugoslavian nun[1], Mother Theresa first came to India to teach young girls from wealthy Indian families. However, in her travels around the country, she saw how the poor Indian people lived. There were homeless[2] people living in the streets. Some were too poor to feed[3] themselves and died of starvation[4]. No one in the country who could help them did anything for these poor people. She felt determined[5] to do something to help.

She realized that this was the job that God wanted her to do, so she left her highly paid job to help the poor in India. At first, it was hard for her. She did not have much support[6]. Whatever little food and money she had, she gave them to those who came to her for help. No one was ever turned away from her doorstep[7].

She went around the city looking for the homeless and starving and took them off the streets. When the people in the area saw how hard she was trying to help their own people, they felt ashamed[8]. They wanted to follow her example. They donated food and money to help the poor. With more support from the community[9], she set up many homes all over India. Soon, she was known all over the world as the savior[10] of the poor.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Where was Mother Theresa from?
a) Europe b) Africa c) Asia d) South America

2 It seemed that the people in India had .... hearts before Theresa's arrival.
a) kind b) gentle c) caring d) cruel

3 "No one was ever turned away from her doorstep" means ....
a) No one came to her house for help.
b) She didn't let anyone leave without help.
c) She didn't help all those who came for help.
d) No one came to support her.

(1) راهبة (2) متشردون (3) يطعم (4) مجاعة (5) مصمم (6) يعاون/يساند (7) درجة أمام الباب الخارجي (8) خجلان (9) مجموعة تعيش معًا (10) المنقذ

4 The phrase "have nothing to eat" is the synonym of "..............".

a) ashamed
b) support
c) starving
d) homeless

5 Mother Theresa's original job was ....

a) helping homeless people living in the streets
b) fighting starvations and poverty
c) teaching young girls from wealthy Indian families
d) donating food and money to help the poor

6 Mother Theresa determined to help the poor because ....

a) she had a lot of money
b) she realised that this was the job God wanted her to do
c) they were in India
d) they loved her

7 The work of helping the poor didn't start off well because ....

a) there were no more poor people
b) she travelled and left them
c) most of them became rich
d) she didn't have much support

8 Mother Theresa was known ....

a) only in India
b) all over the world
c) in Europe
d) all over Asia

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Encouraging young inventors can provide us with suitable technological solutions for our problems. These inventors can be the hope for a better society in Egypt.

a) يمكننا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة مع شكوكنا وقد لا يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع فى مصر.

b) يمكن أن يزودنا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المتطابقة لشكوانا وقد يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل فى مصر.

c) تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يستطيع أن يوفر الحلول التكنولوجية الأنسب لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعون الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع فى مصر.

d) إن تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يمكن أن يزودنا بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل فى مصر.

2 Egyptian investors and businessmen have a great responsibility to finance new inventions. This can lead to great progress for Egypt and reasonable economic benefits for them

a) يمتلك المستثمرون ورجال العمل المصريين مسئوليات كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تطور كبير لمصر وفوائد مالية معقولة لهم.

b) لدى المستثمرين ورجال الأعمال المصريين مسئولية كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم كبير لمصر وفوائد اقتصادية معقولة لهم.

c) المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريين يمتلكون مسئولية كبيرة تجاه الاستكشافات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى نمو كبير لمصر منافع مالية معقولة لهم.

d) المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريين يمتلكون مسئولية كبيرة تجاه تمويل المخترعين الجدد وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم عظيم لمصر منافع اقتصادية معقولة لهم.

3 Some experts believe that the coming decades will witness a shortage of food as a result of overpopulation. Genetic engineering is one of the solutions to this problem.

a) يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا فى الغذاء نتيجة للزيادة السكانية وتعتبر الهندسة الوراثية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

b) يؤمن بعض الخبراء بأن العقود القادمة ستشهد زيادة في الغذاء نتيجة لعدد السكان وتعد الهندسة العمرانية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

c) قد يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا فى الأغذية نتيجة للسكان والهندسة الوراثية من أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

d) يظن بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد انتقاصا فى الغذاء بسبب الزيادة السكانية وتعد الهندسة المعمارية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1 يفوز طلاب مدارس العلوم والرياضيات والتكنولوجية (ستيم) في مصر بجوائز في المسابقات العلمية التى يشاركون بها مما يؤكد الموهبة المصرية فى كل المجالات.

a) Students of science, technology, engineering and math schools (STEM) in Egypt earn awards in scientific championships in which they share, which asserts Egyptian talent in all fields.

b) Students of science, technology, engineering and math schools (STEM) in Egypt gain medals in scientific competitions for which they share, which reassure Egyptian talent in all fields.

c) Students of science, technology, engineering and math schools (STEM) in Egypt win prizes in scientific competitions in which they participate, which confirms Egyptian talent in all fields.

d) Students of science, technology, engineering and math schools (STEM) in Egypt win rewards in scientific championships at which they participate, which makes sure of Egyptian talent in all fields.

2 نبهت الأزمات المختلفة التى مر بها العالم إلى أهمية الاكتفاء الذاتى وخاصة فى مجال الغذاء؛ لأنها أدت إلى تعطل النقل وزيادة الأسعار بشكل كبير.

a) The various disasters the world has experienced, have alarmed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's as it led to transport disruptions and a significant decrease in prices.

b) The various crises the world has experienced, have alerted out the importance of self-sufficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and greatly increased prices.

c) The various crises the world has passed through, have pointed out the importance of self-sufficiency, particularly on the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and a significant rise in prices.

d) The various disasters the world has experimented, have pointed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transportation disruptions and a decrease in prices.

3 كان لاتخاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية فى مواقع العمل فى المشـروعات القومية الكبرى أثر فى اسـتمرار العمل فيها مما ساعد قطاعا كبيرا من الشعب المصرى.

a) Making appropriate measures in setting up sites of the great international projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.

b) Having precautionary measurements in work sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation.

c) Taking precautionary measures in building sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.

d) Doing necessary measurements in work sites of the great local projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we encourage young inventors to get better?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.
....	....	....	....	....



King Lear
Act v, Scenes iii

Vocabulary

crown	تاج	rat	فأر
equally	بصورة متعادلة/بالتساوى	resign	يستقيل
guide	مرشد	soldier	جندى
laws	قوانين	stretcher	نقالة
liar	كاذب	title	لقب
murderer	قاتل	treason	خيانة
offstage	خارج المسرح	trick	يخدع

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

come full circle	يعود لنقطة البداية	tear up	يدمر/يمزق
heavy heart	حزين	work for	يعمل لصالح



King Lear Exercises
(Act v, Scenes iii)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My new classmate is the biggest .... I've ever known. He never tells the truth.
 a) liar b) beggar
 c) trigger d) truthful

2 My friend was .... into buying that bad car.
 a) traced b) tricked
 c) honoured d) duplicated

3 Mona tore .... her fiancé's letter and threw it away.
 a) on b) in
 c) up d) for

4 It is the job of the police to make sure people obey the ....
 a) signal b) notice
 c) sign d) law

5 The paramedics المسعفون carried the injured man out to the ambulance on a ....
 a) distractor b) scratcher
 c) stretcher d) reflector

6 The identity of the .... who killed the old lady has not yet been revealed.
 a) judge b) murderer
 c) lawyer d) coach

7 Mr Fouad .... from his job as a manager because of the present problems.
 a) resigned b) applied
 c) developed d) revolved

8 The young man was charged اُتهم with .... and sentenced to death.
 a) treasury b) treason
 c) loyalty d) pleasure

9 A .... is a circle made of gold and decorated with jewels, worn by kings and queens on their heads.
 a) reward b) prize
 c) crown d) key

10 Sooner or later, fashion .... full circle and sometimes repeats itself.
 a) designs b) revises
 c) takes d) comes



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 15

1 The businessman is a .... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.
a) secret b) passionate c) specific d) desperate

2 There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife .... in Egypt.
a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation

3 My friend won the first prize in the art .... at the university.
a) compilation b) accommodation c) consolidation d) competition

4 The young man is wanted by the police as a/an .... to murder.
a) accessory b) device c) equipment d) outfit

5 Students must be taught to do their best to .... their goals in life.
a) do b) achieve c) set d) arrive

6 Much of the crime in this area is related to drug abuse. The synonym of the word "related" is ....
a) separate b) defective c) associated d) delayed

7 They have three sons, ... are living abroad.
a) who b) that c) which d) whose

8 All the students .... to organise a picnic were discouraged when they saw the dark clouds.
a) wish b) wishing c) whished d) are wished

9 This is the restaurant .... I usually go for my meals.
a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which

10 The boys .... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.
a) who b) who's c) which d) whose

11 Confusing topics .... are well-expressed can be understood.
a) who b) that c) where d) when

12 The questions .... in the exam were specially chosen.
a) asking b) which asked c) asked d) that ask

13 Shakespeare, most of .... plays were adapted to cinema, is still read by many.
a) whose b) his c) whom d) who

14 We stayed in a hotel ....
a) where every room had a broadband connection.
b) which every room had a broadband connection.
c) that every room had a broadband connection.
d) every room had a broadband connection.

15 The bike .... gears are excellent is expensive.
a) what b) which c) that d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal[1] holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty[2] of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable[3] chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating[4] and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety[5] of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious[6] foreign city that comes to my mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 A sportsman is fond of ....
- a) playing games
- b) reading books
- c) eating much food
- d) sleeping early

17 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ....
- a) coming to new states
- b) coming to new harbours
- c) meeting people
- d) going shopping

18 The underlined word (one) refers to ....
- a) the lazy man
- b) the passenger
- c) the sportsman
- d) anyone

19 The best title to this text is ....
- a) Sportsmen
- b) Lazy people
- c) A passenger ship
- d) An ideal holiday

20 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage: ....
- a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment
- b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would sui the sportsman and his lazy friend
- c) The writer seems to like the sea
- d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy



(3) مريح (4) يعرق/ينضح (5) تنوع/اختلاف (6) الغامض/المبهم

21 The writer seems to be .... concerning trying foods.
a) adventurous b) timid c) selfish d) worried

22 The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is ....
a) unhappy b) disappointed c) contented d) unconvinced

23 The writer likes to be .... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.
a) in company b) alone c) lonely d) single

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:** (2)

- Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries around the world. Yet, terrorists are still getting support from various organisations to achieve their illegal goals in many countries.

a) معارضة الإرهاب تمت من قبل العديد من الدول فى العالم. ومع ذلك، يزال الإرهابيون لا يحصلون على المساندة من مختلف المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

b) لـم تحاول العديد من الـدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب. ولذلك يـزال الإرهابيون لا يحصلون على الدعم من المنظمات المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم المشروعة فى العديد من البلدان.

c) لقـد جربت العديد من الدول حـول العالم ان تتوقف عن معارضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على المساندة من المنظمات المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

d) لقد حاولت العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك ، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على الدعم من مختلف المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:** (2)

- تشـتهر مصر بكثير من الأماكن الرائعة التى تجذب السـائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم. لو أحسـنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التى يمكن أن نحصل عليها من السائحين القادمين لمصر.

a) Egypt fames for many amazing views that bring tourists from all over the world. If we use them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can take from tourists going to Egypt.

b) Egypt is knowing for many amazing places that make tourists visit from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can give from tourists visiting to Egypt.

c) Egypt is famous for many amazing places that attract tourists from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can get from tourists coming to Egypt.

a) Egypt is famous for many amazing areas that attack tourists from all over the world. If we make good use of them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can get from tourists watching Egypt.

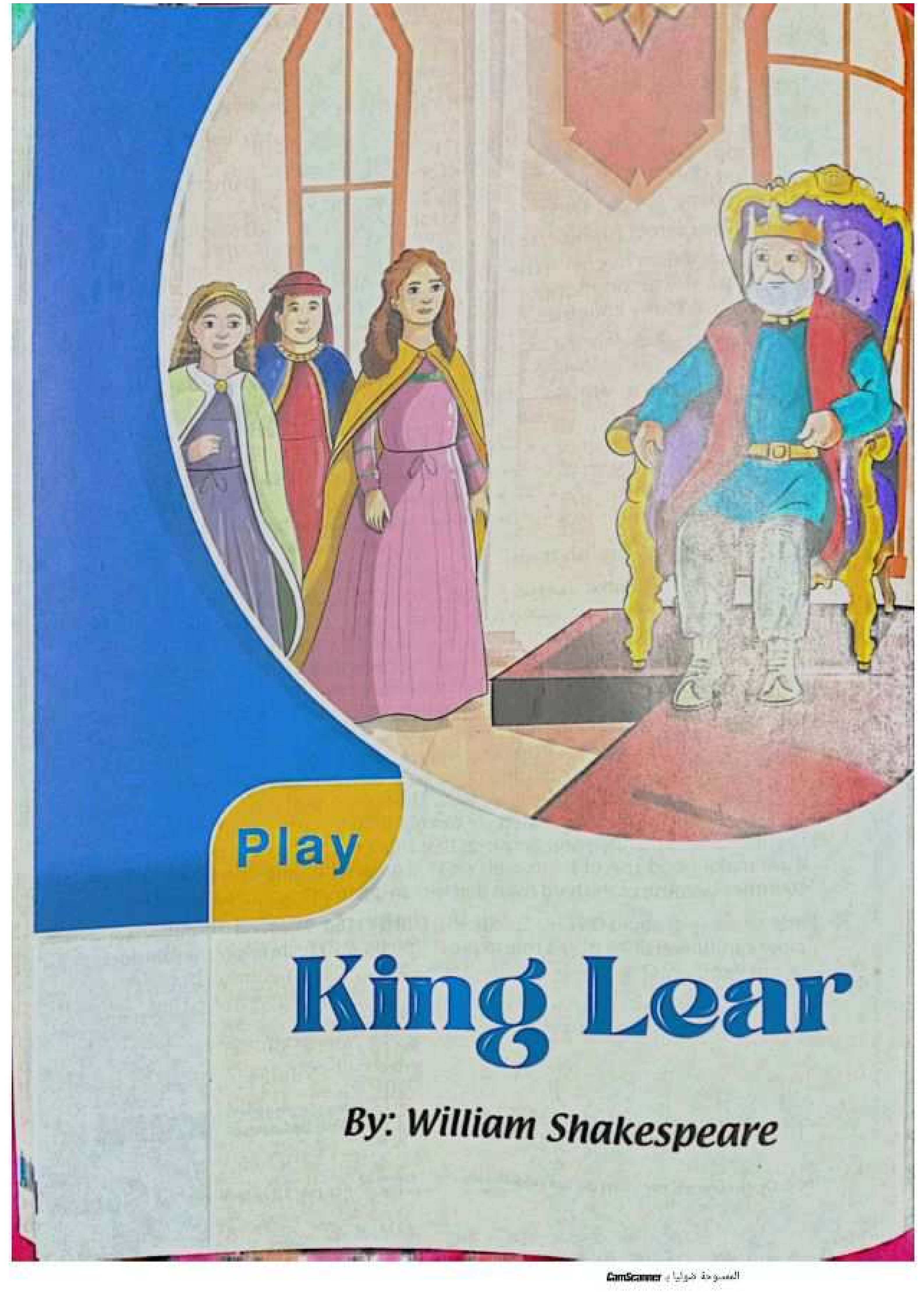
26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**
"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!


Play
King Lear
By: William Shakespeare



Act III, Scenes v-vii

Scene Text



[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]

CORNWALL: Listen, Edmund. I'll have my revenge[1] before I leave Gloucester's house.

EDMUND: I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It proves[2] that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

CORNWALL: We'll go and see Regan.

EDMUND: If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

CORNWALL: If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

EDMUND: *[To himself.]* If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

[To Cornwall.] I'll continue to show you my loyalty[3], although it hurts me to do this to my father.

CORNWALL: I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

[They exit.]



(1) انتقام/ثأر
(2) يثبت
(3) إخلاص/وفاء

Act III, Scene vi

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: My friend, where's the King?

KENT: He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

GLOUCESTER: Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of[1] him. There's a carriage[2] waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

KENT: *[To Lear.]* You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure[3] your madness[4].

[To the Fool.] Come, help me to carry the King.

GLOUCESTER: Hurry up! We must leave now.

[They all exit except for Edgar.]

EDGAR: The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!

[He exits.]

Act III, Scene vii

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]

CORNWALL: Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.

[To the Servants.] Find the traitor[5], Gloucester.

REGAN: Arrest him now!

[Some of the Servants exit.]

CORNWALL: Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

[Oswald enters.] Where's the King?

OSWALD: The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

CORNWALL: Get horses for Regan. Goodbye Edmund.

[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.

[The other Servants exit.]



(1) يتخلص من
(2) عربة تجرها الخيول
(3) يعالج
(4) جنون/حماقة
(5) خائن

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority[1], but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

REGAN: It's him.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel[2] in front of me.

GLOUCESTER: What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel, I said!

[The Servants make him kneel.]

REGAN: You cruel man. You've deceived[3] your son Edmund.

GLOUCESTER: You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

REGAN: You are a traitor!

GLOUCESTER: Cruel lady, what are you saying?

CORNWALL: What letters have you recently received from France?

REGAN: Give us your answer. We know the truth.

CORNWALL: And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

REGAN: Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

GLOUCESTER: Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening. It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an enemy[4].

CORNWALL: That's clever.

REGAN: And untrue.

CORNWALL: Where have you sent the King?

GLOUCESTER: To Dover.

REGAN: Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him …

CORNWALL: *[He interrupts[5] Regan.]* Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

GLOUCESTER: Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

CORNWALL: You will never see that! [Picks up a sword.] Come! Fight me!

[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, help me! My eyes!



(1) سلطة/نفوذ
(2) يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه
(3) خدع/ضلل
(4) عدو
(5) يقاطع

SERVANT 1: Stop, my lord! Stop now.

CORNWALL: Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

SERVANT 1: Very well, come on.

[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]

REGAN: *[To a soldier.]* Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it![1]

[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]

SERVANT 1: Oh, I'm going to die! *[He dies.]*

GLOUCESTER: Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must take revenge for[2] this terrible thing.

REGAN: Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed[3] us. He will not help you.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmund!

REGAN: Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]

[To Cornwall.] What's the matter, my lord?

CORNWALL: I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]



(1) لن أسمح به/لا أتحمل (2) ينتقم لـ (3) خان/خدع



Act III, Scenes v-vii Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If one of your friends helps your enemies, you can call this person .... (SB)
a) cruel b) a servant c) mad d) a traitor

2 One of my friends was very ill, but this medicine helped to .... him. (SB)
a) get rid of b) rest c) cure d) heal

3 If you .... rid of someone, you kill this person. (SB)
a) get b) make c) take d) give

4 When the police found the stolen phone at the man's home, it .... that he was the thief. (SB)
a) discovered b) arrested c) deceived d) proved

5 The head of the police asked the government for the .... to change the law. (SB)
a) authority b) punishment c) powerful d) revenge

6 If someone doesn't like you and wants to hurt you, this person is your .... (SB)
a) spy b) duke c) enemy d) relative

7 Instead of .... someone while they're talking, you should stay quiet. (SB)
a) kneeling b) interrupting c) punishing d) deceiving

8 Your behaviour is totally unacceptable and I won't .... for it! (SB)
a) stand b) do c) kneel d) wait

9 They tried to .... us by saying they had lots of money when they didn't. (SB)
a) spy on b) deceive
c) punish d) take revenge for

10 An old-fashioned vehicle which is usually pulled by horses is called a .... (SB)
a) carriage b) boat c) train d) lorry

11 He is disloyal. He .... us. (SB)
a) obeyed b) betrayed c) helped d) denial

12 The Egyptian tennis champion Mayar Sherif showed .... to the Egyptian flag. (SB)
a) necessity b) dishonesty c) loyalty d) certainty

13 In the past, people did not understand that .... is an illness. (WB)
a) cheating b) honesty c) tolerance d) madness

14 The parents were .... on the floor, so they could play with the baby. (WB)
a) kneeling b) hoping c) training d) carving



Act IV, Scenes i-iii

Scene Text



[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

[Gloucester enters led by an Old Man.]

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes bleeding?

GLOUCESTER: Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

OLD MAN: But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

GLOUCESTER: I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see. Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!

OLD MAN: Who's there?

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

OLD MAN: Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

GLOUCESTER: Is it a beggar in front of us?

OLD MAN: Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

GLOUCESTER: I saw a beggar[1] in last night's storm.

He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the truth[2].



(1) متسول/شحاذ

(2) الحقيقة

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has fallen apart[1]. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar.

[To Gloucester, his father.] Hello, sir!

GLOUCESTER: Is that the mad beggar?

OLD MAN: Yes, it is, my lord.

GLOUCESTER: If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

OLD MAN: He can't help you, sir. He's mad!

GLOUCESTER: Please help him.

OLD MAN: OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

[He exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Come here, my friend.

EDGAR: Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding[2].

GLOUCESTER: Do you know the way to Dover?

EDGAR: Yes, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff[3] in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

EDGAR: Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene ii

[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]

GONERIL: Welcome, Edmund.

[Oswald enters.]

Where's my husband, Oswald? I haven't seen him.

OSWALD: Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."

GONERIL: I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.



(1) يتداعى
(2) ينزف
(3) منحدر صخري

[To Edmund.] You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

[Edmund exits.]

GONERIL: [To herself.] Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power[1]. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

OSWALD: Madam, here comes your husband.

[The Duke of Albany enters.]

ALBANY: Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil![2]

GONERIL: Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

ALBANY: What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this? He has had so much from your father!

GONERIL: Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?

ALBANY: Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

[A messenger enters.]

ALBANY: What is the news?

MESSENGER: Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

ALBANY: Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

MESSENGER: Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

GONERIL: [To herself.] In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can rule[3] over all the kingdom[4]. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's. I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

[Goneril exits.]

ALBANY: Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

MESSENGER: He was travelling here with my lady.

ALBANY: But he's not here.

MESSENGER: No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

ALBANY: Does he know what has happened?

MESSENGER: Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish[5] Gloucester.



(1) راغب في السلطة
(2) شر/شرير
(3) يحكم
(4) مملكة
(5) يعاقب

ALBANY: *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.
[To the Messenger.] Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.
[They exit together.]

Act IV, Scene III

[The French camp[1] near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]

KENT: Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

GENTLEMAN: He had something important to do there.

KENT: Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.

KENT: Did she say anything?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm![2] In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

KENT: Have you spoken to her since then?

GENTLEMAN: No.

KENT: Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

GENTLEMAN: Why, sir?

KENT: Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

GENTLEMAN: The poor man!

KENT: Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies[3]?

GENTLEMAN: They are nearby.

KENT: Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

[They exit.]



(1) مخيم
(2) عاصفة
(3) جيوش



Act IV, Scenes i-iii Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If someone is cruel to you, you might want to take .... on him or her. (SB)
a) revenge b) rule c) a look d) over

2 A king or queen has the power to .... over a country. (SB)
a) pretend b) rule c) deceive d) hold

3 Someone who really wants to lead a country is .... for power. (SB)
a) hungry b) thirsty c) angry d) pleased

4 If someone is finding life very difficult because something bad has happened, you might say that he/she has .... apart. (SB)
a) spoken b) broken c) fallen d) taken

5 Ahmed's grandfather was very sad when his wife died. We hope he doesn't fall .... (WB)
a) at b) in c) off d) apart

6 In many books, there is a bad person who is hungry .... power, and wants to control others. (WB)
a) in b) for c) at d) about

7 There is an army .... outside my town, near the mountains. (WB)
a) camp b) position c) scene d) view

8 I cut my finger this morning, but luckily, it did not .... very much. (WB)
a) treat b) heal c) bleed d) plea

9 How long has Queen Elizabeth .... the UK? (WB)
a) pleaded b) intended c) invaded d) ruled

10 Be careful when you walk near the ...., it is very high. (WB)
a) pole b) cliff c) road d) pool

11 We are going to ..... revenge on them for the problems they have caused us. (WB)
a) say b) make c) take d) give

12 A/An .... is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
a) officer b) beggar c) messenger d) cleaner

13 The witness was reminded to speak the .... when questioned in court.
a) fact b) insult c) lie d) truth

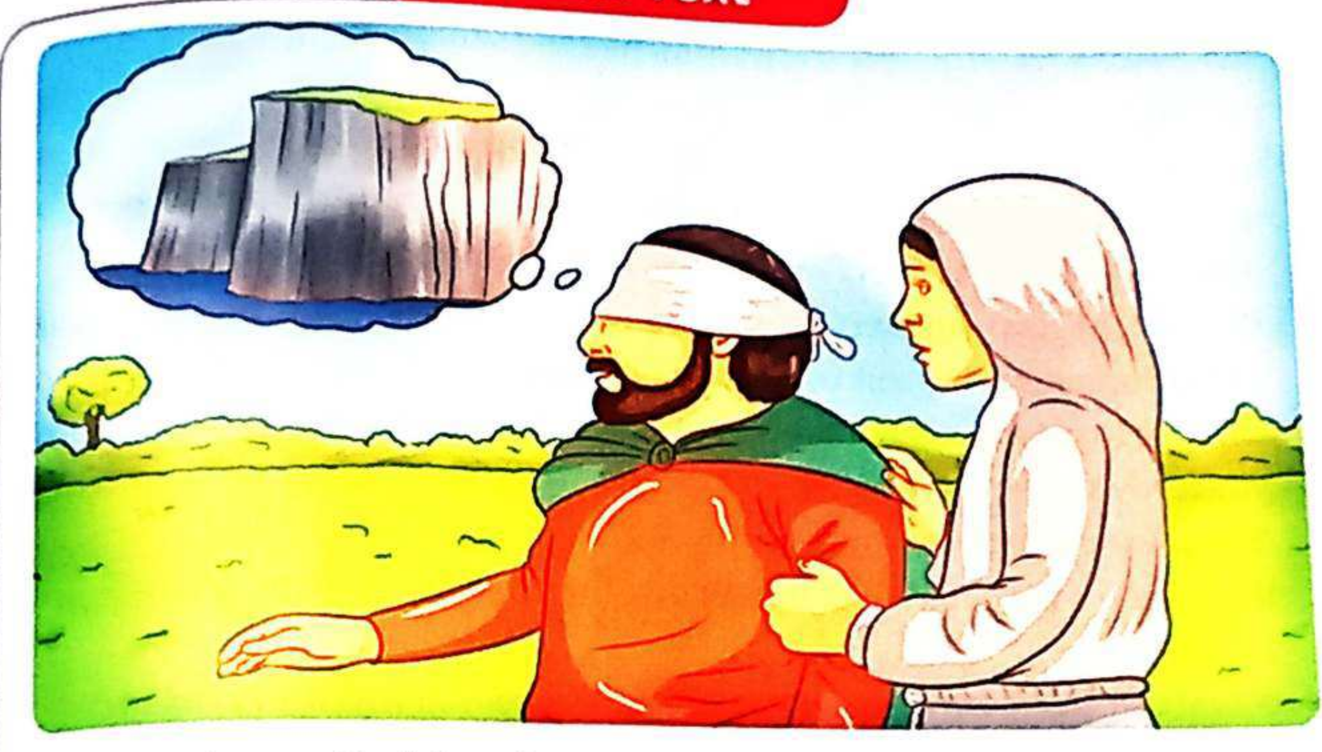
14 A deep cut on the accident victim's wrist was .... seriously.
a) bleeding b) curing c) treating d) breeding





Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

Scene Text



[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]

CORDELIA: I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

[An Officer exits.]

Can anyone cure[1] him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

DOCTOR: There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

CORDELIA: Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

[A Messenger[2] enters.]

MESSENGER: I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

CORDELIA: Our French army is ready for war[3]. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to England to take power[4] for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty[5] to my father.

[They exit.]



(1) علاج/يعالج
(2) مبعوث/رسول
(3) حرب
(4) يستولي على السلطة
(5) واجب

Act IV, Scene v

[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]

REGAN: Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

OSWALD: I don't know, madam.

REGAN: *[To herself.]* It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind[1]. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

OSWALD: I must give this letter to Edmund.

REGAN: Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

OSWALD: I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

REGAN: Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

OSWALD: Madam, you can't ...

REGAN: Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund. When you see him, give him this.

[She gives him a letter.]

If you see the blind traitor, remember this: There will be a reward[2] for the man who kills him.

OSWALD: If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow.

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene vi

[In the countryside near Dover. Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]

GLOUCESTER: When will I get to the top of this hill?

EDGAR: You're climbing up the hill now.

GLOUCESTER: But I'm sure the ground is flat[3] here.

EDGAR: No, it's very steep[4]. Listen, can you hear the sea?

GLOUCESTER: No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

EDGAR: You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

GLOUCESTER: I think that you speak like an important person.



(1) أعمى
(2) مكافأة
(3) مسطح/منبسط
(4) شديد الانحدار

EDGAR: Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice[1] from up here; I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold[2], I'm scared that I might fall.

GLOUCESTER: Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

EDGAR: Give me your hand. You are now very close to the edge[3] of the cliff.

[They are on flat ground.]

GLOUCESTER: Let go of my hand[4]. Here's a purse[5] for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel[6]. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

EDGAR: Goodbye, sir. [To himself.] I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.

GLOUCESTER: I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive[7]. So, goodbye, my friend.

[He falls forward onto the ground.]

EDGAR: Goodbye, sir.

[To himself.] If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.

[To Gloucester in a different voice.] Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

[To himself.] He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

GLOUCESTER: Go away and let me die.

EDGAR: You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

GLOUCESTER: But have I fallen or not?

EDGAR: Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

GLOUCESTER: Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

EDGAR: Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

GLOUCESTER: I can.

EDGAR: This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

GLOUCESTER: He was a poor beggar.



(1) فئران
(2) دمي يبرد خوفا
(3) حافة
(4) أفلتني/اتركني
(5) حافظة نقود
(6) جوهرة ثمينة
(7) على قيد الحياة



Act IV, Scenes iv-vi Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If something is ...., it is either worth a lot of money or it is very important to someone. (SB)
a) terrible b) steep c) valuable d) cheap

2 When his mother died, the prince was very sad but had to .... power and run the country. (SB)
a) make b) take c) have d) do

3 If you are at the furthest point of something, you are on the .... (SB)
a) left b) right c) sand d) edge

4 Areas that don't have any hills are .... (SB)
a) flat b) steep c) high d) cliffs

5 When a sight or sound frightens you, your blood runs ....
a) high b) up c) away d) cold

6 A .... is a shiny stone that is often used in necklaces or bracelets. (SB)
a) cure b) cliff c) jewel d) rule

7 When you are trying to make someone well again when they have an illness, you are trying to find .... (SB)
a) a purse b) a cure c) a sound d) a voice

8 When a hill is rising or falling at a sharp angle, it's .... (SB)
a) strange b) edge c) flat d) steep

9 We should walk around the .... of the field so we do not damage the crops. (WB)
a) edge b) top c) screen d) rope

10 This part of the country is very .... There are no hills or mountains. (WB)
a) steep b) flat c) desert d) busy

11 When my sister got married, our grandmother gave her a beautiful jewel. She says it is very .... (WB)
a) useless b) valueless c) valuable d) inexpensive

12 It will be difficult to climb that mountain because it is very .... (WB)
a) crippled b) smooth c) flat d) steep

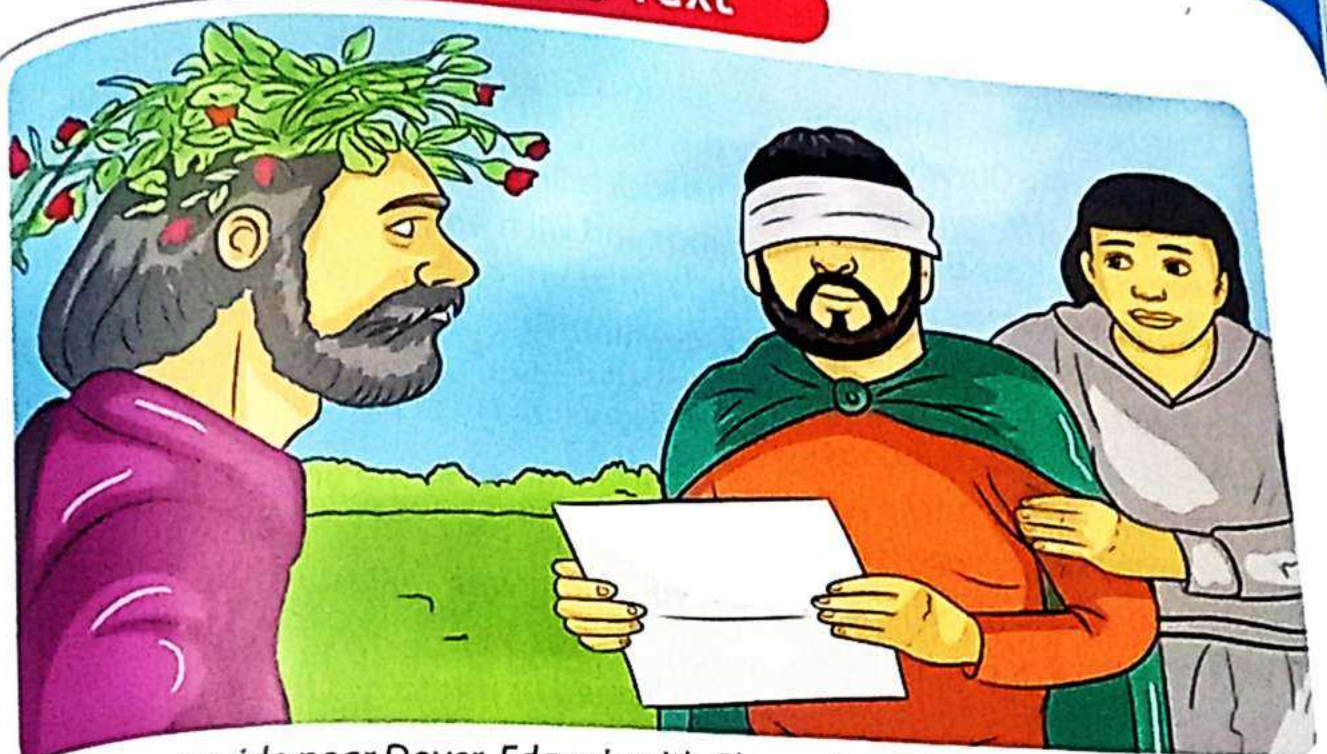
13 There is a new medicine which will .... many diseases in children. (WB)
a) harm b) heal c) cure d) detain

14 A long time ago, there were many .... between France and England, but the countries are good neighbours now. (WB)
a) treats b) wars c) specks d) documents



Act iv, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

Scene Text



[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]

KING LEAR: Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But look at you, what have you done?

GLOUCESTER: Your majesty[1], let me kiss your hand!

KING LEAR: I must clean it first.

GLOUCESTER: Do you not know me, sir?

KING LEAR: I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

GLOUCESTER: But I can't see it.

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

KING LEAR: Read it!

GLOUCESTER: But look at my eyes!

KING LEAR: Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But you understand how things work in this world.

GLOUCESTER: I feel my way.

KING LEAR: But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge[2] will punish a poor man's crime[3] before a rich man's crime.

(1) فخامة
(2) قاضي
(3) جريمة



GLOUCESTER: Yes, sir.

KING LEAR: Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

EDGAR: The King is talking both sense[1] and nonsense[2]!

[Gloucester cries.]

KING LEAR: Wait. I know you: your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a sad day this is!

KING LEAR: *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a stage[3] in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on[4] my daughters' husbands and kill them!

[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]

GENTLEMAN: Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

[To King Lear.]

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

KING LEAR: What? Am I a prisoner[5] now? Be good to me and I'll reward you. But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

GENTLEMAN: You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

KING LEAR: I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, someone kill me before I am tempted to[6] kill myself!

EDGAR: Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

GLOUCESTER: Thank you.

[Oswald enters.]

OSWALD: Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich! *[He takes out[7] his sword.]* Get ready to die, you old traitor!

GLOUCESTER: I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.

[Edgar stands between them.]

OSWALD: Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

EDGAR: I will not let go.

OSWALD: Let go of this man or you'll die too!

EDGAR: Don't come near the old man.

OSWALD: Then take out your sword!

[They fight. Oswald falls.]



(1) كلام عاقل
(2) كلام فارغ/هراء
(3) خشبة المسرح
(4) يرتفع على
(5) سجين
(6) أنا أميل/مُغرٍ إلى
(7) يسحب/يخرج

OSWALD: Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!
[He dies.]
GLOUCESTER: Is he dead?
EDGAR: Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest. Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.
[He finds a letter and reads it.]
'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle[1]. If you help me, I will give you more power and riches[2].
Yours
Goneril.'
That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's lucky[3] that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.
[The sound of a drum.[4]]
EDGAR: [To Gloucester, his father.] Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.
[They exit together.]

Act IV, Scene vii

[A tent[5] in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]
CORDELIA: Please put on some better clothes, Kent.
KENT: I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.
CORDELIA: I understand, my lord. [To the Doctor.] How's the King?
DOCTOR: Madam, he's still sleeping.
CORDELIA: My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.
DOCTOR: If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.
CORDELIA: You know what's best for him.
[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]
DOCTOR: Please, play some music.
CORDELIA: Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!
KENT: Kind and dear princess!
CORDELIA: How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.
[To the Doctor.] He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you recognise[6] me?



(1) معركة
(2) مال/ثروة
(3) محظوظ
(4) طبلة
(5) خيمة
(6) يتعرف على

Practice 

Act iv, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... escaped from the police station and disappeared! (SB)
a) detective b) judge c) officer d) prisoner

2 Please .... your books and read page 10. (SB)
a) give out b) go out c) take out d) send out

3 He was .... to eat the last piece of cake, but he didn't. (SB)
a) tempted b) exempted c) expelled d) excluded

4 The .... decided to send the criminals to prison for their crime. (SB)
a) thief b) judge c) spy d) detective

5 I hadn't seen her for years and so I didn't .... her. (SB)
a) suspect b) realise c) recognise d) defy

6 Soha's mum asked her to take .... the rubbish. (SB)
a) out b) up c) in d) for

7 I'm innocent and don't deserve to be punished .... something I didn't do! (WB)
a) of b) with c) by d) for

8 Hany tried to creep .... and take the last cake without his sister hearing him. (WB)
a) up b) at c) on d) in

9 A plane on the moon? That's ....! It's not possible. (WB)
a) sense b) nonsense c) wise d) factual

10 The chase ended in a gun .... between police and drug smugglers .محربى المخدرات
a) quarrel b) agreement c) initiative d) battle

11 There are a number of ways in which the public can help the police to fight ....
a) manner b) crime c) courage d) duty

12 The actor stood on a .... so that everyone could see him. (WB)
a) stage b) drum c) screen d) pavement

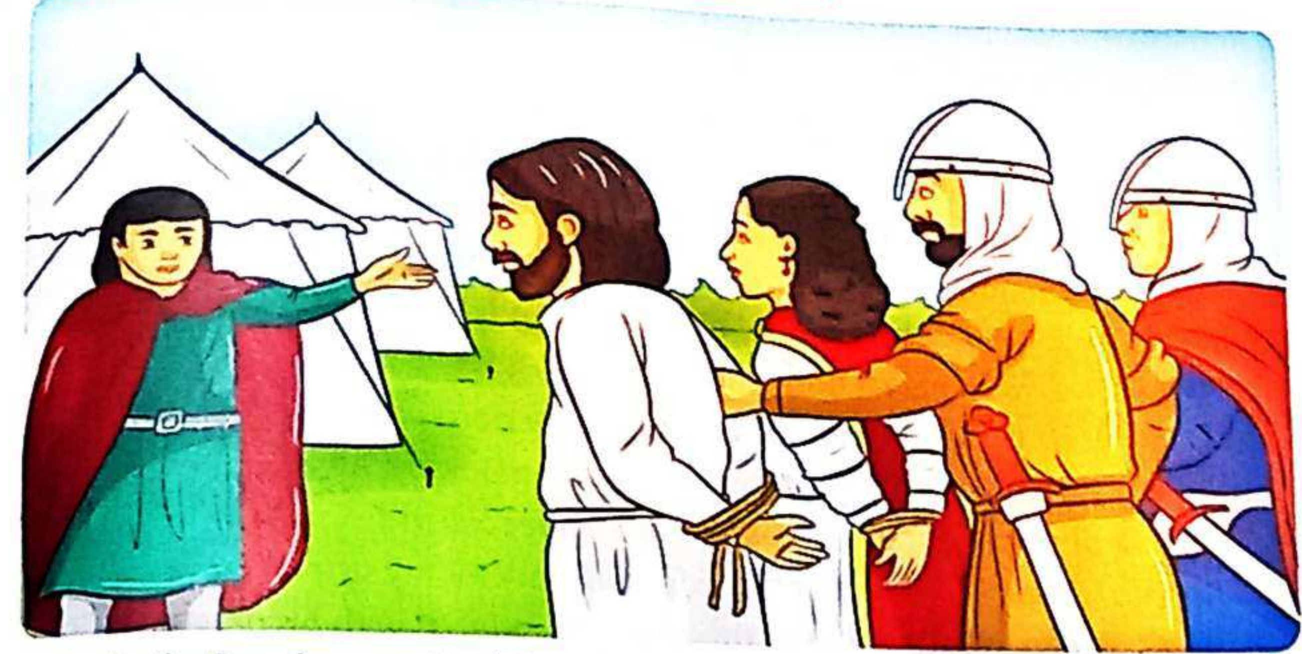
13 His speech makes real ...., you should listen to him.
a) rubbish b) sense c) things d) nonsense

14 Fame and .... are two of the most important things that young men dream for.
a) riches b) poverty c) morals d) sorrow

Study 

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

Scene Text



[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

KING LEAR: What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire[1].

CORDELIA: Sir, do you know who I am?

KING LEAR: Where am I? Is it day or night?

CORDELIA: Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

KING LEAR: Lady. I'm a very foolish[2] old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ... *[He points to Kent.]* ... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at[3] me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

CORDELIA: It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

KING LEAR: Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please don't cry. If you have some poison[4] for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.



(1) أنا على عجلة من النار
(2) أحمق
(3) يسخر من
(4) سم

CORDELIA: I'll never be cruel to you, father.

KING LEAR: Am I in France?

KENT: No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

KING LEAR: This can't be true.

DOCTOR: I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

KING LEAR: *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you forgive[1] me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.

Act V, Scene i

[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]

REGAN: Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

EDMUND: I am not, madam.

REGAN: So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

EDMUND: No, you mustn't think these things.

REGAN: I don't trust[2] my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

EDMUND: Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany …

[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

ALBANY: Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army has invaded[3]. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

REGAN: Why are you telling me this now?

GONERIL: We must join together against the enemy.

ALBANY: Let's plan what to do with the officers[4]. Then we can go into battle[5].

EDMUND: I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

REGAN: Are you coming with us, Goneril?

GONERIL: No.

REGAN: Please, come with us.

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.

[To Regan.] I'll come soon.

[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still disguised[6] as Poor Tom.]



(1) يغفر/يسامح
(2) يثق بـ
(3) غزا
(4) ضباط
(5) معركة
(6) متنكر

EDGAR: [To Albany.] I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your trumpet[1] so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think … Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to take control of[2] the kingdom!

[He exits.]

Act V, Scene ii

[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]

EDGAR: King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. This is a bitter pill to swallow[3]. Quick, we must leave.

GLOUCESTER: I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

EDGAR: No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

GLOUCESTER: You're right.

EDGAR: Let's go.

[They exit.]

Act V, Scene iii

[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]

EDMUND: Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

CORDELIA: I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered[4] so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

KING LEAR: No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage[5]!

EDMUND: Take them away from me.



(1) بوق
(2) يتحكم في/يسيطر على
(3) هذه حبة مريرة لتبتلعها
(4) عانى
(5) قفص

KING LEAR: I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will starve[1] before they make us cry! Let us go.

[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]

EDMUND: Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]

CAPTAIN: I'll do what the message says, my lord.

[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]

ALBANY: Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

EDMUND: Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support[2] him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

ALBANY: Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal[3]. You shouldn't make these decisions.

REGAN: I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

GONERIL: Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

REGAN: *[To Edmund.]* Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their lord[4] and ruler[5]!



(1) يجوع
(2) يدعم
(3) مثلكم
(4) السيد
(5) حاكم



Act IV Scenes vii & Act V Scenes i-iii Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I don't .... him, he stole some money from our teacher. (SB)
a) rest b) trust c) envy d) expect

2 My brother is learning to play the .... (SB)
a) trumpet b) net c) rope d) stage

3 Men and women earn .... pay when they do the same job. (SB)
a) arrogant b) dutiful c) relevant d) equal

4 The .... told the soldiers where to go. (SB)
a) killers b) enemies c) officers d) musicians

5 If you don't get anything to eat, you'll .... (SB)
a) starve b) resign c) believe d) derive

6 The French army .... Britain. (SB)
a) expected b) invaded c) inspected d) delayed

7 The old man .... from a lung disease. (SB)
a) treated b) healed c) suffered d) depicted

8 In the past, many countries tried to .... their neighbours, so they needed strong borders! (WB)
a) suspect b) expect c) respect d) invade

9 I'm very grateful for my wife who .... me through life.
a) supported b) reported c) fought d) ignored

10 My friend was very angry saying that an insult isn't easy to ....
a) deliver b) punish c) forgive d) expect

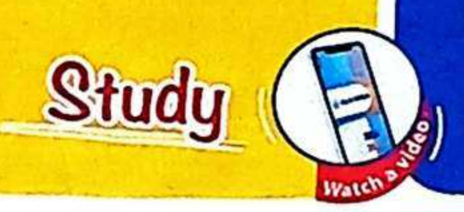
11 Who .... control of the company after Mr Atef retired? (WB)
a) left b) gave c) took d) made

12 Some people put birds in .... and keep them as pets.
a) cages b) trees c) boxes d) tents

13 The election defeat خسارة الانتخابات was a bitter .... for the politician to swallow.
a) bell b) bill c) ball d) pill

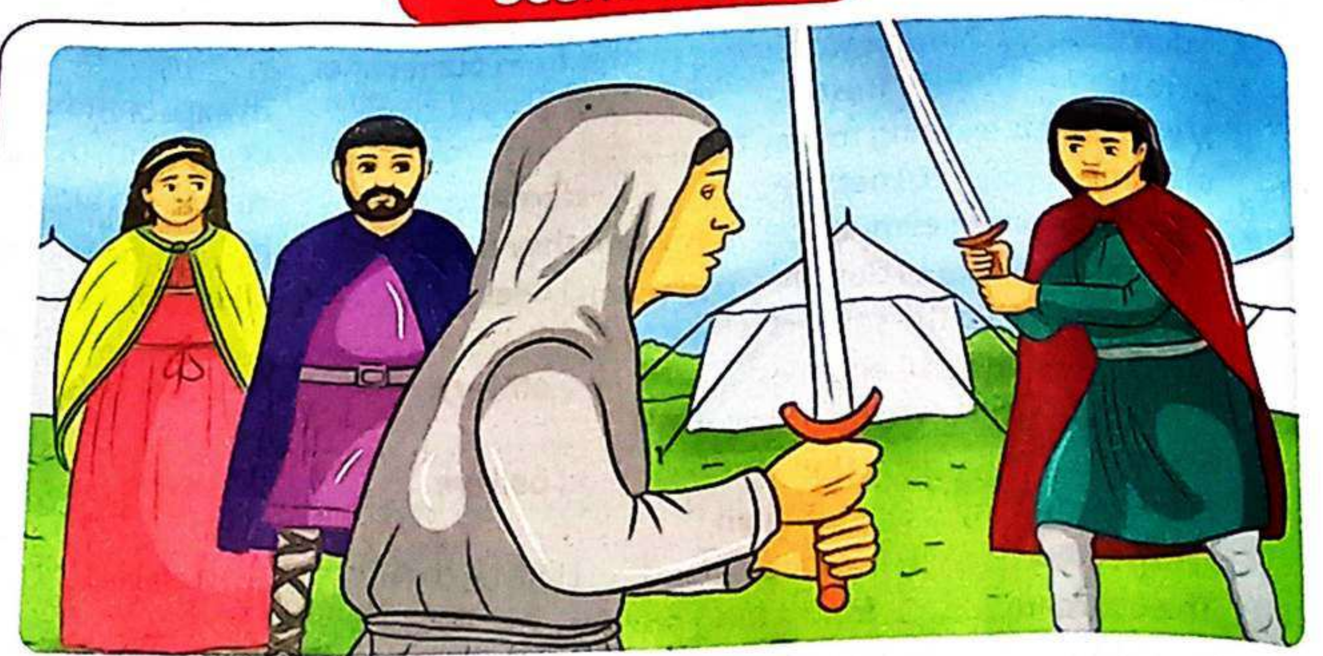
14 Thousands of years ago, Egypt was united under one .... called a Pharaoh.
a) officer b) ruler c) author d) enemy

15 The soldiers listened to their .... who gave them instructions in the battle.
a) officers b) rivals c) prisoners d) enemies



Act V, Scene iii

Scene Text



[In the British camp, near Dover.]

GONERIL: My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

ALBANY: You can't do this, Edmund.

EDMUND: You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

ALBANY: Yes I can!

REGAN: *[To Edmund.]* Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

ALBANY: Listen to me. Edmund, I arrest[1] you for treason[2].

[He points to Goneril.] And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!

GONERIL: But we could have more power, husband!

REGAN: I feel ill. My stomach[3] hurts!

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

ALBANY: You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!



(1) يقبض على
(2) خيانة
(3) معدة

EDMUND: I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar[1]. Come then, who wants to fight me?

REGAN: Help me. I feel worse.

ALBANY: Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

[Regan is helped offstage.]

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

[Edgar enters.]

Who are you?

EDGAR: I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

EDMUND: I'm here.

EDGAR: Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and your father. I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

[They fight. Edmund falls.]

ALBANY: Edmund is hurt, can you save[2] him? I want to find out what he knows!

GONERIL: They tricked[3] you into fighting, Edmund.

ALBANY: Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]

[To Goneril.] No, don't try to tear up[4] the letter! You know what you wrote.

GONERIL: Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land. The laws[5] of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

ALBANY: You're an evil woman!

[Goneril exits.]

EDMUND: Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. [To Edgar.] But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

EDGAR: Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I am your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

EDMUND: I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle[6].

ALBANY: *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man, I promise[7] you, I never hated you, or your father!



(1) كاذب
(2) ينقذ
(3) خدع
(4) يمزق
(5) قوانين
(6) أصبحت العجلة دائرة كاملة
(7) يتعهد

EDGAR: I know that, Albany.

ALBANY: Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

EDGAR: I've been helping him, my lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood[1].]

OFFICER: Help! Oh, help me!

EDGAR: What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

OFFICER: It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

ALBANY: Who's dead? Tell us.

OFFICER: Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

[Kent enters.]

EDGAR: Here is Kent.

KENT: I have come to see the King. Is he here?

ALBANY: Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?

[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers[2] by soldiers.]

KENT: Oh, no! What's happened?

ALBANY: Cover their faces.

EDMUND: I must do one good thing before I die.
Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

EDGAR: Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

EDMUND: *[To the Officer.]* Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

ALBANY: Run! Quickly!

[The Officer exits.]

EDMUND: The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison[3]. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

ALBANY: Please let her be safe! Take him away.

[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]



(1) دم
(2) نقالة
(3) سجن

KING LEAR: Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

KENT: Oh, your majesty!

KING LEAR: You're all murderers[1] and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever[2]! Her voice was always soft and gentle. *[He sees Kent.]* Aren't you Kent?

KENT: Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.

KING LEAR: You're welcome here.

KENT: My heart is heavy[3]. Your eldest daughters have died too.

[The Captain enters.]

CAPTAIN: Edmund is dead, my lord.

ALBANY: He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign[4] and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

KING LEAR: *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

[King Lear dies.]

KENT: Oh, my heart will break!

EDGAR: He's gone.

KENT: He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

ALBANY: Carry him out carefully.

[To Kent and Edgar.] My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

EDGAR: We must remember this sad day.

[He puts on the crown.]

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

[They exit.]

THE END



(1) قتلة
(2) للأبد
(3) قلبي حزين
(4) يستقيل/يتخلى عن منصب

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They had to use a .... to carry the injured footballer off the pitch. (SB)

a) stretcher b) ladder c) carriage d) ledge

2 The manager had to .... when it was clear he was a liar and hadn't told the truth. (SB)

a) hired b) resigned c) employed d) fired

3 The job of the police is to make sure we obey the .... of the country. (WB)

a) rights b) duties c) laws d) responsibilities

4 The spy was arrested on suspicion of .... (WB)

a) honesty b) loyalty c) treasury d) treason

5 My brother is always trying to .... me into doing his homework! (WB)

a) trace b) track c) trick d) forgive

6 The author decided to .... up her first story because she wasn't happy with it. (WB)

a) give b) tear c) look d) make

7 That criminal is a ....; he killed the old woman and stole her jewellery. (WB)

a) pleader b) magician c) pickpocket d) murderer

8 He's a .... He never tells the truth. (WB)

a) liar b) thief c) prisoner d) soldier

9 A young man has been .... in connection with the bank robbery .

a) rewarded b) awarded c) arrested d) expected

10 It is against the .... to leave your car in the middle of the road.

a) law b) scene c) behaviour d) treaty

11 The French soldiers .... in England in 1066. (WB)

a) crept up b) suffered c) arrived d) tempted

Unit 7

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dentists use .... anaesthetic to drill into a tooth or even take it out.
a) local b) national c) international d) body

2 Three .... studies all arrived at the same conclusion about the virus.
a) dependent b) independent c) intuitive d) imaginary

3 The small boat .... against the waves and it could arrive safely.
a) worked b) respired c) struggled d) expanded

4 The young man was .... up by police and taken to the station for questioning.
a) assigned b) released c) arrested d) picked

5 Cooking oils are .... from plants such as corn and sunflower.
a) consumed b) intended c) extracted d) expired

6 The team is desperate to end a ten-game goal .... and they are ranked last.
a) draught b) drought c) current d) tide

7 In the field of drug development, the .... of secrecy is deep and strong.
a) culture b) habit c) study d) costume

8 Government plans for hospital closures provoked a .... of protest.
a) tide b) shore c) storm d) downpour

9 The firefighter fell down a .... of stairs and hurt her back.
a) trip b) flight c) glider d) block

10 In the world of work, an employee must .... himself to arrive at work on time.
a) exercise b) practise c) aspire d) organise

11 Scientists say that some animals may .... disease that could affect humans.
a) harbour b) port c) consist d) enclose

12 Due to modern technology, we can now predict the weather with a greater .... of accuracy.
a) rank b) degree c) certificate d) grade

13 With the new building and modern equipment, the .... of the school has changed.
a) portrait b) fitness c) character d) form

14 At the .... ceremony, the players received their medals with great honour.

a) applying b) acceptance c) graduation d) presentation

15 I watched a movie .... the life and work of President Sadat.

a) shaping b) focusing c) celebrating d) preventing

16 The woman who .... this house died 30 years ago.

a) is owning b) was owning c) owned d) owns

17 Yasser .... very naughty these days. I need to ask a doctor about this behaviour.

a) is being b) is c) will be d) was

18 My husband .... the food while I'm cooking! It's very annoying.

a) always taste b) used to taste

c) was always tasting d) is always tasting

19 A: What's that terrible noise? B: The neighbours .... a party.

a) have b) are having

c) having d) had

20 We are discussing the new project and .... a good time as well.

a) having b) had

c) have d) being having

21 I can hear someone .... outside. What is happening?

a) is shouting b) shouts

c) was shouting d) shouting

22 He is .... to help his father with his work on the garden.

a) supposing b) supposed

c) suppose d) supposition

23 My father is always .... in the English literature and reading about the famous English writers.

a) interesting b) interest

c) interested d) being interesting

24 Although he .... me for 5 years, he didn't invite me to his wedding party last week.

a) 's known b) 's knowing c) 's been knowing d) knows

25 I .... about my first visit to London. I .... of going to live there.

a) always think/'m thinking b) am always thinking/'m thinking

c) always think/think d) am always thinking/think

Unit 8

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's new novel is a/an .... of a short story he wrote about ten years ago.
a) expansion b) repetition c) publication d) publicity

2 The squash player finished the tournament in .... by winning his last match very quickly and easily.
a) fashion b) style c) affection d) skill

3 Drawing, like writing, can be a .... for expressing your feelings.
a) system b) form c) vehicle d) shape

4 Maha's husband was always nice to her in ...., but treated her badly at home.
a) general b) private c) special d) public

5 My little sister has a .... for languages. She learns them quite easily.
a) reward b) present c) facility d) disability

6 You should take another medicine as colds do not .... to antibiotics.
a) reply b) respond c) answer d) respect

7 The film we watched at the cinema could .... us to 18th century England.
a) transport b) transmit c) transplant d) transfuse

8 My uncle is the chairman of a .... of TV sports stations.
a) team b) lab c) network d) specialty

9 The cost of the new bridge would be in the .... of 5 million pounds.
a) district b) speck c) area d) region

10 Some economic changes are taking place at national .... in Egypt.
a) standard b) level c) stop d) airway

11 The young singer's first album is .... for release in September.
a) invited b) agreed c) scheduled d) rejected

12 My office colleague is a very .... man; he doesn't trust his secrets to anyone.
a) special b) private c) general d) public

13 Some people say that the coronavirus vaccine is only light at the end of the ....
a) fight b) street c) road d) tunnel

14 My wife kept making a/an .... of smoking until I gave it up.
a) treaty b) agreement c) issue d) reason

15 I'll come straight to the ....: we need more money.

a) point
b) dot
c) issue
d) opinion

16 This time next week, everyone .... the final match.

a) will have watched
b) will watch.
c) will be watching
d) shall watch

17 By the time he saves money, he .... a new car.

a) will buy
b) will have bought
c) will be bought
d) will be buying

18 After he reads great expectations, he .... all Charles Dickens' novels.

a) will read
b) will have read
c) read
d) will have been read

19 By 2050, all people .... organic food.

a) will have been eaten
b) will be eaten
c) will have eaten
d) will eat

20 I expect the price of petrol .... by next week.

a) will have been risen
b) will be risen
c) will have risen
d) to have been risen

21 I have promised my father .... high marks and join the faculty of medicine.

a) to get
b) will get
c) would get
d) to have got

22 Line 4 .... the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city.

a) will be connected
b) is connected
c) will connect
d) will have been connected

23 I .... 3 languages by the time I have finished this course.

a) will learn
b) 'm going to have learnt
c) am learning
d) will be learning

24 Do your best and you .... your English by the time you come back from the U.S.

a) are perfecting
b) will have been perfected
c) will have perfected
d) perfect

25 Don't worry! I'll watch you while you .... in the lake.

a) swam
b) were swimming
c) swimming
d) swim

Unit 9

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The area is protected as a wildlife .... to protect the rare animals in it.
   a) park b) preserve c) accessory d) garden
2. The sports centre is organising a fishing .... to the lake for next week.
   a) prize b) award c) expedition d) resort
3. The new chemistry book is a work of serious .... of some Egyptian scientists.
   a) scholarship b) championship c) qualification d) implication
4. The school encourages a sense of .... in its students through some volunteering activities.
   a) society b) right c) democracy d) community
5. My sister cleans her contact lens with an ordinary saline ....
   a) solution b) syrup c) tube d) research
6. She is a young woman who .... trust in everyone she meets.
   a) involves b) inspires c) aspires d) respires
7. I have typed out some lecture notes for the .... of those people who were absent last week.
   a) consummation b) sale c) benefit d) cure
8. In many countries, eighteen is considered the age of ....
   a) majority b) minority c) acceptance d) qualification
9. Most of the television sets on the market are all high .... for a better image.
   a) quantity b) purpose c) definition d) design
10. The police think that someone set the factory fire on ....
    a) reason b) cause c) account d) purpose
11. The famous footballer's private life is off .... to the press.
    a) borders b) limits c) blocks d) targets
12. The match reporter could watch what was happening on the TV ....
    a) camera b) alarm c) monitor d) receiver
13. The local newspaper has been taking the politician to .... because of his repetitive mistakes.
    a) task b) duty c) job d) career

14 Are you absolutely .... you locked the door?

a) possible b) negative c) positive d) specific

15 Egypt plays a highly .... role in the peace talks.

a) defective b) visible c) defensive d) effecting

16 When we were children, our parents .... us to the children's theatres and buy us sweets.

a) are used to take b) use to often take

c) will often take d) often took

17 Trains .... at the next station. We find travelling easy.

a) are used to stopping b) are used to stop

c) used to stop d) were used to stopping

18 My father always .... me with my homework and encouraged me alot.

a) used to help b) helped

c) would help d) All are possible

19 She .... an amazing suntanned by the time summer ended.

a) is used to having b) has had

c) had d) would have

20 In the past, all our food .... in organic forms, but now we have both organic and non-organic forms.

a) didn't use to come b) used to come

c) didn't come d) would never come

21 She .... the most popular girl when she sang.

a) would be b) used to be

c) was d) All are possible

22 That coat is .... for you to wear.

a) too small b) slightly smaller

c) too much small d) much small

23 Jane's dress is .... yours.

a) almost as b) slightly the same as

c) similar to d) the same to

24 He's recovered from his illness and is playing .... ever.

a) as well as b) as good as

c) almost as good as d) much good than

25 English is as easy as German. They are ....

a) almost as easier as each other b) the same ease

c) slightly easier than each other d) exactly the same easiest

Unit 10

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Although they live in the ocean, the salmon fish return to the river as .... in order to breed.
a) teenagers b) meals c) adults d) young

2 The local newspapers .... a fierce attack on the Ministry of Health after the accident in the hospital.
a) involved b) launched c) shot d) fired

3 Some dogs have a/an .... sense of smell, so they are used by the police to detect things such as drugs.
a) interested b) eager c) weak d) keen

4 You can earn .... money working as a professional footballer nowadays.
a) serious b) dangerous c) scarce d) tiny

5 It is believed that hard work is the .... to success in life.
a) syllabus b) street c) method d) route

6 Don't .... the fact that your brother lost his job, as he is very sensitive about his job.
a) publish b) broadcast c) spoil d) speck

7 The evolution of smartphones and fast internet connections led to a great increase in the .... marketing industry.
a) download b) software c) digital d) colourful

8 House prices have .... up this year because the prices of building materials have increased.
a) zoomed b) spoiled c) decreased d) picked

9 Psychologists say that music is a great .... for releasing your emotions.
a) studio b) station c) canal d) channel

10 A lot of talks to solve the military dispute have been going on behind the ....
a) sites b) scenes c) sights d) scenery

11 Europe is facing a new .... of immigrants from the Middle East.
a) activity b) trend c) wave d) current

12 The company's offices are in London, so the .... are very high, paying for the costs.
a) overheads b) downloads c) uploads d) head downs

13 Unfortunately, we are losing our top .... in science to other countries who pay more.
a) gift b) income c) talent d) creation

14 Mother said she was feeling fine, but in .... she was very ill.
a) trial b) action c) fiction d) truth

15 The overall .... of the novel is gently comic, although it has serious scenes.
a) shape b) tone c) form d) material

16 The dentist .... me to brush my teeth twice a day.
a) permitted b) complained c) advised d) suggested

17 After .... , the food was served on the table.
a) cooking b) had cooked
c) been cooked d) being cooked

18 Having .... the bad news, she fainted and was carried to hospital.
a) told b) telling c) been told d) to tell

19 After she .... to school, she realised that she .... the wrong homework.
a) got/had done b) had got/did
c) had got/had done d) got/ did

20 I'd rather Ahmed .... me yesterday.
a) visited b) had visited
c) didn't visit d) was visiting

21 I wish you .... that bad car last week.
a) didn't buy b) had bought
c) bought d) hadn't bought

22 He is upset because he .... his job.
a) had lost b) lost c) has lost d) had been lost

23 The pharaohs believed in life after ....
a) death b) had died c) they had died d) they die

24 The pharaohs .... the Pyramids and other monuments.
a) have built b) built c) build d) has built

25 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) After the car he had had been repaired, it was polished.
b) After the car he had hadn't repaired, it was polished.
c) After the car he had been repaired, it was polished.
d) After the car he had had repaired, it was polished.

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) As soon as the girl disappeared, we told the police.
b) As soon as the girl had been disappeared, we told the police.
c) As soon as the girl was disappeared, we told the police.
d) As soon as the girl has disappeared, we told the police.

Unit 11

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We couldn't help laughing out loud at the .... of the situation in the muddy playground. The players kept slipping down.
a) romance b) comedy c) tragedy d) shortage

2 An essential piece of mountain climbing equipment is a climbing .... to help you up and down.
a) windmill b) slide c) swing d) harness

3 Mary talked about her new job with great .... She seemed very excited.
a) collocation b) collection c) animation d) respiration

4 A talented young artist designed the .... for the new play.
a) scenery b) site c) sight d) delight

5 Hundreds of students .... against the war outside the American Congress.
a) showed b) demonstrated c) denounced d) advocated

6 The actress agreed to give her .... of the accident to journalists.
a) vision b) sight c) version d) serial

7 The young priest is appointed to work at a Catholic .... in Africa.
a) duty b) task c) fiction d) mission

8 There was widespread .... support for the new governmental policy.
a) fascinated b) private c) popular d) hilarious

9 My son has a lot of big .... dreams of becoming an astronaut.
a) silly b) romantic c) historical d) hopeless

10 Our team lost the game, but not for .... of trying. It was bad luck.
a) lack b) leak c) aspiration d) hope

11 My uncle is .... by his wife and two sons to whom he left his money.
a) endangered b) survived c) rescued d) damaged

12 Mr Reda is the most .... person I've ever met. He never tell lies.
a) real b) disloyal c) genuine d) original

13 The court .... that the workers were unfairly dismissed and must return to work.

a) governed b) investigated c) searched d) ruled

14 Although I met this girl many times, her name .... me.

a) reminds b) remembers c) escapes d) forgets

15 Many of the employees were .... to the idea of change as there could be a loss of jobs.

a) friendly b) hostile c) welcoming d) versatile

16 A: The car isn't moving, is it?

B: .... It's coming towards us.

a) No, it isn't b) No, it is c) Yes, it is d) Yes, it isn't

17 I don't suppose there is much damage, ...?

a) isn't it b) do I c) isn't there d) is there

18 Boring, ...?

a) doesn't he b) isn't it c) hasn't he d) was it

19 A .... soldier is most likely to get shot in war.

a) cowardly b) coward c) cowardliness d) cowardlier

20 Although he is my neighbour, I .... know him.

a) nearly b) hard c) hardly d) harder

21 How .... your determination and will is!

a) strength b) strong c) strongly d) stronger

22 He was wrong when he took it .... and returned to work before recuperation.

a) easier b) easily c) easiest d) easy

23 I think he wants to travel as .... as ....

a) quickly/possible b) quickly / possibly
c) quick/possible d) quick/possibly

24 Fast-food restaurants are popular because many people want ....

a) to eat quickly and cheaply b) eating quickly and cheaply
c) the eat quickly and cheaply d) quick and cheaply eating

25 Everybody congratulated him for the .... party.

a) well-organised extremely b) extremely well-organised
c) well-extremely organised d) extreme well-organised

Unit 12 Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Learning from experience is a good .... for continuous improvement.
a) analysis b) prescription c) recipe d) guidebook

2 The .... of the match will be shown later this evening.
a) excerpts b) highlights c) wings d) losses

3 Local newspapers took .... at the famous actor for his indecent remarks.
a) aim b) goal c) target d) objective

4 We need someone outside the company to give us a/an .... analysis.
a) target b) goal c) aim d) objective

5 The team .... their first win of the season at the Premier League.
a) recorded b) reported c) gave d) took

6 If you are fed up with spams and unwanted ads, you can install a spam ....
a) cleaner b) caller c) filter d) advisor

7 Two men were arrested as the police officer proved that they were .... to the terrorist action.
a) outfits b) accessories c) accesses d) appliances

8 The number of people claiming unemployment .... rose as a result of the coronavirus crisis.
a) crisis b) loss c) profit d) benefit

9 The students were left to their own .... when the teacher was late for the class.
a) tools b) equipment c) devices d) defects

10 We are taking a .... view of our business to make the right decision.
a) global b) local c) national d) simple

11 Things began to go wrong when Sameer got into bad ....
a) business b) company c) store d) tutorial

12 Messi is a great player with a highly .... style.
a) team b) common c) individual d) strange

13 It's hard to be .... about my own family.
a) knowledgeable b) resourceful
c) subjective d) objective

14 The hospital needs more staff as each nurse .... 15 patients.

a) attends b) pretends c) describes d) prescribes

15 Big companies' shares in the stock market البورصة are more .... than those of smaller ones.

a) solid b) investing c) liquid d) descriptive

16 I couldn't give my son .... he needed.

a) that b) whose c) what d) who

17 Ali wanted to know the reason .... I was late for the meeting.

a) what b) why c) that d) when

18 Look! That's the man ....

a) we gave the money

b) we gave the money to

c) who we gave the money

d) all are possible

19 One of the following sentences is correctly structured

a) The dog, she bought last week, barks a lot.

b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.

c) The dog, which she bought it last week, barks a lot.

d) The dog, she bought it last week, barks a lot.

20 His father, ..., said he didn't like to work.

a) he gave a series of interviews

b) that had retired a few weeks ago

c) who was already over sixty-five

d) is an electrical engineer

21 Hassan ordered an enormous steak, ...

a) was very delicious

b) which cost him a lot

c) he ate all by himself

d) it wasn't well-done

22 The people .... stealing are imprisoned.

a) caught

b) who caught

c) who catch

d) who are catching

23 The students .... wishes have come true are very happy.

a) who b) whose c) that d) whom

24 He bought a car, ... I can't remember the brand.

a) where b) of what c) by whom d) of which

25 There were fifty questions on the test, ...

a) either was easy

b) all of whom were very interested

c) all of they were very hard

d) all of which were difficult



Advanced and Open General Ex. Answers

Unit 7

1. a) local

تستخدم العبارة local anaesthetic بمعنى (مخدر/بنج موضعى).

2. b) independent

تستخدم independent هنا بمعنى (مستقل فى أداء العمل).

3. c) struggled

تستخدم struggle هنا بمعنى (يعمل فى ظروف صعبة).

4. d) picked

يستخدم pick up هنا بمعنى (يقبض على).

5. c) extracted

يستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص مادة من شيء كنبات).

6. b) drought

يستخدم drought هنا بمعنى (انقطاع عن عمل شيء كتسجيل أهداف).

7. a) culture

تستخدم culture هنا بمعنى (انطباع/فكر سائد).

8. c) storm

تستخدم storm of protest بمعنى (عاصفة/قدر كبير من الاحتجاج).

9. b) flight

تستخدم flight هنا بمعنى (مجموعة متواصلة من درجات سلم).

10. d) organise

تستخدم organise himself بمعنى (يرتب أفكاره وتصرفاته).

11. a) harbour

تستخدم harbour هنا بمعنى (يحمل مرضا).

12. b) degree

تستخدم degree هنا بمعنى (درجة أو مقدار من).

13. c) character

تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (صفة/شهرة معروفة عن مكان ما).

14. d) presentation

تستخدم presentation ceremony بمعنى (مراسم تسليم جوائز فى مسابقة رياضية).

15. c) celebrating

تستخدم celebrate بمعنى (يمجد/يحتفى بشخص).

16. c) owned
17. a) is being
18. d)'m always tasting
19. b) are having
20. a) having
21. d) shouting
22. b) supposed
23. c) interested
24. a)'s known
25. a) always think/'m thinking

Unit 8

1. a) expansion

تستخدم expansion هنا بمعنى (تطوير/توسيع فكرة).

2. b) style

يستخدم التعبير in style بمعنى (بطريقة مبهرة/مثيرة للإعجاب).

3. c) vehicle

تستخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير).

4. d) public

يستخدم التعبير in public بمعنى (علنا/أمام الجمهور)

5. c) facility

يستخدم facility هنا بمعنى (موهبة في تعلم اللغة).

6. b) respond

يستخدم respond هنا بمعنى (يستجيب للعلاج).

7. a) transport

تستخدم transport هنا بمعنى (ينقل/يعيد لفترة زمنية).

8. c) network

تستخدم network هنا بمعنى (شبكة/مجموعة متصلة من قنوات التليفزيون أو محطات إذاعة).

9. d) region

يستخدم التعبير in the region of بمعنى (فيما يقترب).

10. b) level

يستخدم التعبير the national level بمعنى (على المستوى المحلى من مسابقة أو لعبة).

11. c) scheduled

تستخدم schedule هنا بمعنى (يعين/يحدد موعدا).

12. b) private

يستخدم التعبير private man بمعنى (رجل كتوم).

13. d) tunnel

يستخدم التعبير a light at the end of the tunnel بمعنى (ضوء/أمل فى نهاية النفق/الأزمة).

14. c) issue

يستخدم التعبير making an issue of بمعنى (يجادل/يتشاجر بخصوص شيء).

15. a) point

يستخدم التعبير come straight to the point بمعنى (يتحدث فورا عن الأمر الأهم).

16. c) will be watching
17. a) will buy
18. b) will have read
19. d) will eat
20. c) will have risen
21. a) to get
22. c) will connect
23. b) 'm going to have learnt
24. c) may have perfected
25. d) swim

Unit 9

1. b) preserve

تستخدم العبارة wildlife preserve بمعنى (محمية طبيعية)

2. c) expedition

تستخدم العبارة fishing expedition بمعنى (رحلة صيد)

3. a) scholarship

تستخدم scholarship هنا بمعنى (عمل/طريقة علمية)

4. d) community

يستخدم التعبير a sense of community بمعنى (الإحساس بالانتماء للمجتمع)

5. a) solution

يستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول)

6. b) inspires

يستخدم التعبير inspire trust بمعنى (يبعث الثقة في شخص)

7. c) benefit

يستخدم التعبير for the benefit بمعنى (لمصلحة).

8. a) majority

يستخدم التعبير the age of majority بمعنى (سن البلوغ).

9. c) definition

تستخدم العبارة high definition بمعنى (عالي الدقة).

10. d) purpose

يستخدم التعبير on purpose بمعنى (عمدا/عن قصد).

11. b) off limits

يستخدم التعبير off limits بمعنى (خارج/متجاوزا للحدود).

12. c) monitor

تستخدم monitor هنا بمعنى (شاشة تليفزيون).

13. a) task

يستخدم التعبير take.....to task بمعنى (يوبخ/ينتقد).

14. c) positive

تستخدم positive هنا بمعنى (متأكد).

15. b) visible

يستخدم التعبير plays a highly visible role بمعنى (يلعب دورًا هامًا أو ملحوظًا).

16. c) would often take

17. a) are used to stopping

18. b) helped

19. d) would have

20. b) used to come

21. d) All are possible

22. a) too small

23. c) similar to

24. a) as well as

25. b) the same ease

Unit 10

1. c) adults

تستخدم adults هنا بمعنى (كبار الحيوانات).

2. b) launched

يستخدم التعبير launch an attack بمعنى (يشن هجوما).

3. d) keen

تستخدم keen هنا بمعنى (حاد/شديد).

4. a) serious

تستخدم العبارة serious money بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

5. d) route

يستخدم التعبير the route to success بمعنى (طريق النجاح).

6. b) broadcast

يستخدم broadcast هنا بمعنى (يفشي/يذيع معلومة أو سر).

7. c) digital

تستخدم العبارة digital marketing بمعنى (التسويق الرقمي عبر الإنترنت للمنتجات).

8. a) zoomed

تستخدم zoom up بمعنى (يزداد بشكل كبير و سريع).

9. d) channel

تستخدم channel هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير).

10. b) scenes

يستخدم التعبير behind the scenes بمعنى (خلف الكواليس/في خفاء).

11. c) wave

تستخدم العبارة wave of immigrants بمعنى (موجه/ عدد كبير من المهاجرين).

12. a) overheads

تستخدم overheads هنا بمعنى (تكاليف غير مباشرة).

13. c) talent

تستخدم talent هنا بمعنى (شخص موهوب).

14. d) truth

تستخدم العبارة in truth بمعنى (في الواقع).

15. b) tone

تستخدم tone هنا بمعنى (الجو/الانطباع السائد).

16. d) being cooked

17. c) been told

18. a) got/had done

19. b) had visited

20. d) hadn't bought

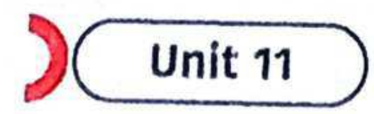
21. c) has lost

22. a) death

23. b) built

24. a) After the car he had been repaired, it was polished.

25. a) As soon as the girl disappeared, we told the police.



1. b) comedy

يستخدم التعبير comedy of the situation بمعنى (موقف ساخر).

2. d) harness

تستخدم العبارة climbing harness بمعنى (حزام/أداة تستخدم في رياضة التسلق).

3. c) animation

تستخدم animation هنا بمعنى (حيوية).

4. a) scenery

تستخدم scenery هنا بمعنى (ديكور في مسرحية).

5. b) demonstrated

يستخدم demonstrate هنا بمعنى (يتظاهر).

6. c) version

يستخدم version هنا بمعنى (رواية لحدث من وجهة نظر).

7. d) mission

تستخدم mission هنا بمعنى (إرسالية/مدرسة تبشيرية).

8. c) popular

تستخدم العبارة popular support بمعنى (تأييد عام).

9. b) romantic

تستخدم romantic هنا بمعنى (خيالي/بعيد عن الواقع).

10. a) lack

يستخدم التعبير not for lack/want of بمعنى (ليس بسبب قلة المحاولة).

11. b) survived

تستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يبقى على قيد الحياة بعد وفاة شخص قريب).

12. c) genuine

تستخدم genuine هنا بمعنى (صادق/صريح).

13. d) ruled

تستخدم rule هنا بمعنى (يقرر قضائيا).

14. c) escapes

تستخدم escape هنا بمعنى (يفلت من الذاكرة).

15. b) hostile

تستخدم hostile هنا بمعنى (معارض/غير موافق).

16. c) Yes, it is

17. d) is there

18. b) isn't it

19. a) cowardly

20. c) hardly

21. b) strong

22. d) easy

23. a) quickly / possible

24. a) to eat quickly and cheaply

25. b) extremely well-organised



Unit 12

1. c) recipe

تستخدم recipe هنا بمعنى (طريقة إجراء/طريقة عمل).

2. b) highlights

تستخدم highlights هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة من مباراة).

3. a) aim

يستخدم التعبير take aim at هنا بمعنى (يضع فى مرمى النقد).

4. d) objective

تستخدم objective هنا بمعنى (موضوعى).

5. a) recorded

يستخدم التعبير record its first win بمعنى (يحرز الفوز الأول).

6. c) filter

تستخدم العبارة spam filter بمعنى (فلتر البريد المزعج على الإنترنت).

7. b) accessories

تستخدم accessory هنا بمعنى (مشترك فى جريمة).

8. d) benefit

تستخدم العبارة unemployment benefit بمعنى (إعانة بطالة).

9. c) devices

يستخدم التعبير be left to their own devices بمعنى (يترك بمفرده ليفعل ما يحلو له).

10. a) global

تستخدم العبارة global view بمعنى (نظرة شاملة).

11. b) company

تستخدم company هنا بمعنى (صحبة).

12. c) individual

تستخدم individual هنا بمعنى (فريد).

13. d) objective

تستخدم objective هنا بمعنى (موضوعى).

14. a) attends

تستخدم attend هنا بمعنى (يسهر/يقوم على رعاية).

15. c) liquid

تستخدم liquid هنا بمعنى (أصول يتم تحويلها إلى نقود).

16. c) what

17. b) Why

18. d) all are possible

19. b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.

20. c) who was already over sixty-five

21. b) which cost him a lot

22. a) caught b) whose

23. d) of which

24. d) all of which were difficult

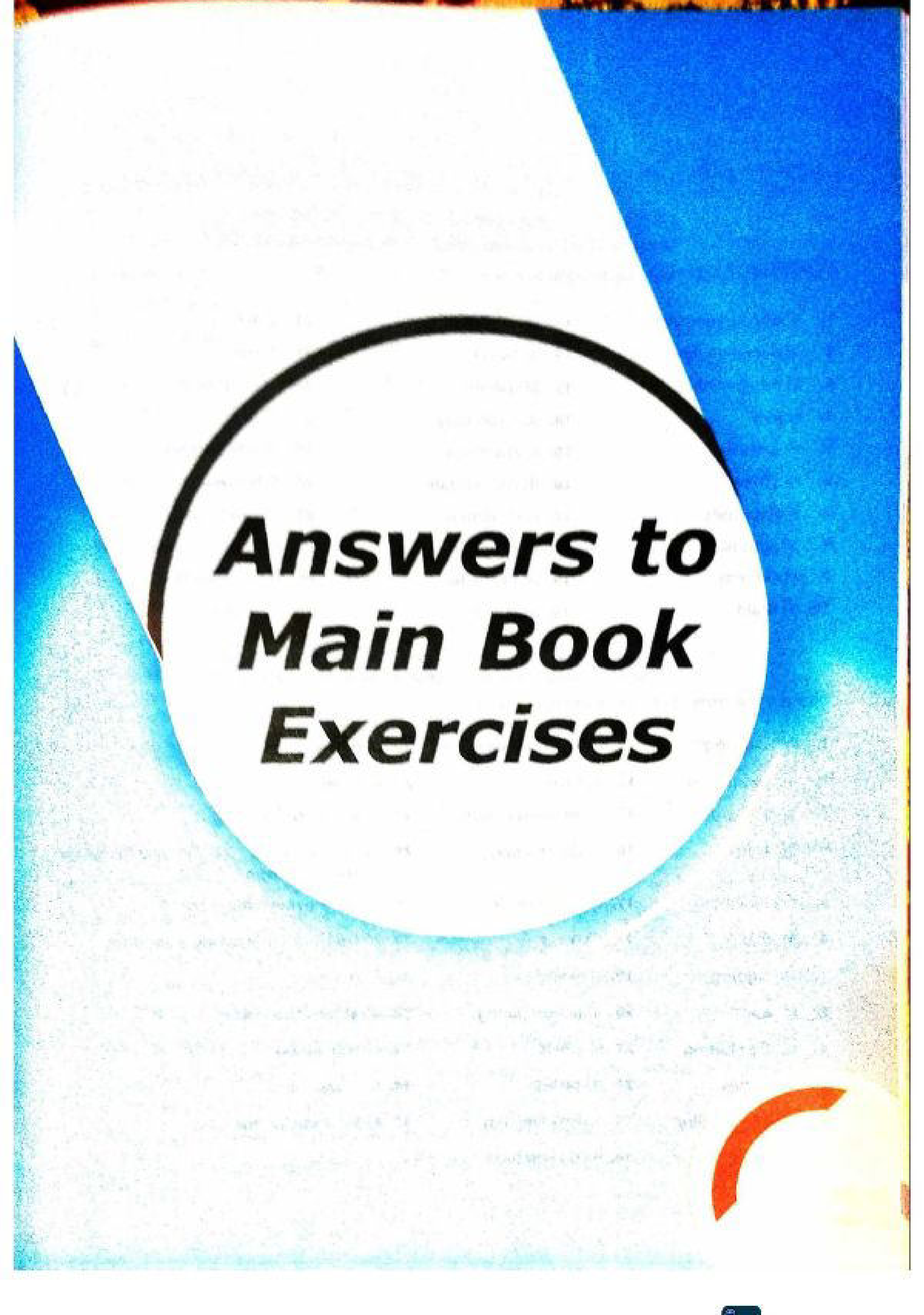


Check Points Answers

Lessons		Unit 7					Unit 8				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. b	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 2	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. d	3. b	4. c	5. c
	Check Point 4	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d	1. a	2. d	3. c		
	Check Point 5	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. b					
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. a	5. d	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c
	Check Point 2	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. c	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b
	Check Point 3	1. b	2. b	3. c			1. b	2. d	3. b	4. a	
	Check Point 4	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 5						1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d

Lessons		Unit 9					Unit 10				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c	5. a
	Check Point 2	1. c	2. b	3. d			1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. c	5. a	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. b	5. d
	Check Point 4	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b
	Check Point 5	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. c	5. d	1. a	2. d	3. b	4. c	5. d
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b
	Check Point 2	1. b	2. c	3. c	4. d	5. b	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. d	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. a	2. c	3. a	4. b		1. c	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. a
	Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. c
	Check Point 5	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d					

Lessons		Unit 11					Unit 12				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. c	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 2	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a		1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c	5. c	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	
	Check Point 4	1. b 6. c	2. d 7. a	3. a 8. d	4. c 9. c	5. b 10. b	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b
	Check Point 5	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a		1. b	2. a	3. d	4. d	5. c
	Check Point 6						1. a	2. b	3. c	4. c	5. d
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. b	5. a	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 2	1. c	2. a	3. c	4. d		1. a	2. b	3. c	4. d	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. d	
	Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. a


Answers to
Main Book
Exercises

UNIT 7  Living abroad

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) encouragement
2. d) determination
3. a) independent
4. c) pick
5. d) activities
6. d) annoy
7. b) creatures
8. a) current
9. c) extracts
10. d) maid
11. c) publish
12. b) secret
13. a) specific
14. d) temporary
15. a) challenge
16. d) concentrate
17. c) condition
18. a) struggling
19. d) distracted
20. a) fancy
21. c) across
22. d) get
23. b) confusion
24. b) on
25. d) imaginative
26. c) between
27. b) surrender
28. c) got
29. b) current
30. a) perform

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) is talking
2. c) is watching
3. b) is playing
4. a) believe
5. c) is washing
6. a) like
7. d) is going
8. b) want
9. d) are chasing
10. b) causes
11. c) am travelling
12. a) looks
13. c) are you thinking
14. b) hear
15. d) 're always playing
16. a) doesn't play
17. b) aren't reading
18. d) owes
19. c) seems
20. a) are preparing
21. c) smelt
22. d) tastes
23. a) isn't wearing
24. b) do you have
25. c) speaks
26. a) have
27. d) am weighing/weighs
28. b) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.
29. b) He's having a huge house
30. b) I'm thinking of taking a vacation
31. b) have
32. b) at the moment
33. d) is sleeping
34. d) is watching
35. a) He is tasting the food.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Determination
2. c) abroad
3. a) distracting
4. b) harbour
5. d) volunteers
6. c) supported
7. b) confident
8. b) host
9. b) Do you know
10. a) is advertising
11. d) miss
12. a) Do you believe
13. b) are always leaving
14. c) hopes
15. d) am coming
16. c) have arranged everything

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) in the plant's leaves.
2. b) It gives the leaves their colour.
3. d) help them make their food.
4. c) withdrawing
5. a) the sun and other light sources
6. b) carbon dioxide
7. a) keep the tree strong through high winds
8. c) in need of

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- b) للسفر للخارج الكثير من الفوائد للشباب فيمكن أن يساعدهم على تجربة نمط حياة مختلف وطرق حديثة للتعليم واستكشاف العالم من حولهم.

٢- a) إن تعلم مهارات التفكير الناقد تساعد الشباب على مواجهة تحديات العصر الحديث كما يساعدهم على عدم الوقوع كفريسة للجماعات المضللة.

٣- c) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المعاناة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. a) Some young people expose their lives to danger through illegal immigration to reach some European countries in order to look for a better life. However, some of them lose their lives before reaching their goal.
2. d) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.
3. a) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.



Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) accent
2. b) entry
3. c) local
4. d) organise
5. c) message
6. b) summarised
7. a) cultures
8. c) include
9. b) mentioned
10. d) storm
11. a) flights
12. b) weather
13. d) meal
14. a) mail
15. c) presentation
16. b) suppose
17. b) experiencing
18. b) in
19. a) finds
20. d) to
21. d) arrange
22. c) for
23. b) amazing
24. c) decision
25. a) ordinary
26. d) getting
27. c) about
28. a) From
29. d) get
30. a) ignore

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) is raining
2. c) 'm taking
3. d) works
4. b) is working
5. a) is thinking
6. d) suppose
7. c) aren't using
8. a) want
9. b) is having
10. a) are always making
11. c) need
12. d) 'm staying
13. b) are recycling
14. c) Is Ramy talking
15. a) don't remember
16. d) is being
17. b) seem
18. d) is always
19. a) is having
20. c) doesn't seem
21. b) isn't wearing
22. a) am thinking
23. c) is having
24. d) think
25. a) is eating/eats
26. b) sings/is having
27. c) are you tasting/tastes
28. d) Is he having a meeting at the office now?
29. a) They hate to get to school late.
30. c) I taste the soup now to see if it needs salt.
31. a) am feeling
32. b) looks
33. d) I have a bad cold and I'm seeing the doctor tonight.
34. c) No, I'm waiting for a phone call.
35. b) looks ill and is trying to find a doctor.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) entry
2. c) flight
3. c) conversation
4. b) includes
5. a) culture
6. b) mentions
7. c) summarise
8. d) in
9. d) is playing
10. c) is
11. a) 's always complaining
12. d) have
13. b) is trying
14. a) looks
15. b) don't understand
16. a) is getting

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) a school singing competition
2. a) 12
3. d) individually and in a group
4. a) the contestants who lost cried
5. a) the judges took a long time to arrive at their decision
6. c) excluded
7. b) a piece of art
8. d) were happy with the winners

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- b) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشروع ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة، و أيضا سيخلق عدداً كبيراً من فرص العمل للشباب.

٢- c) تشتهر مصر بآثارها القديمة التي تجذب ملايين السياح، وبالتالي، يجب أن نستغلها بشكل جيد لتطوير هذه الصناعة المهمة.

٣- a) في حين أن الدراسة في الخارج فرصة ممتازة لتعلم لغة جديدة، فقد تواجه في البداية بعض المشاكل مع الحواجز اللغوية والثقافية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. a) Some experts believe that the student must join the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
2. d) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform health care systems.
3. c) Youth conferences are a good chance for young people to meet important officials and look for solutions to the problems they face. Moreover, they can be a chance to exchange opinions for a better future.



King Lear Exercises (Act III – Scene V)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) proved
2. a) get
3. c) carriage
4. d) cured
5. b) madness
6. a) traitor
7. c) authority
8. d) deceived
9. b) enemies
10. c) interrupt

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) determination
2. b) entries
3. c) mention
4. a) diary
5. d) get
6. c) name
7. b) are going
8. a) wants
9. c) is always
10. d) see
11. b) are studying
12. d) can hear
13. a) 'm considering
14. d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.
15. c) is having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) Maths
17. a) A boy had fallen down the stairs
18. b) Mrs Fareeda's advice
19. d) softly
20. a) called for the ambulance
21. c) guilty
22. b) his arm was broken
23. a) to follow other people's advice especially the elderly.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهي بلدنا الحبيب التي واجهت كل الصعوبات وبقيت قوية أمام أعدائها.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

b) No one can deny that reforming education is the best way to reform both the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to face the challenges of the age.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Students' own answer.



UNIT 8 High-tech transport

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) expansion
2. b) facilities
3. d) high-tech
4. c) network
5. b) public
6. a) transport
7. b) authority
8. c) connect
9. d) improved
10. c) schedule
11. d) total
12. c) protecting
13. a) emphasises
14. c) series
15. d) suburbs
16. a) Construction
17. b) tunnel
18. b) notice
19. c) electric
20. b) monorail
21. b) main
22. c) made
23. b) down
24. b) introduction
25. d) around
26. a) create
27. c) exclude
28. d) take
29. a) accurate
30. d) with

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) will have slept
2. c) will have finished
3. a) have learned
4. d) won't have finished
5. b) will have got
6. a) have been cleaned
7. b) have arrived
8. b) will have bought
9. b) have been prepared
10. c) won't have finished
11. b) have replaced
12. a) will have finished
13. c) won't have ended
14. a) will have been discovered
15. d) won't have gone
16. c) will have prepared
17. a) have received
18. d) have been fixed
19. c) will have flown
20. a) will have slept
21. b) won't have finished
22. a) has answered
23. d) have been sent
24. c) won't have completed
25. a) will have driven
26. d) have studied
27. b) 'll have finished
28. d) By tomorrow, I'll book the tickets.
29. d) I won't have done my homework until my father comes home.
30. b) I hope I have passed my driving test next week.
31. c) will have read
32. a) will have walked
33. b) to have gained
34. a) before
35. b) finishes

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) expansion
2. d) facilities
3. a) network
4. c) precise
5. b) place
6. d) affordable
7. d) series
8. d) up
9. a) will have learned
10. c) won't have gone
11. b) have been caught
12. a) will have cleaned
13. d) will have moved
14. b) will have opened
15. a) won't have given
16. d) have been printed

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) A year
2. d) A road
3. a) heard a lorry passing
4. b) suppose
5. b) imaginary story
6. a) there was no mist
7. c) frightened
8. d) few

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- b) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التي تواجهها مصر في الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

٢- d) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ في شهر نوفمبر الماضي ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخي.

٣- a) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورا هاما في تطوير التعليم و تعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. c) Overpopulation is one to the obstacles of development and progress in many countries around the world, especially developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.
2. b) The government gives great priority to the public transportation projects. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.
3. a) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) consider
2. b) convenient
3. c) governorates
4. d) grateful
5. d) issues
6. b) provides
7. c) satisfactory
8. c) solutions
9. d) style
10. a) pause
11. c) significant
12. d) disabilities
13. c) levels
14. b) wildlife
15. a) present
16. c) region
17. d) alternatives
18. b) appropriate
19. c) region
20. d) unimportant
21. c) keep
22. d) in
23. b) behalf
24. d) satisfaction
25. b) reply
26. c) responsive
27. b) to
28. a) keep
29. d) do
30. d) substitute

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) will have finished
2. b) will have had
3. d) will show
4. a) will have cleaned
5. d) comes
6. c) have been eaten
7. d) will have established
8. c) will have made
9. b) will have played
10. c) have been built
11. d) will have finished
12. a) am meeting
13. b) will open
14. c) have finished
15. a) will be sitting
16. d) will have put
17. c) promise
18. b) will have bought
19. d) will have been
20. a) will speak
21. a) will have decided
22. c) have translated
23. c) will have spent
24. b) will be studying
25. d) will run
26. a) prediction
27. b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
28. c) In two years' time, I will be studying Spanish at university.
29. e) As the door is closed, I'll be opening it for you.
30. c) After Leila had finished her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
31. c) may
32. a) finish
33. c) By the time
34. c) will have joined
35. a) Offer in its interrogative form

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) convenient
2. b) solution
3. c) styles
4. d) disability
5. a) argument
6. c) points
7. d) reasons
8. b) behalf
9. c) will drive
10. a) have taken
11. d) will have read
12. a) will have learnt
13. b) until
14. b) will have passed
15. d) to have started
16. c) will have painted



2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) friendly, playful, and a lot of work
2. d) To act.
3. d) Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.
4. a) contrast previous information
5. c) adult dogs have less energy than puppies do.
6. b) prefers adult dogs to puppies
7. d) trained
8. a) people

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- b) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى مجال النقل. القطارات السريعة و قطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

٢- a) كانت مصر أول دولة خارج أوروبا تفوز ببطولة العالم لكرة اليد للشباب للرجال عام ٢٠١٩. لهذا السبب تم تكريم الفريق من قبل الرئيس.

٣- d) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) Big institutions / foundations should invest in scientific research to help the government develop it. This will help the society benefit from its results.
2. a) The government always asserts the role of the youth in developing the country. Therefore, many of them are appointed as assistants for ministers and governors.
3. b) Countries all over the world are looking forward to peace and stability, that are threatened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.

King Lear Exercises (Act IV, Scenes i-iii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) cliff	6. c) evil	11. d) beggar
2. a) tiger	7. b) fall	12. b) hide
3. d) for	8. a) pretended	13. d) nearby
4. b) camp	9. b) ruled	14. c) reminds
5. d) bleeding	10. c) storm	15. a) hold

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) electronic
2. b) Authority
3. c) facilities
4. a) public
5. d) over
6. a) previous
7. c) will have
8. a) graduates
9. d) will have built
10. a) will have completed
11. c) will have left
12. b) will have finished
13. d) have known
14. a) have been completed
15. d) to have finished

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.
17. a) grow
18. c) Rivers and the beginning of civilization.
19. b) farmers and traders
20. b) travelled
21. d) the soil was fertile
22. b) There is no more flood.
23. b) civilizations

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

a) يجب أن نحاول جعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر في السيطرة على الاحتباس الحراري، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التي نعاني منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

d) Technology has become an essential part of our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.



Conservation

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) species
2. c) expeditions
3. a) creature
4. d) culture
5. a) environment
6. c) faced
7. b) project
8. c) pollution
9. d) progress
10. b) original
11. a) complain
12. d) support
13. b) biodiversity
14. c) inhabitants
15. d) preserve
16. b) unique
17. c) scholarship
18. a) coast
19. d) facilities
20. a) state
21. b) bank
22. c) exotic
23. a) ensure
24. c) challenging
25. d) for
26. c) behaviour
27. b) at
28. a) have
29. b) waste
30. d) make

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) exactly the same
2. b) almost as good as
3. a) slightly
4. d) exactly
5. c) almost as big
6. a) easier
7. a) the same
8. d) almost as
9. c) slightly
10. b) as
11. a) almost
12. c) more expensive
13. b) would go
14. d) watched
15. c) used to ride
16. a) would
17. a) didn't use to be
18. c) isn't
19. b) would eat
20. d) would always make
21. a) use to
22. b) used to have
23. d) would always arrive
24. a) would visit
25. c) sends
26. b) doesn't
27. d) used to be
28. b) When I was young , I would visit my friends every weekend.
    c) When I was young , I used to visit my friends every weekend.
29. a) I would go shopping with my mother every Friday.
    c) How many friends did you use to have?
30. a) Our new car is much bigger than our old one.
    d) Our old car was much smaller than our new one.
31. c) would offer
32. a) Your car is exactly the same price as Hany's.
33. d) used to be
34. a) The two streets are exactly the same width.
35. a) used to buy

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) conservation
2. a) digital
3. b) endangered
4. d) form
5. b) monitoring
6. a) coral
7. c) wildlife
8. c) challenging
9. c) as quick as
10. d) the same
11. a) used to have
12. c) used to be
13. a) did you use to
14. b) slightly more
15. d) almost as cold as
16. b) read

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) 73 years
2. c) decreases
3. b) conscious
4. d) Robots can help people with sleeping problems.
5. a) harmless
6. a) pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body.
7. c) using natural ways to cure illnesses.
8. b) in China

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- d) تحقيق النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

٢- b) أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة من أهم القضايا التى يجب مناقشتها لمواجهة تغير المناخ و الاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

٣- a) الوجود البشرى مستحيل بدون وجود نظام بيئى صحى. تتكون بيئتنا من جميع المكونات الحية وتفاعلاتها داخل مواطنها الطبيعية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) Many young people don't like watching documentaries, which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and horror movies, which can cause problems for some of them.
2. c) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to compete with other products on the international market. So, the government is interested in training all workers on the latest production methods.
3. b) Sports exercises are a good way to get rid of stress and frustration in the workplace. Therefore, we should all get used to daily exercise on a regular basis.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) achieved
2. b) arise
3. c) community
4. d) career
5. b) contacts
6. c) goal
7. a) inspired
8. c) Organization
9. d) majority
10. a) specific
11. b) suitable
12. c) exist
13. a) solve
14. c) charity
15. d) download
16. b) expert
17. c) gained
18. b) shade
19. d) result
20. a) mental
21. b) aim
22. c) visible
23. b) definition
24. a) take
25. b) between
26. c) relaxing
27. d) given
28. a) of
29. c) argue
30. b) essential

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) much stranger
2. b) isn't used to
3. a) a bit hotter
4. d) isn't used to living
5. a) a lot more
6. c) no longer
7. d) much more difficult
8. b) hotter
9. c) any more
10. d) friendlier
11. a) used to think
12. c) didn't use to read
13. b) as rich
14. a) much colder than
15. c) far more serious
16. b) would go
17. d) didn't use to wear
18. a) don't
19. d) am used to living
20. a) good
21. d) slightly more
22. d) would go
23. c) used to have
24. a) used to/would
25. b) far quicker
26. d) even
27. c) used to
28. a) used
29. d) Last week , I used to go to the public library 3 times..
30. b) Ali and Hossam are exactly the same length.
31. b) was used to reading
32. c) Everything in the shop is more expensive than the blue suit.
33. d) are accustomed to walking to school every day.
34. a) exactly the same size as Osama's.
35. c) Driving cars in the past wasn't so easy for me.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) leaders
2. b) enjoyable
3. c) psychological
4. b) argue
5. d) expression
6. c) solution
7. b) make
8. c) explanatory
9. b) exactly the same
10. c) big
11. a) used to go
12. c) more interesting
13. d) called
14. a) a bit
15. c) much
16. b) no longer

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) to do a task
2. b) satisfied
3. d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.
4. a) To look after her sister.
5. c) they can't leave each other.
6. c) ignored her friend
7. b) shouldn't think badly of each other.
8. b) Friendship could be broken because of doubt

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١ - b) العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال في سن مبكرة.

٢ - c) سيتم بناء العديد من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومي ويوفر العديد من فرص العمل.

٣ - b) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش بعض الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. d) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area. So, we should preserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
2. a) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as using computer and internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary level.
3. b) Schools should be interested in students' talents and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.



King Lear Exercises (Act IV, Scenes iv-vi)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) war
2. a) take
3. c) flat
4. d) steep
5. c) edge
6. b) let
7. a) cold
8. b) foolish
9. c) scared
10. d) reward
11. a) cured
12. c) dressed

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) preserve
2. b) psychological
3. c) positive
4. a) challenging
5. c) take
6. c) protection
7. a) the same age
8. b) almost as
9. d) far
10. a) slightly heavier
11. b) didn't use to come
12. d) a bit slowly
13. c) a lot easier
14. b) didn't use to come
15. b) used to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) is a machine
17. d) normal
18. c) To describe the things a robot can do
19. a) To help explore Mars
20. b) Robots are helpful.
21. a) computer
22. d) 2000
23. c) doesn't object to anything

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل علامة للمجتمع المتحضر.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

a) Hobbies have a positive effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.



UNIT 10  The news

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) broadcasts
2. a) editor
3. b) interviews
4. d) newsreader
5. c) photographer
6. b) reporter
7. a) engine
8. b) source
9. c) admit
10. d) collected
11. b) fear
12. a) selected
13. d) uploading
14. c) scene
15. a) disaster
16. b) zoomed
17. c) digital
18. b) accurate
19. c) correspondent
20. d) deliberately
21. a) come
22. b) achievement
23. d) doubt
24. c) into
25. b) charge
26. c) informative
27. d) to
28. a) compete
29. a) transmit
30. c) amateur

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) punished
2. c) had forgotten
3. b) posted
4. d) after
5. a) had saved
6. b) had been caught
7. c) finishing
8. d) got
9. c) had known
10. b) reached
11. a) had been painted
12. d) as soon as
13. b) had visited
14. a) heard
15. b) had been
16. a) had forgotten
17. d) had phoned
18. b) had been checked
19. c) because
20. a) attacked
21. d) wasn't set
22. c) finished
23. a) began
24. d) wasn't awarded
25. c) had been written
26. c) The children had swum in the pool after they finished their homework.
27. c) My friend stopped playing music first, then I closed my room door.
28. a) Ali crossed the street after looking both ways.
29. a) As soon as Samy phoned me, I visited him.
30. d) When I had reached home, my mother had cooked the dinner.
31. b) didn't talk
32. d) After
33. d) rang
34. b) By the time
35. a) had started

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) broadcast
2. a) editor
3. b) interviewed
4. d) sources
5. a) admit
6. c) traditional
7. d) astronauts
8. a) range
9. d) immigrated
10. b) leaving
11. d) left
12. c) had scored
13. a) heard
14. b) had worked
15. d) had already seen
16. a) being punished

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) eight
2. b) man had occupied the land
3. c) hunt tigers illegally
4. a) cause the extinction of tigers
5. d) both a and c
6. b) cattle
7. a) traditional medicine
8. b) are in danger of extinction

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- d) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورا هاما فى تشكيل الرأى العام والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة التى تضمن مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

٢- b) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التى يحصلون عليها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى على أنها حقيقة ومع ذلك فإن كثيرا من الأخبار قد تكون خادعة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلام فى أى مجتمع.

٣- a) يسبب وسائل الترفيه الحديثة السلبية مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الشباب الى اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and prohibit some websites and social media pages, especially those which have become a source of rumours that threaten society?
2. a) People differ in their view of communication development. Some of them think it is a natural development. Others think that its disadvantages exceed its advantages, and it harms social relationships.
3. b) Producers use social media to advertise their products because it attracts millions of people. However, these adverts have become annoying because of their repetitions and disturbing different website users.



Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) agreed
2. a) brilliant
3. c) education
4. d) launch
5. c) teenagers
6. b) emergency
7. d) artists
8. b) buried
9. c) consequences
10. b) location
11. c) monuments
12. d) permission
13. c) sculpture
14. b) route
15. d) barrier
16. c) remarkable
17. b) keen
18. a) necropolis
19. d) launched
20. c) gave
21. d) call
22. b) with
23. c) hope
24. b) comparison
25. c) successful
26. d) construct
27. b) eager
28. b) about
29. a) for
30. a) end

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) had not booked
2. a) had arrived
3. d) had already left
4. b) had told
5. a) Having
6. b) had
7. c) Had you worked
8. d) had never been
9. b) had forgotten
10. c) when
11. a) had already begun
12. b) had already been
13. d) hadn't eaten
14. d) working
15. a) joined
16. d) locked
17. c) had seen
18. b) had eaten
19. d) hadn't done
20. c) hadn't seen
21. a) left
22. b) had read
23. c) insisted
24. d) drunk
25. d) had arrived
26. c) Before saying goodnight, our good conversation finished.
27. b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.
28. a) The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.
29. c) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake.
30. c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things changed.
31. b) Scarcely
32. d) It was only when
33. a) Having saved
34. b) On meeting
35. d) will visit

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) brilliant
2. b) serious
3. c) pronunciation
4. d) tone
5. d) cave
6. c) recent
7. b) launch
8. b) century
9. b) had lost
10. c) had started
11. a) had already started
12. d) had left
13. c) knew
14. d) ruled
15. a) informed
16. c) had I played

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) weekend
2. a) show off his swimming skills to his friends
3. c) crowded
4. b) scolding
5. d) keen and impatient
6. a) attentive
7. c) less skillful
8. b) much training

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- c) تلهم حياة طه حسين الكاتب المصري العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.

٢- b) يعتبر التعليم حجر الأساس لتحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمي.

٣- d) لماذا لم نعد نفكر في جمال الطبيعة أو نتوقف للاستمتاع بمنظر جذاب؟ هل غيرت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فعلاً طبيعتنا وطريقة تفكيرنا؟

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) Young people's interest in violent films is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all sociologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime rate.
2. a) Many newspaper and TV correspondents work in dangerous places, such as war and disaster areas with the aim of transmitting the current news and events to readers and viewers all over the world.
3. d) Many young people don't believe that literature can play a role in developing society and pushing it forward. This led to a decrease in the sales of novels and books of poems.

King Lear Exercises (Act iv-, Scene vi)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) recognized
2. b) judge
3. c) sense
4. d) up
5. c) prisoner
6. b) tempted
7. a) battle
8. c) drums
9. b) nonsense
10. a) riches
11. d) stage
12. b) crime

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) education
2. a) interview
3. c) engines
4. b) tone
5. d) about
6. c) construct
7. a) had also been
8. d) had done
9. b) didn't sleep
10. b) started
11. c) took
12. d) until
13. b) learned
14. d) were
15. b) hadn't met

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) Panhard
17. a) what makes cars move
18. d) All of the previous.
19. b) factory in Germany in 1925.
20. c) 1891
21. d) Henry Ford's
22. a) factory
23. c) electricity

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) يجب أن يقدر الشباب نصائح وحكمة كبار السن العاقلة فهي نتاج خبرتهم في الحياة.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

d) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of security and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should avoid wars by all means.

26. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

Students' own answer.



UNIT 11 What a performance!

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) comedies
2. a) horror
3. c) fiction
4. b) adapted
5. c) animation
6. a) colleagues
7. d) demonstrates
8. c) lacked
9. b) version
10. a) mission
11. b) rescued
12. c) review
13. d) storyline
14. a) interviewer
15. d) typical
16. b) talent
17. c) scared
18. a) powerful
19. d) animated
20. b) review
21. b) version
22. c) got
23. d) ruled
24. b) off
25. b) survival
26. d) oppose
27. c) recommendation
28. a) behind
29. b) illustrate
30. a) surrender

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) is he
2. c) don't they
3. b) have
4. a) didn't
5. d) can
6. c) won't
7. a) has
8. b) mustn't
9. a) hadn't
10. c) isn't he
11. d) has there
12. b) It's very hot in the Sahara
13. c) I'm your English teacher
14. a) loudly
15. c) brilliantly
16. b) near
17. a) late
18. d) brave
19. c) terrible
20. b) hostile
21. a) hard
22. d) automatically
23. a) slowly
24. c) hungry
25. b) dramatically
26. a) He works hard.
27. d) Ali is always unlucky, is he?
28. a) The teachers in my school are friendly.
29. b) She looked happy last week.
30. a) There are many people waiting for the train, aren't they?
31. a) don't you
32. c) Everyone in your class is working hard.
33. b) will you
34. b) fluent English
35. a) well



Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) director
2. d) action
3. b) documentary
4. d) cruel
5. c) visuals
6. b) romantic
7. a) crew
8. b) genuine
9. d) won't you
10. a) didn't
11. c) isn't there
12. b) haven't they
13. c) greatly
14. d) seriously
15. a) accurately
16. b) quickly

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) help to succeed
2. b) personal contacts can always help you get a job
3. d) suitable
4. c) the company and the employer
5. a) is qualified and he/she likes best.
6. a) What a person can do at interviews
7. b) employee
8. d) your qualifications

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- a) كثير من الشباب رجالا ونساء مغرمون بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

٢- c) يمكن أن تصل مصر لمكانة مميزة بين الدول بالعمل الجاد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودا أكثر تقدمت مصر.

٣- d) الأشخاص المتفائلون هم من يرون أن كل شيء في الحياة جيد وهم يعيشون بسعادة بين رفاقهم ومن ناحية أخرى فإن المتشائمين يرون كل شيء في الحياة ممل وكئيب.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) For most people, drama is one of the most important means of spending free time. Therefore, producers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high cost of these commercials.
2. a) Experts believe that young people's overuse of mobile phones affects their health and practicing useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.
3. a) Many international conferences were held to reach a solution for climate change. However, it is still a serious problem which affects many fields in our life.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) harness
2. c) popular
3. b) windmills
4. a) right
5. b) partner
6. c) scenery
7. d) equipment
8. b) realised
9. c) war
10. d) animated
11. a) mistakes
12. b) owner
13. c) island
14. d) burning
15. d) recognise
16. c) harnessing
17. c) preference
18. c) annoying
19. a) all
20. b) to
21. d) gloomy
22. c) error
23. d) serious
24. c) to
25. b) disturbing

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) will
2. c) wasn't
3. a) can it
4. b) have
5. a) is it
6. c) does
7. d) shouldn't
8. a) shall
9. b) didn't
10. c) hasn't
11. b) Nour couldn't sing well
12. b) They often talk to their neighbours
13. c) No, you aren't
14. c) in a motherly way
15. a) quite
16. b) extremely
17. d) hard
18. d) surprising
19. b) terribly
20. c) extremely
21. a) well
22. d) freely
23. a) carefully
24. c) absolutely
25. b) incredibly
26. d) unhappy
27. d) study hard
28. c) I speak fluently English now.
29. b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.
30. a) The food looked perfectly good to me.
31. b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
32. d) will you
33. b) He carefully wrote the report to his boss.
34. c) won't it
35. b) Surprisingly

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) personally
2. d) scenery
3. b) hilarious
4. c) recognise
5. b) harness
6. d) animated
7. a) right
8. c) popular
9. d) haven't you
10. c) did he
11. a) isn't it
12. d) will you
13. c) badly
14. a) really
15. b) quiet
16. b) absolutely

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) 38
2. b) 8 hours
3. d) the woman who works at the factory
4. a) he needs to get to a show
5. c) around Philadelphia
6. b) likes to play on his knees.
7. a) meets all kinds of people.
8. c) brave

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- a) لكى تحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع عديدة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.

٢- c) يخشى الكثيرون التغير لذلك يعارضون الذين لديهم أفكارا مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل أراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن أرائنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

٣- d) فى الوقت الحالى لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الأشخاص السيئين الذين يفسدون شخصيتهم.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. d) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we are puzzled how people lived in the past without these technological devices that we use every day.
2. a) Natural disasters, such as earthquakes and volcanoes, are a chance to test the unity and integrity of any nation. The more cooperative people are, the less damage that these disasters can cause.
3. b) Cairo has become one of the most populated cities in the world. This leads to the complexity of the problems of housing, cleanliness and public service. Therefore, it became a must to build the New Administrative Capital.

King Lear Exercises (Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) trusted
2. c) invaded
3. d) take
4. a) trumpet
5. b) suffered
6. c) starve
7. d) cages
8. c) equal
9. b) forgive
10. a) guard
11. d) Poison
12. c) bitter

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) crew
2. b) version
3. c) documentary
4. d) scenery
5. a) to
6. d) oppose
7. c) will you
8. a) didn't they
9. b) aren't I
10. c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?
11. d) quickly
12. a) hardly
13. b) kindly
14. d) carefully
15. a) adjective

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) cutting down rainforests
17. a) plants and animals
18. d) trees and plants
19. b) false
20. b) are useful to humans
21. a) carbon dioxide
22. d) All of the previous answers
23. b) The effect of rainforests on the earth

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) وسائل الإعلام ممثلة فى التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة لها تأثير حيوى على الجميع فهم يشكلون الرأى العام لأى أمة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields, and we would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country cannot be achieved without hard work and patience.

25. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Students' own answer.



UNIT 12 Achievements and goals

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) achievable
2. c) entrepreneur
3. a) profit
4. d) recipe
5. c) relevant
6. b) set
7. a) business
8. b) charity
9. d) donate
10. a) highlighted
11. c) managed
12. b) passionate
13. b) president
14. c) range
15. d) progress
16. c) sensible
17. c) goals
18. b) dropped
19. c) related
20. b) make
21. c) specific
22. d) reach
23. b) in
24. a) possess
25. a) team
26. b) to
27. b) relaxation
28. d) over
29. a) benefit
30. d) unwise

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) who
2. d) whom
3. c) that
4. a) who
5. d) which
6. a) where
7. b) when
8. c) who
9. a) whose
10. d) which
11. b) where
12. c) that
13. d) when
14. b) , who I love,
15. a) whom
16. a) which
17. b) where
18. c) whose
19. d) which
20. c) where
21. d) that
22. a) who
23. b) at which
24. c) which
25. c) whose
26. c) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France.
27. c) Look! That's the boy punishing by the teacher.
28. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.
29. a) Do you remember the date when we have to submit the essay?
30. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.
31. a) whom
32. b) which
33. d) in which they studied
34. a) which has
35. b) whose colour is black

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) architecture
2. c) multi-national
3. a) individuals
4. b) profession
5. a) fit
6. d) record
7. c) to
8. b) gave
9. c) which
10. b) whose
11. a) whom
12. d) whose
13. b) which
14. c) who
15. a) that works
16. d) at whose

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) All of the previous
2. c) the year 800 A.D. in China
3. b) a kind of animal
4. a) is strong and can last a long time
5. c) animal skin
6. d) coins
7. b) gold and silver
8. a) barter system

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- a) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين فهى السلم الذى به تتطور البشرية وترتقى ولكنها يمكن أن تكون أيضا وسيلة للتدمير والخراب.

٢- b) أثبت البحث العلمى أنه هناك أنواعا عديدة من الغذاء لها تأثير كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.

٣- d) إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاهتمام بالآخرين فلا يمكنك التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذين يهتمون بالآخرين ويساعدونهم بحسن نية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) Many organisations prepare special programmes to train young people to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and that don't need big investments.
2. c) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, share their interests and games, and also develop the emotional bonds with them.
3. d) Doctors assert that a healthy life and practising exercise regularly are among the most important ways that prevents diseases. That's because this supports the immune system, which can fight diseases.



Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) afford
2. d) attend
3. c) competition
4. a) entry
5. b) described
6. c) finalists
7. d) arrangements
8. c) expand
9. b) filters
10. a) venue
11. c) outlined
12. a) access
13. d) crawled
14. b) joint
15. a) accessories
16. c) practical
17. a) created
18. b) keep
19. a) common
20. d) in
21. b) collection
22. d) made
23. a) stay
24. c) removable
25. b) complicated
26. a) promote
27. b) hide
28. c) with
29. c) accident
30. d) out

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) whose
2. d) who
3. b) which
4. a) where
5. c) which
6. b) whose
7. d) where
8. a) when
9. d) with whom
10. a) which
11. b) whose
12. a) which
13. b) made
14. c) including
15. d) I lent
16. c) why
17. a) whose
18. b) he bought
19. d) what
20. a) you put
21. d) B and c
22. b) what
23. b) owning
24. d) which tells
25. c) everybody likes
26. c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.
27. a) The village where I grew up is very small.
28. b) The pyramids, which we visited yesterday, are very old.
29. b) I spoke to the assistant who deals with complaints.
30. b) Mr. Ahmed whose car we go to work is very generous.
31. b) who's looking
32. a) which is on
33. d) who
34. b) exporting clothes.
35. b) which has got a Chinese-English dictionary built in.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) motivated
2. d) display
3. c) laboratory
4. a) effort
5. b) fruity
6. a) repair
7. c) trained
8. d) option
9. b) what
10. c) eaten
11. d) whose
12. a) which
13. a) which you use
14. c) who
15. b) who's
16. d) what

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Europe
2. d) cruel
3. b) She didn't let anyone leave without help.
4. c) starving
5. c) teaching young girls from wealthy Indian families.
6. b) she realised that this was the job god wanted her to do.
7. d) she didn't have much support.
8. b) all over the world

3 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١- d) أن تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يمكن أن يزودنا بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل فى مصر.

٢- b) لدى المستثمرين ورجال الأعمال المصريين مسئولية كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم كبير لمصر وفوائد اقتصادية معقولة لهم.

٣- a) يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا فى الغذاء نتيجة للزيادة السكانية وتعتبر الهندسة الوراثية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.



B) Choose the correct English translation:

1. c) Students of science, mathematics and technology schools (STEM) in Egypt win prizes in scientific competitions in which they participate, which confirms Egyptian talent in all fields.
2. b) The various crises the world has experienced have alerted out the importance of self-sufficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and greatly increased prices.
3. c) Taking precautionary measures in building sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuation of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.

King Lear Exercises (Act v, Scenes iii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) liar
2. b) tricked
3. c) up
4. d) law
5. c) stretcher
6. b) murderer
7. a) resigned
8. b) treason
9. c) crown
10. d) comes

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) passionate
2. c) conservation
3. d) competition
4. a) accessory
5. b) achieve
6. c) associated
7. a) who
8. b) wishing
9. a) to which
10. d) whose
11. b) that
12. c) asked
13. a) whose
14. a) where every room had a broadband connection.
15. d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) playing games
17. b) coming to new harbours
18. d) anyone
19. d) An ideal holiday
20. d) a voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy.
21. a) adventurous
22. c) contented
23. a) in company

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) لقد حاولت العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب، ومع ذلك، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على الدعم من مختلف المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية في العديد من البلدان.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) Egypt is famous for many amazing places that attract tourists from all over the world. If we exploited it well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can get from tourists coming to Egypt.

26. **Write an essay of about 180 words on :**

Students' own answer.





Act III, Scenes v-vii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) a traitor
2. c) cure
3. a) get
4. d) proved
5. a) authority
6. c) enemy
7. b) interrupting
8. a) stand
9. b) deceive
10. a) carriage
11. b) betrayed
12. c) loyalty
13. d) madness
14. a) kneeling

Act IV, Scenes i-iii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) revenge
2. b) rule
3. a) hungry
4. c) fallen
5. d) apart
6. b) for
7. a) camp
8. c) bleed
9. d) ruled
10. b) cliff
11. c) take
12. b) beggar
13. d) truth
14. a) bleeding

Act IV, Scenes iv-vi Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) valuable
2. b) take
3. d) edge
4. a) flat
5. d) cold
6. c) jewel
7. b) a cure
8. d) steep
9. a) edge
10. b) flat
11. c) valuable
12. d) steep
13. c) cure
14. b) wars

Act iv, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) prisoner
2. c) take out
3. a) tempted
4. b) judge
5. c) recognise
6. a) out
7. d) for
8. a) up
9. b) nonsense
10. d) battle
11. b) crime
12. a) stage
13. b) sense
14. a) riches

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i) iii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

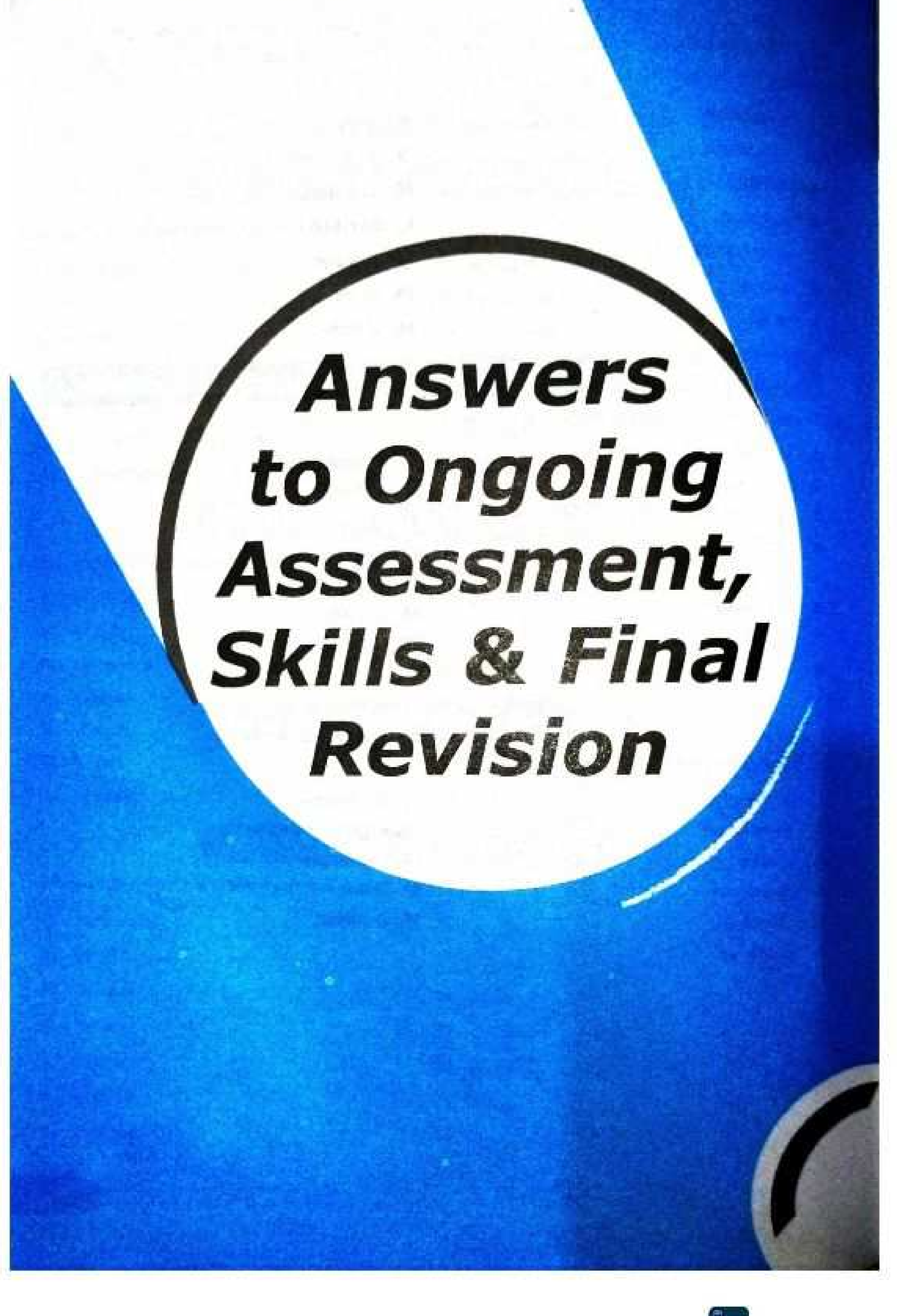
1. b) trust
2. a) trumpet
3. d) equal
4. c) officers
5. a) starve
6. b) invaded
7. c) suffered
8. d) invade
9. a) supported
10. c) forgive
11. c) took
12. a) cages
13. d) pill
14. b) ruler
15. a) officers

Act V, Scene iii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) stretcher
2. b) resigned
3. c) laws
4. d) treason
5. c) trick
6. b) tear up
7. d) murderer
8. a) liar
9. c) arrested
10. a) law
11. c) arrived




Answers
to Ongoing
Assessment,
Skills & Final
Revision



Living abroad

Quiz (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) struggled
2. c) host
3. b) activities
4. c) published
5. d) are you going
6. a) Do you want
7. b) standing
8. c) are watching

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) العيش في الخارج تجربة مربحة لأنها تجبرك على التكيف مع أشياء غير مألوفة لك.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

c) Living abroad has many advantages, as it enables us to make new friends and learn other useful languages.

Quiz (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) entry
2. c) summarise
3. d) presentation
4. a) storm
5. a) are wearing
6. b) am seeing
7. c) seems
8. d) cost

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

a) ليس من الخطأ أن يسافر الشباب للخارج ويعيشون بالخارج ومع ذلك لا يجب عليهم أن يلجئوا للهجرة غير الشرعية التي تعرض حياتهم للخطر.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

d) One of the disadvantages of living abroad is feeling homesick because you will be away from your family and all your relatives, and you will miss the family atmosphere, especially at feasts and on different occasions.



Al Adwaa Test on Unit (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) challenge
2. c) message
3. b) included
4. d) storm
5. b) permanent
6. c) to
7. d) are always buying
8. c) am waiting
9. d) Are you willing
10. b) prefer
11. a) am going
12. d) annoys
13. c) 'm thinking
14. d) tastes
15. b) is always forgetting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) respiratory
17. a) How to stop the spread of the virus
18. b) protection
19. d) To get rid of the germs
20. b) are one of the causes of spreading
21. a) Lots of
22. c) The Flu: causes and protection
23. a) possible
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    a) قد يساعد اختيار الدراسة بالخارج تنميتك الشخصية فالحياة والسفر بمفردك يعطيانك إحساسًا بالاستقلالية ويوسعان رؤيتك للحياة بشكل كبير.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    b) Young people think that their chances of success are better when they travel abroad, ignoring the chances that could be better in their country if they stuck to hard work.

26. **Write an email of (180) words on the following topic:**

    Student's own answer.



High-tech transport

Quiz (3)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) facilities
2. a) authority
3. c) connected
4. d) made
5. c) will have taken
6. b) will have been
7. d) will have done
8. a) will have spent

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

d) هنـاك وسـائل نقل مختلفة مهمة للاقتصاد ولأغراض مختلفة، بعضها رخيـص والبعض الآخر مكلف، ولكن هناك حاجة إليها في عالم اليوم.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

b) Although high-tech means of transport are very important for the development of any country, they may be used for negative purposes. For example, jets and spaceships may be used for spying and destructive activities.

Quiz (4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) alternative
2. c) significant
3. a) argument
4. d) responded
5. c) will have arrived
6. d) won't have watched
7. a) won't believe
8. c) have completed

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) لن تساعد وسائل النقل عالية التكنولوجيا فقط الركاب على السفر براحة أكثر ولكنها سوف تساعد البيئة أيضا باستخدام مصادر الوقود صديقة البيئة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

b) Every year, the exhibitions of cars and modern means of transport are held in the most famous cities of the world. These exhibitions often witness a great development every time.



Al Adwaa Test on Unit (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) expansion
2. c) solution
3. b) behalf
4. a) vehicle
5. a) option
6. c) about
7. d) will have been saved
8. b) will have arrived
9. c) will have gone
10. a) will have planted
11. c) will have received
12. a) will have spent
13. c) will be still working
14. b) won't come
15. d) will eat

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) massive
17. a) muscles
18. a) the telescope
19. b) Man is the most wonderful creature on earth.
20. c) the human body
21. d) Protoplasm
22. b) reveals the ambiguities of the universe
23. c) the brain
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    b) قللت التكنولوجيا من الجهد والوقت وزادت من كفاءة الإنتاج فى كل مجال. لقد جعلت حياتنا سهلة ومريحة وصحية وممتعة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    d) The Egyptian government declared an ambitious plan to convert cars to run on natural gas. This will save billions of dollars which are spent on important petroleum products. Besides, this will help solve the pollution problem.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**
    Student's own answer.



Conservation

Quiz (5)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) expedition
2. b) original
3. d) support
4. b) unique
5. c) exactly the same
6. a) almost as wide
7. b) slightly younger
8. d) used to have

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) تعانى الحيوانات فى جميع أنحاء العالم كثيرًا بسبب الأنشطة غير المسئولة للإنسان، حيث يؤدى تدمير الغابات الكبيرة إلى موت العديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

a) It is the responsibility of all of us, individuals and governments, especially the younger generations, to do our utmost to protect the biodiversity on our planet. The death of animals and plants means our death as well.

Quiz (6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) achieve
2. b) contact
3. a) inspire
4. c) exist
5. d) height
6. d) as frightened
7. a) far hotter
8. d) am used to

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) أن التنوع البيئى هو مؤشر رئيسى على صحة أى نظام بيئى وذلك لأن كل فصيلة فى النظام البيئى لها دور محدد تلعبه.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

d) During the last period of time, many centres which rescue homeless animals and protect them from the street, especially cats and dogs, have spread in many cities. These centres try to collect donations to cover the costs of their animals.



(Al Adwaa Test on Unit (9))

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) progress
2. c) inhabitants
3. d) career
4. a) solution
5. a) make
6. b) common
7. d) the same
8. b) slightly
9. a) far worse
10. d) slightly
11. c) used to have
12. b) exactly
13. a) more patient
14. d) used to be
15. a) less high

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) affect the whole creatures
17. a) build cities
18. b) animals
19. c) smoke and fumes in the air
20. d) does not exist anymore
21. d) All of the previous answers
22. c) changes the good things to bad
23. b) other creatures are living with him/her

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) تبحث مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ لسرطان الأطفال دائمًا عن الأشخاص الذين يستطيعون المساعدة ومن المتوقع أن يساعد المتطوعون في تعزيز تجربة الأطفال أثناء علاج السرطان.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) Some people object to using animals in scientific experiments, considering that this will violate animal rights, although using them in experiments may save the lives of millions of people.

26. **Write an email of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



The news

Quiz (7)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) photographers
2. c) admit
3. a) select
4. c) traditional
5. c) We'd visited Paris.
6. b) had taken
7. d) had left
8. c) had done

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) أصبح استخدام الرموز التعبيرية والاختصارات والمختصرات ضروريًا للمراسلة و يقول الشباب أن هذا جزء من الحياة السريعة التي نعيشها.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

a) Smart-phones are one of the most important inventions that have greatly affected the lives of people, especially young people, who consider their use an important part of their lives, but it keeps them from practicing hobbies and meeting friends and relatives.

Quiz (8)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) launch
2. b) emergency
3. c) involved
4. c) monuments
5. c) hadn't been put
6. a) arrived
7. b) No sooner
8. a) when

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) وفقًا لتقرير حديث، ينظر إلى «فيسبوك» وتطبيقات المراسلة مثل «ماسنجر» و «واتساب» على أنها أكبر قناة تنتشر من خلالها المعلومات المضللة والأخبار المفبركة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

d) A successful and responsible media reflects the state of society as it expresses reality. The role of the media isn't limited to financial gains, but it should also consider spreading the culture of social peace and creating a spirit of trust.



(Al Adwaa Test on Unit (10))

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) broadcast
2. a) brilliant
3. c) sculpture
4. d) channels
5. a) gave
6. c) amateur
7. c) had left
8. a) had finished
9. a) hadn't spoken
10. b) had never flown
11. d) On
12. d) hadn't been cleaned
13. b) We had been able to rent a car.
14. b) had prepared
15. a) Ahmed went to bed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) newspapers
17. d) both a and b
18. a) influential
19. b) Means of getting news and information
20. c) the internet
21. b) won't disappear completely
22. c) fewer
23. d) Electronic sources
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    a) مؤسسة رسالة هى مجموعة من الجمعيات الخيرية التى تهدف إلى تخفيف ألم الأطفال المصريين وهى أول منظمة تعتمد على المتطوعين وتخدم الأطفال فى الملاجئ.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    c) There are differences in the reactions of society members and the degree of their reactions of what mass media present. Some of them use logic in their reaction; others only receive the news, expressing their reactions through the mass media.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

    Student's own answer.



UNIT 11 What a performance!

Quiz (9)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) fiction
2. d) demonstrate
3. b) lacks
4. d) choice
5. b) won't
6. c) didn't she
7. a) isn't there
8. d) hard

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) عندما تقوم بنقد القصة، يمكنك قراءتها كلها، وكتابة تنقيح عنها بطريقة بسيطة. يجب أن تهتم بالنقاط الرئيسية في القصة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

d) Watching meaningful films and reading useful books have a positive effect on building the personality of the individual, evolving his thinking, being a good citizen useful for himself and his country, and achieving the goal of his existence in life.

Quiz (10)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) partners
2. d) animated
3. b) harness
4. d) scenery
5. a) don't
6. b) No, I won't
7. c) an extreme
8. d) happy

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) بدأت صناعة السينما كما نعرفها اليوم في أوائل القرن التاسع عشر من خلال سلسلة من التطورات التكنولوجية كما أن اختراع التصوير مهد الطريق لهذه الصناعة الضخمة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

a) People differ in their view of movies. Some of them see them as a means of entertainment and enjoyment; others see that they should deliver a message which contributes to changing society.



Al Adwaa Test on Unit (11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) versions
2. b) crew
3. c) animation
4. a) hostile
5. b) get
6. d) humorous
7. c) doesn't
8. b) haven't they
9. d) did they
10. c) hasn't it
11. a) well
12. b) in a friendly way
13. c) wrong
14. c) easy
15. b) aren't they

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) she had to find someone to look after Hesham
17. a) sick
18. c) She was pretending to be sick
19. d) dinner and supper at Mrs Reham's house
20. b) visit
21. c) Mrs Reham had to go out
22. a) Children weren't allowed
23. b) Nihal's embarrassing situation

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) تعنى وسائل الإعلام التكنولوجيا التى يقصد بها الوصول لعدد كبير من المشاهدين وهى الوسيلة الأساسية للتواصل المستخدمة للوصول الى أغلبية كبيرة من عامة الناس.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

d) All those who work in mass media, whether readable, audible or visual, should realise that it has a great effect on people. Therefore, they should care about credibility and raise hope among people.

26. Write an email of (180) words on the following topic:

Student's own answer.

UNIT 12 Achievements and goals

Quiz (11)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) recipe
2. c) relevant
3. a) highlighted
4. d) possessions
5. c) that lives
6. a) who
7. b) which
8. d) whose

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) إن وجود أهداف والبقاء ملتزمًا بها سيبقي تركيزك على الأشياء التي حددتها على أنها ضرورية للوصول إلى النتائج المرجوة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

a) Life without a goal is meaningless and worthless. The presence of goals in our lives ensures that we are still alive, as they help us achieve all that we wish in life to lead us to success in the end.

Quiz (12)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) attend
2. d) arrangements
3. c) expand
4. d) crawled
5. a) I saw
6. b) where
7. c) which
8. d) which

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

c) يعتبر النجاح هدفًا أساسيًا يسعى إليه كل الناس، فبعضهم يصل إليه بفضل إصرارهم وإرادتهم القوية، والبعض الآخر يفشل لعدم السعي وراء ما يريدون.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

d) Positive thinking plays a fundamental role in a person's success and excellence in life. This is because positive thoughts help spread optimism, which drives a person to work and achieve what he aspires to.



Al Adwaa Test on Unit (12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) specific
2. b) passionate
3. c) conservation
4. d) benefits
5. c) with
6. d) removable
7. a) who
8. d) that
9. b) whose
10. b) which
11. d) whose
12. d) which
13. a) about whom
14. a) which
15. c) what

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) Both a and b
17. d) Because she was clever and yet found learning difficult
18. b) disabled
19. c) Helen's troubles and her strong determination
20. a) normal
21. c) backbreaking
22. d) a poor sight
23. b) wouldn't have learnt anything
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    c) أثارت إنجازات محمد صلاح آمال الشباب فى النجاح ومع ذلك يجب عليهم أن يدركوا أنك لا تستطيع تحقيق النجاح بدون المثابرة والعزيمة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    d) The successful person is the one who moves, acts, walks, and speaks according to predetermined goals and tries to achieve them. As for the person who has no goals, he will remain in his place.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

    Student's own answer.



Comprehension Passages

Passage No. 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) more common than before
2. d) may face hardships and hard days.
3. b) be open-minded
4. a) Things are different from the person used to
5. a) disadvantages
6. c) distressing
7. d) all the previous answers
8. b) The pros and cons of living abroad

Passage No. 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) The appearance of cars, trains , planes….etc.
2. c) domestic Production
3. b) is inconvenient for bulk transport
4. d) 1000
5. d) helpful
6. a) is pollution-free
7. c) can carry people as well as goods.
8. b) we would invent other means that would be more modern

Passage No. 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)They are dying out at an alarming rate.
2. c) In danger of extinction
3. d) a and b
4. a) conserving
5. b) transportation
6. c) Humans
7. d) fur
8. a) protected



Passage No. 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) different
2. c) spreading newspapers
3. b) important people
4. a) optical
5. a) The television, and newspapers
6. d) an advantage to the TV.
7. c) The different means of getting the news
8. b) shopping

Passage No. 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) kids
2. d) Nabil's adventure with his magnifying glass
3. a) I advise every child to read this story to know more about the tiny creatures.
4. b) large and scary
5. c) took it with him
6. a) I think it will trap it in its web and eat it.
7. b) strange and different
8. d) Adventure

Passage No. 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Everyone has a different definition.
2. c) Becoming rich, famous, and respected at work.
3. d) Successful people don't plan their lives.
4. a) Successful teachers are those who know how to help students learn.
5. c) Successful people.
6. d) All of these.
7. c) anger
8. b) satisfied and happy

Passage No. 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) human capital flight
2. c) the causes.
3. a) sending countries
4. d) try to help their home countries while staying there.

5. c) The developing countries
6. d) all of these
7. a) The problem of Brain Drain
8. d) small

Passage No. 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) leads to confidence and courage
2. c) runs into an old friend
3. a) self-acceptance and trust
4. c) backward
5. a) Luck comes to those who work
6. c) luck
7. b) is no such thing like chance or luck
8. d) his efforts

Passage No. 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) students
2. a) two
3. d) Education at home and school
4. b) achieve
5. d) all of the previous answers
6. a) personality and beliefs
7. b) developing and shaping the students' skills
8. c) continues all throughout life

Passage No. 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) whistling
2. d) hand signs
3. c) refusal
4. b) are deaf or mute.
5. d) Using gestures as a kind of communication
6. c) use drums in jungles
7. b) red, yellow and green
8. a) mental





Translation

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

١. c) تواجه دول العالم تحديات مماثلة مثل فيروس كوفيد ١٩ وأزمة الغذاء نتيجة للحرب في أوكرانيا وتلك التحديات أثبتت أننا جميعًا نشترك في نفس المصير على الأرض.

٢. a) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ضخم واستغرق الكثير من الوقت لإكماله. ومع ذلك، كان من الضروري نقل المدن في مصر إلى آفاق جديدة في المستقبل.

٣. b) اتخذت الحكومة المصرية إجراءات لتزويد الشعب المصري بلقاحات كورونا. يتم تقديمها مجانًا تمامًا.

٤. d) مصر مثل العديد من الدول الأخرى تواجه الكثير من التحديات التي تتطلب تعاون جميع المصريين. التعاون والاتحاد هما العاملان الرئيسيان اللذان مكنا من حل المشاكل.

٥. c) اتخذت وزارة التربية والتعليم خطوات كبيرة لتطوير التعليم. لقد زودت المدارس ببعض من أحدث التقنيات للمساعدة في سياستها.

٦. b) يخشى الكثير من الناس أن بعض الاكتشافات العلمية الجديدة، مثل الهندسة الوراثية، قد تجلب أمراضًا جديدة وخطيرة في المستقبل.

٧. c) في المستقبل، سيحل العلم العديد من مشاكلنا. يعتقد العلماء أن عددًا أقل من الناس سوف يتعايش مع مرض السكري وأمراض القلب.

٨. d) تحذر الأمم المتحدة من أن مشكلة التغير المناخي لا تحظى بالاهتمام المناسب بسبب جائحة كورونا. قد يؤدي هذا إلى جعل حلها أكثر صعوبة.

٩. a) غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة. أنها توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

١٠. c) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا في دعم الفقراء في أوقات الحاجة. يقدمون الطعام والملابس. لهذا السبب يجب أن نتبرع بالمال لمساعدتهم.

١١. c) على الرغم من أن الناس في القرى اجتماعيون للغاية ويتمتعون براحة البال، إلا أنهم يفتقرون إلى المرافق الصحية والطبية ووسائل النقل الحديثة.

١٢. b) تعمل قراءة القصص على تطوير قدرة الأطفال على التفكير وتوسع نطاق معرفتهم. لهذا السبب يجب أن نشجعهم على قراءة المزيد والمزيد.

١٣. a) يجب على الآباء رعاية أطفالهم وإرشادهم لمواصلة رحلة الحياة بأمان. إلى جانب ذلك، تقع على عاتقهم أيضًا مسئولية مساعدتهم على النمو كمواطنين صالحين.

١٤. b) وسائل الإعلام لها تأثير كبير على عقول الناس في كل مكان. لهذا السبب يستخدمها المعلنون للترويج لمبيعاتهم وكسب المزيد من الأرباح.

١٥. c) لحل مشكلة الجوع، يجب على البلدان المتقدمة المساهمة في تنمية البلدان الفقيرة. إنها مهمة ستساعد جميع دول العالم.

Choose the correct English translation:

1. b) In 2022, Egypt hosted the 27th edition of the Climate Summit under the auspices of the United Nations, and many environmental experts considered that this conference represented the last chance to save the planet from the dangers of climate change.
2. d) The Egyptian government aims to increase investments in clean energy projects, such as wind energy and solar energy, and has begun to enter the field of green hydrogen.
3. b) There are many major national projects in Egypt, and these provide job opportunities for young people and boost the economy. And the most important of these projects is the New Administrative Capital.
4. b) Qatar hosted the 22nd edition of the FIFA World Cup at the end of 2022, and this is the first time that the event has been held in the Middle East and the Arab region.
5. a) The World Health Organisation is trying to fight viruses that strike the world, such as the Corona virus, monkeypox, and other epidemics, but unfortunately, it needs more funding to achieve this difficult task.
6. d) The development of education is considered one of the most important pillars upon which the progress of any nation is based. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is implementing an ambitious plan to develop education at various stages.
7. c) Some people believe that electronic books and newspapers will lead to the disappearance of traditional paper books and newspapers, due to the strong demand from people to use the Internet.
8. d) Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business, and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.
9. a) The government should help recycle things like cans, paper, glass and plastic by building more and more recycling factories.
10. d) We all have to cooperate to get rid of global warming, which threatens the entire world with bad effects, the most important of which is climate change.
11. c) People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
12. b) Poverty and social problems may be a reason for some children to live on the streets and become homeless, which causes a problem that charities have been working for years to solve.
13. a) Childhood affects a person's character throughout his life and forms the outlines of his identity. So, it must be given the necessary importance.
14. d) Many projects have been established on both sides of the new Suez Canal, which contribute to increasing our national income and providing great opportunities for investment.
15. c) The rate of development in a country depends on how careful and disciplined the people of that country are in their jobs. Therefore, punctuality is the key to success for everyone.





Additional Exercises Translation

A) Translate into Arabic:

١- تعد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم طرق التواصل مع الناس في كل مكان. إلا أنها أصبحت من أكثر الطرق المزعجة لنشر الشائعات والأخبار السيئة في مصر.

٢- خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية، حصلت المرأة المصرية على الكثير من حقوقها. فهي ممثلة في البرلمان وثلاث وزيرات في الحكومة نساء.

٣- مع التدابير الاحترازية المتخذة في العديد من دول العالم بسبب الفيروسات الجديدة. أصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية للطلاب لإكمال تعليمهم.

٤- يجب تزويد المستشفيات بالمعدات الطبية الحديثة التي تجعل عمل الطبيب مثمرا ودقيقا.

٥- تعلم اللغات الأجنبية يساعدنا على قراءة أفضل الكتب في العلوم والطب والهندسة والأدب. يمكن أن يفتح أيضا أفقا جديدا للترفيه.

٦- إن ممارسة الرياضة تعلمنا الانضباط وتحافظ على لياقتنا البدنية والعقلية. لذلك، يجب أن تكون جزءا من أي منهج مدرسي.

٧- لقد سمم الإنسان الغلاف الجوي وأهدر بحماقة الموارد الطبيعية للأرض دون أي اعتبار للمستقبل.

٨- الكلمات الطيبة لها تأثير جيد على كل من الإنسان والمجتمع لأنها تنشر الأمل والتفاؤل. من ناحية أخرى، قد تؤدي الشائعات ونشر الأخبار السيئة إلى العكس.

٩- يمنع التدخين في الأماكن العامة مثل الحافلات والمسارح ودور السينما والمدارس والمكاتب. هذا لأنه أحد أهم أعداء صحة الإنسان.

١٠- علينا أن نتغلب على مشكلة تزايد الجرائم التي يرتكبها الشباب في كل مكان. لقد أصبحت ظاهرة غريبة في المجتمع المصري في السنوات القليلة الماضية.

١١- لن يحقق الأولاد والبنات في المدارس والجامعات النجاح ما لم يبذلوا قصارى جهدهم في دراستهم. العمل الجاد والصبر هما المفتاح الحقيقي للنجاح.

١٢- على الرغم من الوباء الخطير الذي يواجهه العالم، تمكنت مصر أن تستضيف بطولة العالم لكرة اليد. وهذا يثبت قدرة مصر على فعل العجائب.

١٣- يعتبر نقص الغذاء مشكلة خطيرة تهدد العالم وتسبب المجاعة في العديد من البلدان. إنها نتيجة مباشرة لمشكلة الاحتباس الحراري.

١٤- ترشيد المياه من أهم الطرق لمواجهة مشكلة نقص المياه. لقد أصبح من الضروري مواجهة أحد تحديات المستقبل الجادة.

١٥- يجب على الشباب بدء أعمالهم الخاصة وعدم انتظار الوظائف الحكومية. وهذا سيفيدهم ويفيد بلدهم كذلك.

١٦- على مر التاريخ، ظلت مصر واحة للأمن والأمان والاستقرار لجميع سكانها. ترحب بالزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم.

١٧- بدأ الدكتور مجدي يعقوب مؤسسته للقلب منذ بضع سنوات. كان مركز القلب في أسوان أول إنجاز له والآن هناك خطط لإنشاء مركز ثان في القاهرة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Road and bridge projects in Egypt aim to improve the quality of roads to reduce the many accidents that lead to the loss of thousands every year.
2. The government has been interested for years in improving health care, and one of the results of this interest was comprehensive health insurance, which will provide all Egyptians with complete health care.
3. The Ministry of Education is interested in technical education. So, it has established many advanced technical schools to provide technicians in various fields of technology.



4. The government must take care of the farmers and provide them with all necessary services in order to reduce migration from the countryside to the city and to maintain food production.
5. Experts confirm that building on agricultural lands is tantamount to destroying the right of future generations to food security. So, the state has taken deterrent measures to prevent this.
6. Sociologists believe that studying peoples' cultures helps us understand a lot about their lives and traditions and leads to mutual understanding between the different peoples of the world.
7. Children learn through sports many values such as courage, cooperation and selflessness, which reinforce those values in a practical way.
8. We must find a solution to the problem of the increasing population, which threatens development in any country, in order to deplete it of any increase in income or production.
9. The Egyptian government insists on resolving its problem with Ethiopia regarding the "Renaissance Dam" through negotiations and peaceful means, while insisting on Egypt's right to the waters of the Nile River.
10. The project of building the High Dam is considered one of the achievements that proved the ability of Egyptians to bear the difficulties to complete projects that provide progress for future generations.
11. The Corona pandemic has increased the importance of self-reliance and achieving self-sufficiency in food, and therefore production must be increased and consumption rationalised.
12. Peace gives all countries the golden opportunity to implement many useful projects and save money spent on wars and conflicts.
13. Science helps us to be healthy, produce food, and upgrade every aspect of our lives, which confirms its importance in our lives.
14. Tourism is not only a source of hard currency and employment opportunities, but it is also a good opportunity to give a good picture of Egypt's ancient civilization and culture.
15. Everyone who visits Egypt admires the tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians, which set wonderful examples of national unity among different people.
16. Bad habits such as smoking, addiction, and overeating have bad effects on health, wealth, and morals.
17. Stress is caused by crowded streets, traffic jams, competition, noise, and uncertainty about the future.
18. Infrastructure projects aim to pave the way for attracting foreign investments, which are considered one of the pillars of economic development that Egypt seeks.
19. It has been proven that running your own business is much better than waiting for a government job that the state may not be able to provide for you until after a long time.
20. A person knows by his peers, so you should take care of choosing friends who push you forward and help you succeed in life.





Revision (1) (Units 7-8)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) confuse
2. d) accurate
3. c) decrease
4. b) ruin
5. b) across
6. c) kept
7. a) do
8. d) with
9. c) production
10. c) imaginative
11. b) determination
12. d) encouragement
13. c) independent
14. a) up
15. b) get
16. c) expansion
17. d) high-tech
18. b) networks
19. d) electronic
20. c) transport
21. b) host
22. d) facilities
23. d) silence
24. a) struggles
25. c) significant
26. b) extracts
27. c) temporary
28. d) concentrate
29. c) accent
30. b) entry
31. d) issues
32. c) regions
33. a) public
34. d) culture
35. c) drought
36. c) diary
37. a) general
38. a) rose
39. c) across
40. b) in
41. b) keep
42. a) to
43. b) interrupt
44. c) electric
45. b) storm
46. a) transport
47. b) level
48. b) style
49. b) private
50. c) character

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Do you understand
2. a) doesn't eat
3. c) am not wearing
4. d) aren't you laughing
5. a) needs
6. c) are not using
7. b) prefer
8. d) am not going
9. b) doesn't want
10. c) isn't driving
11. a) are you running
12. d) are being
13. d) is not being
14. a) is always knocking
15. a) is training
16. a) Do you think
17. b) Do you know
18. d) mean
19. c) are they talking
20. b) I am in Luxor only for a limited period of time.
21. a) the action is arranged for the near future.

22. d) He plays football regularly.
23. c) They are in the middle of the action.
24. d) The journey is boring and tiring.
25. a) I am reading a comic now.
26. c) will have closed
27. b) will be seeing
28. a) will find out
29. d) will have reached
30. b) will show
31. a) will have finished
32. c) won't have left
33. a) will rain
34. b) have fixed
35. d) will be using
36. a) begins
37. c) will eat
38. d) won't have been built
39. b) am going
40. a) will be sitting
41. c) will have been delivered
42. d) will have
43. c) will be published
44. b) will have got
45. a) won't have landed
46. c) offer
47. b) are going to have
48. b) are
49. d) Before June, I finish my new course.
50. c) How many people will have been dead before a cure for COVID-19 is found?

March Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) published
2. d) presentation
3. c) connect
4. a) current
5. d) performing
6. c) experiencing
7. c) am looking
8. b) tastes
9. d) weighs
10. a) The speaker is clearly criticising Leila.
11. a) will have seen
12. c) will have started
13. d) will have forgotten
14. a) will never speak
15. b) will have watched

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) we don't need them
17. d) Trains
18. c) his product
19. a) Ways of Advertising
20. a) spend so much money on advertising.
21. c) More advantages than disadvantages
22. d) hand out
23. d) aware of the companies that supplies the product

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) يجب تنظيم معسكرات صيفية لأطفال المدارس والمراهقين. فيمكنها أن تطور شخصياتهم وتساعدهم على التعود على العمل الجماعي والانضباط والتعاون.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

c) It is essential to reclaim the desert to increase production and encourage investment and local industry in Egypt. They are the most important factors that cause the economic progress in any developing country.

26. Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

Student's own answer.



Revision (2) (Units 9-10)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) causes
2. a) having
3. b) call
4. b) recognise
5. d) relaxed
6. d) pollution
7. b) about
8. b) into
9. a) common
10. c) profitable
11. b) species
12. c) expedition
13. c) inhabitants
14. d) scholarship
15. c) challenging
16. c) biodiversity
17. d) interviewing
18. a) source
19. c) broadcasted
20. a) editor
21. b) inspire
22. b) psychological
23. b) authority
24. a) emphasises
25. d) progress
26. a) achieves
27. b) contacts
28. a) talent
29. c) conservation
30. d) launch
31. a) creation
32. a) jobs
33. c) reward
34. d) benefited
35. d) given
36. a) investigators
37. c) truth
38. d) scene
39. c) modern
40. c) position
41. a) coming
42. b) charge
43. a) local
44. d) vehicle
45. b) inspire
46. c) definition
47. d) purpose
48. a) majority
49. b) broadcast
50. d) preserve

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) exactly
2. c) height
3. a) than
4. b) almost
5. d) a bit
6. c) slightly
7. b) a little
8. a) far
9. a) much
10. b) far
11. c) exactly
12. d) both a and b
13. b) used to live
14. a) size
15. c) much more
16. a) would go
17. b) doesn't
18. a) as
19. d) slightly big
20. d) much more difficult
21. b) far quicker
22. d) all answers are possible
23. c) past habits (actions) and past states
24. a) past habits (actions)
25. a) He used to be slim.
26. c) had watered
27. b) had been sold

28. d) had
29. a) before
30. b) had he signed
31. d) till
32. c) had ironed
33. a) before
34. a) had prepared
35. c) had finished
36. d) had learnt
37. b) had
38. c) After
39. b) travelling
40. a) understanding
41. c) when
42. d) hadn't done
43. b) sent
44. c) had lived
45. b) had he seen
46. c) hadn't fed
47. d) didn't order
48. c) We had had an expensive car.
49. d) After had paid the bill, we left the restaurant.
50. b) the train came at the same time of my arrival.

April Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) had been put
2. b) worked
3. b) unique
4. d) preserve
5. a) over
6. c) observe
7. c) admit
8. a) select
9. d) had never flown
10. b) had started
11. a) had mentioned
12. b) used to have
13. a) almost
14. d) Both a and b
15. a) had no sooner gone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) 2
17. d) both a and b
18. b) stands for
19. c) large pieces of land
20. d) wood
21. a) it can go
22. b) to determine the identity
23. d) All of the previous answers

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) إذا لم تبذل جهودًا كبيرة للتغلب على الفقر والبطالة، فسوف تعاني كثيرًا. إنها الأسباب الرئيسية للعنف والجريمة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) All Egyptians must work hard to restore Egypt's prominent position in the previous ages. Throughout the ages, it was one of the leading countries in the area.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Revision (3) (Units 11-12)

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) illustrate
2. d) construct
3. c) friendly
4. a) refusal
5. b) about
6. c) to
7. c) achieve
8. a) accident
9. b) annoyed
10. a) training
11. d) specific
12. c) relevant
13. c) entrepreneur
14. a) profit
15. d) recipe
16. b) setting
17. d) comedy
18. a) horror
19. c) fiction
20. d) goal
21. a) engine
22. b) measurable
23. c) historical
24. b) romantic
25. d) constantly
26. b) version
27. c) documentary
28. a) passionate
29. b) harnessing
30. d) animated
31. c) visuals
32. a) fit
33. c) sensible
34. b) filtered
35. d) review
36. c) staff
37. a) venue
38. b) show
39. b) made
40. c) in
41. c) over
42. d) channels
43. b) inspiration
44. b) romantic
45. b) demonstrated
46. d) highlight
47. a) records
48. b) accessory
49. c) devices
50. a) hostile

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) had
2. c) will you
3. b) didn't
4. a) would you
5. b) isn't it
6. a) were
7. c) aren't there
8. d) was
9. b) have you
10. a) shall we
11. b) would
12. c) mustn't he
13. b) scientific
14. a) aren't they
15. d) heavy
16. b) badly
17. c) bravely
18. d) unusual
19. a) seriously
20. b) late
21. c) extremely
22. d) incredibly
23. b) eagerly
24. d) extremely
25. d) hard
26. b) who
27. c) whom

28. a) which
29. d) whom
30. a) whose
31. d) all are possible
32. c) what
33. b) where
34. a) when
35. c) you sent
36. b) on which
37. d) all are possible
38. a) whom
39. b) which
40. a) that/which
41. c) what
42. d) where
43. b) which
44. b) who try
45. d) which
46. c) The book where he was reading gave him much useful information.
47. b) I recently went back to the town where I grew up in.
48. c) whose husband goes skydiving.
49. a) , whom I helped to install his computer,
50. d) , who has starred a lot of films,

May Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) demonstrated
2. b) lack
3. c) recipes
4. d) possessions
5. a) to
6. c) serve
7. d) will be
8. c) in a friendly way
9. b) terribly
10. a) whose
11. d) a and b are possible
12. c) where
13. b) shall we
14. c) hard
15. d) He is an incredibly amazing cook.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) offering extra health advantages in their customers.
17. b) "The healthy diet and the functional foods"
18. d) To maintain a healthy diet.
19. b) long-lasting
20. a) they damage people's bodies.
21. b) Practical and useful
22. d) all of the previous answers
23. c) People have started watching what they eat.

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) أصبح التعلم عن بعد أكثر أهمية خلال أزمة فيروس كورونا لأنه ساعد الطلاب على إكمال تعليمهم في المنزل.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) You need to be flexible enough to change your plans of study and work if attitudes change. The way to success is not easy, and facing difficulties requires changing plans.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

King Lear Exercises

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) cages
2. d) equal
3. a) liars
4. b) resign
5. a) suffer
6. d) starve
7. c) trick
8. b) law
9. b) rescue the King
10. c) Because he wanted to kill his father, Gloucester.
11. d) she felt sad for him.
12. a) Edgar
13. b) The British army won the fight.
14. d) were put in prison.
15. c) Edmund was hurt and died.
16. b) betray
17. c) revenge
18. a) interrupted
19. d) enemy
20. c) deceiving
21. b) kneeling
22. a) cured
23. d) jewels
24. b) Because there is a plot to kill him.
25. a) He removed his eyes.
26. d) money
27. c) they treated their father badly
28. a) sad
29. b) Because she heard that her father was mad.
30. c) kill himself by jumping over the cliff.

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Students' own answer



Final Tests

Test (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) determination
2. c) expansion
3. d) broadcasting
4. b) missions
5. b) cover
6. b) management
7. a) think
8. d) will have been married
9. c) as
10. b) had been
11. b) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, mustn't he?
12. a) I sleep on
13. d) What
14. b) ask
15. c) had swum

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) have enough evidence that it's better than conventional medicine.
17. c) Alternative medicine is useful for long-term illnesses.
18. d) optimistic
19. d) alternative medicine and conventional medicine can both be used effectively.
20. a) alternative medicine and conventional medicine
21. b) they need urgent treatment that take into effect in a short time
22. c) friends
23. b) they don't have enough evidence of its benefit

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية معتقدين أنهم سيشاهدون ثقافة مختلفة عن بلدانهم، ومع ذلك ، يجب عليهم التفكير في المنفعة الاجتماعية التي سيحصلون عليها.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) Although Egyptian individual sports, such as squash, karate, and taekwondo, do not receive much support, they are achieving great success. The state must support these sports to achieve more success.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.





Test (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) entrepreneur
2. b) encouragements
3. d) expedition
4. c) recipe
5. b) current
6. c) given
7. a) looks
8. c) almost
9. b) had had
10. c) interesting
11. b) who
12. a) was given
13. d) what
14. a) will be given
15. c) will be doing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) Chinese
17. c) crime-free
18. b) throw garbage in the streets
19. a) Singapore
20. a) Shopkeepers keep cool.
21. c) are careless and destroy the country
22. a) tourism
23. d) minority

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) من المفترض أن تؤدى مواجهة عدو مشـترك للبشـرية جمعاء مثل كوفيد ١٩ السلام و التعاون فى العالم. الحروب والنزاعات قد تقضى فى النهاية على الإنسانية نفسها.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) Preserving the environment requires great international efforts organised by the United Nations. This is due to the importance of industrially developed countries cooperating in reducing carbon emissions to preserve the planet.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

Test (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) adapted
2. c) profits
3. a) high-tech
4. c) independent
5. a) agreement
6. b) imaginative
7. a) will have learned
8. d) slightly
9. b) had owned
10. d) wasn't
11. c) whose
12. b) cheaply
13. a) They need repairing
14. d) When
15. b) seriously

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) are different compared to the past
17. a) related to the camera shots in films
18. c) Technology offers lots of new and exciting options
19. d) mysterious
20. d) all of the previous answers
21. c) a mix of shorter and longer camera shots than before
22. b) have begun to move more in each scene
23. b) have darker scenes

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) ستكون مشاريع النقل الكبرى في مصر بمثابة إنجاز هائل في العالم العربي. سوف ينقلوننا إلى الجيل المستقبلي من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) The Egyptian government gives young people loans with soft interest to implement their small and medium projects. This, of course, helps them become entrepreneurs who contribute to the economic development of their country.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Test (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) reporters
2. d) recipe
3. b) network
4. c) determination
5. a) pick out
6. c) into
7. b) 're always arguing
8. c) will be watching
9. b) far
10. c) had gone
11. d) more carelessly
12. b) paid
13. d) is seeing
14. c) have known
15. d) didn't go/had done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) sailors, architects and scientists.
17. d) destruction
18. c) legend
19. b) Egypt
20. b) Its practical function and architectural elegance
21. d) All of the previous answers
22. a) unbelievable
23. c) It would be a destination for tourists

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) تخطط وزارة التربية والتعليم لإنشاء مدارس فنية جديدة لمواكبة أحدث التطورات التكنولوجية. سيتم تزويد هؤلاء بجميع التسهيلات اللازمة لتدريب أفضل الفنيين.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) Through the Decent Life Initiative, the government is trying to significantly develop Egyptian villages. And by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside into a shape worthy of the twenty-first century.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

Test (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) scholarship
2. d) independent
3. d) donate
4. b) source
5. c) annoyed
6. a) substitute
7. a) right now
8. c) won't tell
9. d) much more
10. b) had lost
11. a) We'd better start studying harder this week, hadn't we?
12. c) cleaning
13. b) appears
14. b) 'm used
15. c) hate

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) it can't live apart from its community.
17. d) lay eggs.
18. a) co-operation
19. b) former
20. b) look after
21. a) Honeybees' life
22. c) pollinate our crops
23. d) worker bees

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) كل واحد منا يجب أن يكون لديه هواية في حدود إمكانياته. وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية إلى النهاية.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) The debate and disagreement between the members of society lead to the deterioration of all aspects of life in it. As for understanding and cooperation, they lead to harmony, which inevitably leads to development and progress.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Test (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** species
2. **a)** select
3. **c)** versions
4. **b)** broadcast
5. **d)** tragic
6. **c)** of
7. **a)** is being
8. **b)** will have visited
9. **c)** used to leave
10. **a)** had studied
11. **d)** carefully
12. **d)** discovered
13. **a)** none
14. **b)** when
15. **b)** Anything

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. **a)** globally
17. **c)** The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication.
18. **d)** harmful
19. **b)** feeling of isolation
20. **b)** the cons of the internet
21. **c)** wisely
22. **a)** profitable
23. **d)** all people

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث يأخذوننا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) The government is still trying to provide an encouraging environment for Egyptian and Arab businessmen to invest their money in large development projects. This is to create job opportunities and solve some economic problems.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Test (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) secrets
2. c) generations
3. d) unreliable
4. b) facility
5. a) preservation
6. c) accident
7. b) am listening
8. a) will have improved
9. c) would
10. d) had been
11. c) There's a fly in your soup, isn't there?
12. d) what
13. b) is used
14. a) is
15. b) to seeing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) tried to encourage environmental change
17. a) you do not need to be in the newspaper to help the environment
18. c) They can make small changes at home.
19. d) 13 years ago
20. b) her childhood
21. a) the problem of climate change would be solved.
22. d) global
23. c) 30

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية. ومع ذلك، يعتقد العديد من الخبراء أنه لا ينبغي أن يكون بديلاً للمدارس باعتبارها وسيلة التعليم الرئيسية.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) In the new education systems, teachers have become obligated to know how to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives even at the primary stage.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) passionate
2. b) temporary
3. a) progress
4. d) profit
5. a) keep
6. b) ignore
7. a) was tasting
8. c) will have been eaten
9. d) same
10. b) easily
11. d) where
12. b) hardly
13. c) reached
14. a) stay
15. a) see - will give

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) have the opportunity to travel to the moon
17. c) was possible
18. b) It does not exist at the moment.
19. a) £52 million
20. d) the rich
21. b) high-tech machines
22. d) decline
23. c) scientists

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    a) كانت الحكومة المصرية من أوائل السلطات في إفريقيا التي قامت بتزويد المواطنين بلقاح كوفيد-١٩. قامت وزارة الصحة بجهد كبير لتوصيله بالمجان.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    b) Tourists flock to the desert excursions spread in many Egyptian cities, which are organised for them by tourism companies. This is because of their desire to relax in an atmosphere of calm and tranquility.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

    Student's own answer.



Test (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) range
2. b) challenge
3. d) scene
4. b) transported
5. a) associated
6. b) with
7. c) Is it getting
8. b) will have replaced
9. d) almost
10. d) don't
11. c) when
12. b) knows
13. d) to be reclaimed
14. a) Surprisingly
15. b) will be waiting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) few
17. b) The television, the computer and the internet
18. a) not an effective
19. c) announce
20. d) they are responsible for the declining interest in reading.
21. a) watching a story is easier than reading it
22. c) spoil the imagination.
23. b) parents

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

d) لقد عانينا من سوء الأخلاق في الآونة الأخيرة. يشعر الناس بالضيق عندما يسمعون الكلمات السيئة والشتائم في الشارع.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

b) Practical experience has proven that knowledge is a double-edged sword, as it is a blessing if it is used for good and the benefit of people. Knowledge is a curse if it is used for evil and destruction.

26. Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

Student's own answer.



Test (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) harness
2. a) distracting
3. c) schedule
4. a) electric
5. c) prove
6. a) doing
7. d) aren't you coming
8. a) slightly
9. a) well
10. c) which
11. c) it is being typed
12. b) will you
13. a) before
14. c) to make
15. d) was/wanted

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) It had no pedals
17. c) Because it has no motor
18. c) bicycles
19. d) back
20. b) They have wheels
21. c) can be parked in a small space
22. a) It's environmentally friendly.
23. d) All of the previous
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    a) يسيء الكثيرون فهم المعنى الحقيقي للحرية فالحرية لا تعنى أن لدينا الحق أن نفعل ما يحلو لنا لأننا لا نعيش فى العالم بمفردنا.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    a) Our young people used to travel abroad to acquire experience and information that would benefit their future. However, they now look forward to immigration because of the problems they face.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

    Student's own answer.

Test (11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) contacts
2. b) charge
3. b) drought
4. a) accessory
5. d) ordinary
6. a) making
7. b) see
8. c) far
9. c) Buy me two kilos of tomatoes if you go to the market, won't you?
10. d) whose
11. b) automatically
12. d) where
13. c) rises
14. b) isn't used to staying
15. a) which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) smoother
17. d) decrease
18. c) renewable
19. b) dependable
20. d) All of the previous answers.
21. a) not polluting the environment.
22. b) Good roads and strict laws.
23. c) bus drivers will become unemployed.

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) يمثل الفن منفذا للتعبيرات الإنسانية والذي عادة ما يتأثر بالثقافة. فالشعر والروايات والموسيقى قد يساعدونك على التخلص من ضغوط الحياة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) The government is trying to do its best to improve relations with the countries in the Nile basin. Moreover, it is trying to solve the problem of the "Renaissance Dam" through legal channels, the most important of which is negotiations.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

Test (12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) suburbs
2. d) inspired
3. b) accent
4. d) device
5. a) minor
6. b) keep
7. d) likes
8. a) will be watching
9. c) had gone
10. a) fluently
11. b) whom
12. d) a year before
13. c) boring
14. d) a piece
15. c) No, I don't.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) Kind, honest and humane
17. d) both a and b
18. a) A cartoonist drew a newspaper cartoon about the story.
19. c) wounded
20. a) the old, slow, tired bear.
21. b) The president's guide
22. c) couldn't defend itself.
23. d) both the president and the public

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية أصبح مناخ العالم أقل استقرارًا فبعض المناطق قد تعرضت للجفاف، بينما عانت مناطق أخرى من الأمطار والعواصف العنيفة.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.



Test (13)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) issue
2. c) brilliant
3. b) psychological
4. a) majority
5. d) do
6. b) tones
7. c) are you talking
8. a) will have moved
9. c) had helped
10. b) aren't they
11. d) all are possible
12. c) was opened
13. a) fully
14. a) takes
15. b) much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. a) eight
17. c) the dangers of not having enough sleep
18. d) lack of sleep
19. b) prevents you from getting a good sleep at night.
20. a) our brains don't work properly.
21. b) setting a specific routine
22. d) they love to do so many things at night instead of the daytime.
23. c) sleep well

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) يعتبر تحصين الناس ضد الأوهام التى تسببها الأخبار الزائفة أحد أهم مهام وسائل الأعلام كما أنه واجب مهم للافراد

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) Charities help poor and needy people, especially those who live in slums. Therefore, it is a good idea that we all donate to take part in this noble mission.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) emphasise
2. c) solution
3. d) conservation
4. a) hostile
5. a) keep
6. b) determine
7. a) will have fallen
8. a) would always lose
9. d) had seen
10. b) specially
11. c) close
12. d) how
13. c) is believed
14. c) we saw
15. a) is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) People should make balance between meat and vegetables.
17. b) They should eat meat a few times a week
18. d) Meat rich in saturated fats
19. c) They have to take supplements.
20. d) vegetables is better than meat for building the body.
21. a) biased
22. a) meat can cause harm to the body.
23. b) They would lack a good source of diet.
24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) إن سيناء غنية بالموارد الثمينة فوق الأرض وتحتها كما أنها معروفة أيضًا بالأماكن المقدسة بالإضافة إلى الحياة البرية.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) Security and stability are two important elements to achieve any economic progress. Therefore, all societies and governments all over the world care for them.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

Test (15)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) entries
2. c) authority
3. b) unique
4. a) emergency
5. c) investigation
6. a) fancy
7. a) is he crying
8. d) will have raised
9. b) exactly
10. d) had seen
11. c) what
12. c) was having
13. b) a few
14. a) How often
15. a) on which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) superstition and its effects on man.
17. c) prevent you from
18. b) prevent evil spirits
19. a) fighting
20. a) excluded number 13 from all rooms
21. b) foretells death in the family
22. c) prevent toothache
23. d) demolish the idea of superstitions

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) لا يستطيع التعليم التقليدي أن يواكب القفزات الكبيرة للعلم فهدف التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ ولكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) Children are the youth of tomorrow and the hope of the country in the future. That's why the state must provide them with educational and health care free of charge. Every country that wants to develop must take care of its children.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

Test (16)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) scene
2. b) expansion
3. c) traitor
4. c) hungry
5. b) permanent
6. a) make
7. a) didn't use
8. a) will have discovered
9. a) am going
10. d) slightly
11. a) belongs
12. b) will have checked
13. d) will have finished
14. a) can she
15. c) will have left

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c) during sleep
17. b) A nightmare
18. a) feelings
19. d) more than a century
20. d) All of these
21. a) When they are disappointed and sad about something.
22. d) all of these
23. c) satisfaction

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) تم تحديث وسائل النقل العام في جميع أنحاء مصر. نتيجة لذلك، يوفر الأشخاص الكثير من الوقت والجهد نظراً للوصول إلى وجهتهم بشكل مريح أكثر من ذي قبل.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) There are many advantages to living abroad, as one can gain a lot of experiences and learn about other cultures. In addition to developing his abilities in self-reliance to achieve his dreams.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.





Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. c) about
2. c) annoyed
3. b) presents
4. c) far
5. d) reporter
6. b) source
7. c) challenging
8. a) didn't use
9. b) had studied
10. a) slightly
11. c) had been promoted
12. a) had been repaired
13. d) had lent
14. c) much more comfortable
15. b) used to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) the life of bees
17. a) They are active, wise and busy
18. b) leave no room between them
19. c) hexagonal
20. b) insects
21. b) it leaves its stinger
22. c) organized
23. c) The other bees stop working.

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) يعمل ما يقرب من نصف القوى العاملة في القطاع الخاص في الشركات الصغيرة. لذا ، يجب أن نشجع رواد الأعمال على توظيف المزيد من الشباب.

25. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) Modern means of communication have made the world like a small village in which news spreads very quickly. You can know what is happening anywhere in the world as soon as it happens.

26. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Student's own answer.

رقم الإيداع: 2022/22049

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم 362/2/12/104



Test on Unit 7

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive ....
   a) allowance b) encouragement
   c) reflection d) detest
2. The young actress was full of .... to achieve her goals.
   a) consumption b) conservation
   c) appliance d) determination
3. The new coach of the team speaks English with a French .... as he is from Switzerland.
   a) accent b) language c) note d) sign
4. The last .... she made in her diary was on October 10th.
   a) enter b) entry c) place d) trip
5. His .... confirms that he always goes to gym. He looks really fit.
   a) appearance b) determination c) avoidance d) facilitation
6. Algeria became fully .... from France in 1962.
   a) dependent b) nosy c) independent d) facilitated
7. There were so many people talking that I couldn't .... on the music.
   a) duplicate b) replicate c) investigate d) concentrate
8. The secretary put the conference date in the manager's ....
   a) diary b) book c) article d) title
9. The businessman has two big flats in Sharm El Sheikh, not to .... his villa in 6th October City.
   a) remember b) remind c) mention d) study
10. You must read the dictionary .... carefully to know the distinction between these two words.
    a) enters b) entries c) exits d) indexes
11. I .... in London for three weeks in July.
    a) stay b) staying c) have stayed d) 'm staying
12. Aya .... classical music to jazz and pop.
    a) preferring b) prefer c) prefers d) is preferring

13. I'm so happy Emad! My parents and I .... on holiday next week.
   a) have gone b) are going c) go d) went
14. Galal .... to go home right now.
   a) wants b) want
   c) is wanting d) has wanted
15. Mr. Hossam .... accurate. He gives the correct and true details.
   a) is always being b) always is c) is always d) has always
16. I .... that the situation is out of control.
   a) 'm seeing b) will see c) sees d) see
17. Samy and Waleed .... hard these days.
   a) study b) are studying c) have studied d) will study
18. I .... something outside. Are the doors locked?
   a) am hearing b) hearing c) hears d) can hear
19. I .... taking early retirement. This is something I'm thinking about now.
   a) 'm considering b) considering c) considered d) consider
20. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
   a) They are having a nice house.
   b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
   c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
   d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted out. The boy was whimpering in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their head in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?
a) Physics. b) English. c) Maths. d) Chemistry.

22 What caused the loud thud?
a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.
b) Some stairs fell over.
c) There was a fight on the stairs.
d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

23 The boys didn't follow ....
a) the school rules b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice
c) the traffic rules d) the right stairs

24 The antonym of the word "sternly" is ....
a) firmly b) severely c) strictly d) softly

25 The principal called for the .... to help the injury.
a) ambulance b) police c) other teachers d) the other boys

26 Finally, the boys realised that they were ....
a) right b) mistaken c) strong d) clever

27 The boy was screaming, so his arm might be ....
a) burnt b) healed c) infected d) broken

28 The writer wanted the boys to ....
a) follow Mrs. Fareeda's advice
b) follow the headmaster's advice
c) follow the elderly's advice
d) follow their friends' advice

29 Translate into English:

3

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريقة المثلى لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"The way advertisements can affect people"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 8

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The clothes company is planning a great .... of its outlets in Alexandria to sell more.
   a) deterioration b) decline c) expansion d) reduction
2. The leisure .... in this hotel include a sauna and a gym.
   a) probabilities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) availabilities
3. We do not .... this film suitable for young children as it has many violent scenes.
   a) consider b) accept c) agree d) expect
4. My secretary will call you to arrange a/an .... time to meet.
   a) intensive b) convenient c) extensive d) scanned
5. These books are also available in an .... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.
   a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic
6. The Suez Canal .... is responsible for running and developing it.
   a) Responsibility b) Authority c) Validity d) Expiry
7. Egypt has a lot of sports .... which make it able to host international competitions.
   a) probabilities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) availabilities
8. The .... number of people who took part in the experiments of the corona vaccine in Egypt was nearly three thousand.
   a) vague b) avoidable c) available d) total
9. Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very ....
   a) general b) private c) special d) public
10. The new clerk doesn't think that the salary for his new job is .... So, he is considering leaving it.
    a) awful b) horrible c) satisfactory d) unsuitable
11. I don't think you .... any problems when you land in Cairo.
    a) have b) won't have c) will have d) aren't having
12. By the time he graduates, Tamer .... all the necessary classes.
    a) will take b) is going to take
    c) takes d) will have taken

13. They will have lived in Maadi .... 10 years by next March.
    a) for b) to c) since d) at
14. In one year, I .... my English enough to have a longer conversation with someone.
    a) improve b) will have improved
    c) will be improved d) am improving
15. By this time next month, I hope they .... the community centre.
    a) will be building b) have built
    c) will build d) will have built
16. We are already building a new shopping centre and we will .... it by 2024.
    a) have completed b) be completed
    c) complete d) be completing
17. You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she ....
    a) won't leave b) will leave c) will have left d) is leaving
18. Do you think you .... writing that report by the time I get back?
    a) will finish b) will have finished
    c) will be finishing d) are finishing
19. By next month, I will .... him for five years and I think he is reliable enough.
    a) know b) be knowing
    c) have been knowing d) have known
20. The project is going to .... before the deadline.
    a) have been completed b) be completing
    c) complete d) have completed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8



People of long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.

Then later people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of highway. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learned about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transportation grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 All the statements are true EXCEPT "..................".

a) As trade and transportation grew, the population of river settlements also grew.
b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisation.
c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of great civilisation.
d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.

22 The word cultivate can best be replaced with ....

a) grow b) obtain c) look for d) buy

23 The BEST title for this passage would be "..................".

a) The river water
b) The river cities
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers

24 Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be ....

a) farmers and traders b) farmers
c) travellers d) sailors

25 The people of long ago used the river water for ....

a) drinking b) cooking c) washing d) all of these

26 The early settlers use the river banks for farming because the soil was ....

a) fertile b) soft c) sandy d) muddy

27 Rafts and boats helped people to ....

a) learn about exporting goods to other countries
b) learn about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers
c) learn about transportation
d) learn about seas and rivers around the world

28 The land isn't as fertile as in the past because ....

a) it isn't used by farmers

b) modern technology has replaced traditional farming

c) there is no more flood

d) there is no water in seas and rivers

29 **Translate into English:**

3

- قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمى يصعب الوصول إليه. بمرور الوقت، تحولت توقعات وآمال العلماء إلى حقيقة.

....

....

....

....

....

30 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

- If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

....

....

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

6

"How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 9

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. This .... of desert plant is becoming increasingly rare.
   a) device b) species c) spice d) gender
2. Scientists and geographers went on .... to explore the River Nile especially in the 19th century.
   a) duties b) tasks c) expeditions d) picnics
3. Mohamed Salah has .... a great success as a professional footballer.
   a) achieved b) applied c) failed d) aspired
4. A serious problem can .... if you don't take things more seriously in your study.
   a) raise b) arise c) aside d) arouse
5. More than half the people means the .... of people.
   a) majority b) minority c) crew d) trend
6. There should be more laws to help .... our natural resources.
   a) damage b) reserve c) destroy d) preserve
7. Motor racing is really a .... game that attracts only adventure seekers.
   a) challenging b) simple c) fragile d) clear
8. To get some real .... from the exercise, you should continue for at least half an hour.
   a) harm b) injury c) benefit d) cure
9. Doctors believe that children abuse can lead to serious .... and emotional problems.
   a) physical b) psychological
   c) economic d) criminal
10. Up till now, there is no .... proof that life exists on other planets.
    a) negative b) doubtful c) positive d) valueless
11. Kamal is exactly .... as Nader.
    a) the same age b) old c) so old d) older
12. When we were children, our parents .... often take us to the children's theatres.
    a) are used to b) used to c) would d) should
13. After the trip, my brother was .... tired as my father.
    a) so b) almost as c) almost so d) slightly as
14. I liked the museum. It was .... more interesting than I expected.
    a) lot b) almost c) many d) far

15. This bag is .... than the other one.
    a) slightly heavier   b) slightly heavy
    c) almost heavy   d) as heavy
16. Tourists .... to dive in this area, but now they do.
    a) used to come   b) didn't use to come
    c) would come   d) came
17. You're driving too fast. Can you drive ....?
    a) far slower   b) much slower
    c) too slowly   d) a bit slowly
18. It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.
    a) more easier   b) as easy
    c) a lot easier   d) almost easiest
19. The dress is a lot .... than the shoes.
    a) more expensive   b) much expensive
    c) expensive   d) most expensive
20. Jeans .... in different colours, but now they do.
    a) are used to coming   b) didn't use to come
    c) used to come   d) used not coming

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. And it does not get tired. And it never complains. Unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Some robots can help explore volcanoes. Some robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned things and they made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Why doesn't the robot make mistakes, get tired or complain?

a) Because it's made of plastic.

b) Because it can't speak.

c) Because it looks like a human.

d) Because it's a machine.

22 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT ....

a) normal b) expensive c) perfect d) tired

23 What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?

a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.

b) To tell what a robot is.

c) To describe the things a robot can do.

d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

24 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?

a) To help make a sandwich. b) To help explore Mars.

c) To help read a book. d) To help tie shoes.

25 The author of this passage feels that ....

a) robots are helpful

b) robots are not necessary in our life

c) robots cause a lot of problems

d) a world without robots is a safe one

26 According to the passage, the first real robot was made ....

a) in 2000 b) in 1969 c) 61 years ago d) 22 years ago

27 The robot doesn't object to anything, so it ....

a) can be destroyed easily b) is different from man

c) resembles man d) gets tired easily

28 As the robot does what man orders it, it ....

a) doesn't get tired

b) is rewarded by man

c) has the same features as man

d) can commit crimes

29 Translate into English:

3

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا؛ لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء: إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا للأعصاب. يمكنها أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء والخلود إلى النوم بهدوء.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 10

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The CNN news station .... programmes around the world in many languages.
   a) consumes b) downloads c) broadcasts d) reports
2. My father got a position as an assistant .... at a new magazine.
   a) editor b) seller c) newsreader d) worker
3. Historians have not always .... about the exact date of Ramses II's coronation.
   a) accepted b) agreed c) expected d) explored
4. Yehia El-Fakhrany gave a/an .... performance as King Lear. All the audience like him.
   a) brilliant b) awful c) awkward d) terrible
5. Dr. Zewail went to America to complete his .... before settling there.
   a) affection b) education c) practice d) fiction
6. The .... with the new prime minister will be shown on tonight's news.
   a) interview b) criticism c) attack d) truce
7. There are many search .... in competition, but Google is the most popular.
   a) powers b) routes c) engines d) motors
8. During the war, the American writer Hemingway was employed as a newspaper .... in Paris.
   a) fighter b) advertiser c) announcer d) correspondent
9. My father believes that .... shopping is both cheap and convenient, so he buys most of his things from shopping websites.
   a) inline b) offline c) online d) outline
10. When my daughter apologised for her mistake, I felt a .... of regret in her voice.
    a) sound b) tone c) look d) song
11. We went to London last year, but we .... there two years earlier.
    a) had also been b) were being
    c) have also been d) would be
12. Although Kareem .... the test many times before, he was very nervous.
    a) has done b) had been doing
    c) was doing d) had done

13. Before I went to bed, I .... my friend.
   a) was phoning   b) was phoned   c) had phoned   d) have phoned
14. She didn't sleep until she .... her homework.
   a) had done   b) has done   c) does   d) will do
15. After she had passed her driving test, she .... a new car.
   a) had bought   b) bought   c) will buy   d) is buying
16. As soon as it stopped raining, the match ....
   a) will start   b) started   c) had started   d) has started
17. I .... you an email earlier this morning.
   a) sent   b) 've sent   c) had sent   d) was sending
18. The boy .... photos after the police had left the scene.
   a) was taking   b) had taken   c) took   d) was taken
19. I went to Belgium last month. I .... there. It's a beautiful country.
   a) had never been   b) have never been
   c) never was   d) never been
20. He knew that she had been crying as her eyes .... red.
   a) have been   b) had been   c) are   d) were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor Company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Which company first built only cars?

a) Benz. b) Ford.
c) Panhard. d) Duryea.

22 Fuel is ....

a) what makes cars move
b) a car production system
c) the price of a car
d) None of the above

23 What is an assembly line?

a) A way of making products.
b) A safe way of making products.
c) A quick way of making products.
d) All of the above.

24 The Ford Motor Company opened a ....

a) factory in Denmark in 1911
b) factory in Germany in 1925
c) factory in Britain in 1929
d) factory in France in 1931

25 The Peugeot car company started ....

a) in 1991 b) about 131 years ago
c) about 133 years ago d) in the 18th century

26 Whose idea was the assembly line?

a) Henry Ford's. b) Panhard's.
c) Frank and Charles'. d) Ransom's.

27 The cars causing pollution are those which ....

a) use nuclear energy
b) use electricity
c) use gasoline or diesel fuel
d) are used by children as toys

28 The word manufacturer is the same in meaning as a/an ....

a) machine b) consumer
c) explorer d) industrialist

29 Translate into English:

3

- تؤدي النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال، من أهمها: فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل؛ لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Young people should appreciate their elders' advice and consult. They went through a lot of situations in life so this advice is the outcome of their experience in life..

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 11

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although they are old, Ismail Yassen's .... are still liked by many people.
   a) fictions b) romances c) horrors d) comedies
2. My father doesn't like .... films saying that they can make people nervous.
   a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic
3. Scientists designed systems to .... the energy of waves to produce electricity.
   a) conclude b) include c) consume d) harness
4. The restaurant is extremely ...., owing to its high standard of food.
   a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting
5. The small company did not .... the danger that was involved in the new project.
   a) realise b) achieve c) recognise d) respire
6. The Nile passes through a rich variety of .... in some African countries.
   a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery
7. The children read the novel in its simplified ....
   a) type b) version c) episode d) animation
8. You must present .... proof of your admittance to the university.
   a) correspondence b) copy
   c) documentary d) competition
9. My cousin joined the .... of a large fishing boat as had always dreamed of working in the sea.
   a) staff b) crew c) cast d) group
10. Saudi Arabia is Egypt's principal trading .... in the Arab world.
    a) partner b) companion c) colleague d) consumer
11. Don't eat the whole chicken, ...?
    a) will I b) won't you c) will you d) won't I
12. She likes classical music, ...?
    a) isn't she b) did she c) does she d) doesn't she

13. They had a party last night, ...?
   a) didn't they b) weren't they
   c) do they d) hadn't they
14. I'm shorter than her, ...?
   a) am I b) aren't I c) have I d) don't I
15. Which one is grammatically incorrect?
   a) I'm really helpful, aren't I?
   b) Stay here, won't you?
   c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?
   d) Everybody is coming to the party, aren't they?
16. It's a pretty village, but there's .... anything to do here.
   a) hardly b) bare c) hard d) nearly
17. We all love our teacher of English because he treats us ....
   a) in a kind way b) kind c) kindly d) kindness
18. Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ....
   a) careful b) carefully
   c) in a careful way d) care
19. My daughter is .... in English and wants to work as an interpreter.
   a) the best fluent b) more fluent
   c) fluently d) fluent
20. How .... can a sportsman run?
   a) quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quickest

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Generally, rainforests are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous ways but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.



Rainforests have been called the womb of life because they are home to 50 – 90% of the species on earth although tropical forests cover 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated that as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day. No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose, they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of ....
 a) global warming b) cutting down rainforests
 c) high rainfall and flood d) global ecosystems
22. The species mentioned in the passage are ....
 a) plants and animals b) medicine and food
 c) plants d) animals
23. The underlined word "they"' refers to ....
 a) rain and water b) floods and erosion
 c) absorbed water d) trees and plants
24. How does cutting down rainforests affect the earth's climate?
 a) It leads to the increase of carbon dioxide.
 b) It causes more earthquakes.
 c) It increases the hurricanes.
 d) It decreases air.
25. The underlined word "numerous" is similar in meaning to the word ....
 a) similar b) different
 c) many d) few
26. The best suitable title to the passage is "................".
 a) The disappearing of animals and plants
 b) Rainforests and man
 c) The end of rainforests
 d) The importance of rainforests

27 Cutting trees can be the cause of ....

a) many diseases
b) food shortage
c) floods and erosion
d) man's poverty

28 Besides being called the womb of life, rainforests provide humans with ....

a) food
b) medicine
c) water
d) air

29 Translate into English:

3

- لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر فى كل المجالات، ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم. من المؤكد أن تنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Mass media - represented in television, the radio and the press - have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 12

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In order to succeed in your life, you must set .... and specific goals.
   a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary
2. A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
   a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant
3. Father says that we can't .... to go anywhere this summer because of his financial مالى problems.
   a) produce b) afford c) attend d) apply
4. All members of the team are requested to .... this important meeting.
   a) afford b) reject c) refuse d) attend
5. The businessman is a .... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.
   a) secret b) passionate c) specific d) heavy
6. There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife .... in Egypt.
   a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation
7. The chef of this famous restaurant keeps all his .... a secret.
   a) prescriptions b) recipes c) directions d) observations
8. The .... of the famous artist's painting at the gallery asserted his talent.
   a) show b) display c) present d) shape
9. My friend won the first prize in the art .... at the university.
   a) compilation b) accommodation
   c) consolidation d) competition
10. The young man is wanted by the police as a/an .... to murder.
    a) accessory b) device c) equipment d) outfit
11. A student .... doesn't study hard enough cannot be successful.
    a) which b) whom c) whose d) who
12. One should quit smoking, ... is very harmful to health.
    a) which b) what c) who d) that
13. They have three sons, all of .... are living abroad.
    a) who b) that c) whom d) whose



14. All the students .... to organise a picnic were discouraged when they saw the dark clouds.
    a) wish b) wishing c) wished d) are wished
15. This is the restaurant .... I usually go for my meals.
    a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which
16. The boys .... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.
    a) who b) who's c) which d) whose
17. Confusing topics .... are well-expressed can be understood.
    a) who b) that c) where d) when
18. The questions .... in the exam were specially chosen.
    a) asking b) which asked c) asked d) that ask
19. Shakespeare, most of .... plays were adapted to the cinema, is still read by many.
    a) whose b) his c) whom d) who
20. We stayed in a hotel ....
    a) where every room had a broadband connection
    b) which every room had a broadband connection
    c) that every room had a broadband connection
    d) every room had a broadband connection

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied. If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.



Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ....

a) coming to new harbours
b) coming to new states
c) going shopping
d) meeting people

22 The underlined word "one" refers to ....

a) the lazy man
b) the passenger
d) anyone
c) the sportsman

23 The best title to this text is "................".

a) Lazy people
b) Sportsmen
c) A passenger ship
d) An ideal holiday

24 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage:

a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment.
b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would suit the sportsman and his lazy friend.
c) The writer seems to like the sea.
d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy.

25 Activities on the ship are ....

a) the same
b) similar
c) different
d) boring

26 The writer seems to be .... concerning trying foods.

a) adventurous
b) timid
c) selfish
d) worried

27 The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is ....

a) unhappy
b) disappointed
c) contented
d) unconvinced

28 The writer likes to be .... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.

a) in company
b) alone
c) lonely
d) single

29 Translate into English:

3

- تشتهر مصر بكثير من أماكن الجذب السياحى التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول.
باستخدام العملة الصعبة من السياح القادمين لمصر يمكن أن نطور كافة المجالات الأخرى.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries however, terrorists are still getting support from various organisations to achieve their goals. Facing it is a global duty.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. You can overcome all your difficulties with courage and ....
   a) appearance b) determination
   c) avoidance d) facilitation
2. The children needed their parents in the race to offer words of ....
   a) discouragement b) persistence
   c) collision d) encouragement
3. Over 120 .... of birds have been recorded in the city's National Park.
   a) devices b) species c) spices d) genders
4. The army leaders met for the .... purpose of preserving the ceasefire.
   a) relevant b) hilarious c) timing d) specific
5. He won the first prize in the writing .... because he has a real talent.
   a) comparison b) competition
   c) culture d) conversation
6. The big rate of .... of online shopping hasn't been expected by even the most ambitious producers.
   a) reduction b) exploration c) expansion d) condensation
7. Planning a wedding party for over 1000 guests will be a very .... job.
   a) challenging b) changing c) affecting d) valueless
8. The sports channel will be .... the match live from Rome.
   a) rehearsing b) planning c) producing d) broadcasting
9. TOY STORY 1 is the first cartoon film to be made using computer ....
   a) horror b) romantic c) animation d) musical
10. Helping homeless African people is one of Bill Gates's .... in life.
    a) missiles b) missions c) businesses d) firms
11. He often helps other people. I .... he is a good man.
    a) think b) am thinking
    c) have been thinking d) had been thinking
12. Next April, Hany and Ola .... for 20 years.
    a) are going to marry b) will have been being married
    c) will marry d) will have been married

13. The kilo of cotton is exactly the same weight .... the kilo of meat.
a) from b) than c) as d) to
14. Hadeer .... very sick until she stopped eating junk food.
a) has been b) had been c) was being d) is
15. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
a) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, isn't he?
b) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, mustn't he?
c) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, needn't he?
d) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, can't he?
16. The bed .... has no mattress.
a) I sleep on b) I sleep on it
c) which I sleep on it d) on which I sleep on
17. The children .... in the classroom. They are sitting quietly.
a) are teaching b) have been taught
c) are being taught d) were taught
18. Well done, Hamdy! .... a clever boy!
a) Who b) Which c) How d) What
19. He did .... me if I had met my classmates at the party.
a) to ask b) ask c) asked d) asking
20. We .... better begin work now if we want to finish it in due time.
a) would b) should c) had d) have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Alternative medicine is not new. It is accepted that it pre-dates conventional medicine and it is still used by many people all over the world. I am unconvinced that it is dangerous, and feel that both alternative and conventional medicine can be useful.

There are several reasons why the conventional medical community is often dismissive of alternatives. Firstly, there has been little scientific research into such medicine, so there is a scarcity of evidence to support the claims of their supporters. Furthermore, people often try such treatment because of recommendations from friends, and therefore come to the therapist with a very positive attitude, which may be part of the reason for the cure. Moreover, these therapies are usually only useful for long-term, chronic conditions. Acute medical problems, such as accidental injury, often require more conventional methods.

On the other hand, there remain strong arguments for the use of alternatives. Despite the lack of scientific proof, there is a lot of anecdotal evidence to suggest that these therapies work. In addition, far from being dangerous, they often have few or no side effects, so the worst outcome

would be no change. One of the strongest arguments for the effectiveness of alternative therapies in the West is that, whilst conventional medicine is available without charge, many people are prepared to pay considerable sums for alternatives. If they were totally unhelpful, it would be surprising if this continued.

I strongly believe that conventional medicine and alternative therapies can and should coexist. They have different strengths, and can both be used effectively to target particular medical problems. The best situation would be for alternative therapies to be used to support and complement conventional medicine.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. People who approve of alternative medicine don't ....
    - **a)** have enough evidence that it's better than conventional medicine
    - **b)** know what conventional medicine is
    - **c)** like people who approve of conventional medicine
    - **d)** use it unless doctors recommend it
22. Which one of the following is TRUE?
    - **a)** Conventional medicine preceded alternative medicine.
    - **b)** Scientific research concentrated much on alternative medicine.
    - **c)** Alternative medicine is useful for long-term illnesses.
    - **d)** Conventional medicine has no side effects.
23. Which one of the following gives the synonym of the word "positive"?
    - **a)** Optimistic. **b)** Negative. **c)** Uncertain. **d)** Useless.
24. The writer of the article thinks that ....
    - **a)** conventional medicine is better than alternative medicine
    - **b)** alternative medicine is better than conventional medicine
    - **c)** alternative medicine and conventional medicine can both be used effectively
    - **d)** It is dangerous to use alternative medicine
25. The best title for the passage is "...............".
    - **a)** Alternative medicine and conventional medicine
    - **b)** People who are in favour of alternative medicine
    - **c)** People who are in favour of conventional medicine
    - **d)** The dangers of conventional medicine
26. Doctors don't recommend alternative medicine because ....
    - **a)** it has many disadvantages and affects health badly
    - **b)** it is very expensive
    - **c)** they don't have enough evidence of its benefit
    - **d)** it has a lot of side effects and is very dangerous



27 Alternative medicine isn't useful for acute medical problems because ....
a) such problems need urgent treatment
b) alternative medicine doesn't have effective elements
c) alternative medicine costs much money
d) alternative medicine can't be found at hospitals

28 Which one of the following gives the antonym of the word "coexist"?
a) To live together.
b) To live and let live.
c) To depart and leave each other.
d) To collaborate.

29 Translate into English:

3

- تجاوزت آثار كوفيد-١٩ المجال الصحى إلى مجالات أخرى عديدة أهمها المجال الاقتصادى. يعتقد الكثيرون أنه ربما أحدث نظامًا عالميًا جديدًا قد يمتد لسنوات عديدة قادمة.

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- With the news of vaccines for COVID-19, there are now hopes for humanity to get over this pandemic. But, will they be effective against the new species of the virus?

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Many people depend on social media for their trusted source of news"
Do you agree? State your opinion.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 2



40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of people with disabilities are trained to be .... and self-caring.
   a) dependent b) nosy c) independent d) facilitated

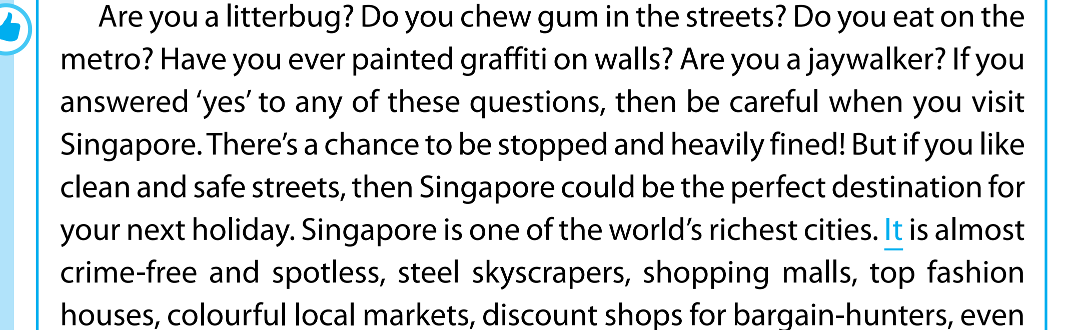
20

2. One of the .... tasks of teachers is making sure that all students understand.
   a) challenging b) changing c) negative d) affecting
3. The native .... of America, the Red Indians, are only 1.5% of Americans.
   a) pioneers b) discoverers c) inhabitants d) players
4. Do you have any experience that is .... to this baby-sitting job?
   a) unaccepted b) achievable c) relevant d) unreliable
5. It is believed that being a/an .... is a way of fulfilling your creative potential and earning money.
   a) entrepreneur b) employee c) trainee d) servant
6. The school offered students prizes of money and other .... for their good work.
   a) enrichment b) encouragements
   c) contracts d) efforts
7. Does the company offer any .... for employees with young children such as a nursery?
   a) abilities b) talents c) facilities d) probabilities
8. In 1910, a/an .... was sent to Antarctica led by Captain Scott.
   a) picnic b) flock c) expansion d) expedition
9. The WHO experts have been unable to trace the .... of COVID-19 up till now.
   a) reality b) source c) consequence d) purpose
10. Giving your kids too much freedom can be a .... for disaster.
    a) prescription b) receipt c) recipe d) treaty
11. Is that Bassem over there? He .... old and tired. Is he sick?
    a) looks b) has looked
    c) looked d) has been looking
12. **A:** Can I come over in an hour? **B:** No, I .... the house.
    a) will clean b) will have cleaned
    c) clean d) will be cleaning
13. The game "Matrix II" was .... as interesting as "Matrix I".
    a) exactly b) slightly c) almost d) more

14. They .... a lot of trouble before they finally succeeded.
    a) were having   b) had had   c) have   d) have had
15. I find this novel very .... It was well written.
    a) interest   b) interested   c) interesting   d) interestingly
16. The car that we were in had had GPS, but the man .... was driving didn't know.
    a) whom   b) who   c) whose   d) what
17. During my illness, I .... the medicine every morning and evening.
    a) was given   b) had been given
    c) was giving   d) gave
18. Science fiction novels are .... most children enjoy reading.
    a) where   b) who   c) which   d) what
19. The coach was .... with the team's performance.
    a) being disappointed   b) disappoint
    c) disappointed   d) disappointing
20. The students .... their exam results next week.
    a) will be given   b) are given
    c) will have been given   d) may give

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Litterbugs are people who love to litter around. Litterbugs are also who do not take the responsibility or to play their role in the society to take care of the environment. Why are they litterbugs? Litterbugs are the persons who had lack of awareness, not bothered about the environment and too lazy just to walk a few steps to the trash can. What are the effects of litterbugs? One of the major effect is it will destroy the image of our beautiful country which eventually affects the tourism of our country.



Are you a litterbug? Do you chew gum in the streets? Do you eat on the metro? Have you ever painted graffiti on walls? Are you a jaywalker? If you answered 'yes' to any of these questions, then be careful when you visit Singapore. There's a chance to be stopped and heavily fined! But if you like clean and safe streets, then Singapore could be the perfect destination for your next holiday. Singapore is one of the world's richest cities. It is almost crime-free and spotless, steel skyscrapers, shopping malls, top fashion houses, colourful local markets, discount shops for bargain-hunters, even air-conditioned walkways are all part of the magic of Singapore.

The majority of Singaporeans are of Chinese origin, but there are ethnic groups from India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Thailand living there. It is not surprising that the island has many interesting districts. Calligraphers and fortunetellers can be found in Chinatown. Little India has spices, silverware, brassware and jasmine garlands. Malay villages display the traditional lifestyle of Malays and their arts and crafts such as batik painting and kite-making.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Most Singaporeans are of .... origin.
   - a) Indian
   - b) Thai
   - c) Chinese
   - d) European
22. Singapore is almost ....
   - a) crime-free
   - b) tax-free
   - c) free
   - d) shop-free
23. The law in Singapore fines those who ....
   - a) like clean and safe streets
   - b) throw garbage in the streets
   - c) visit the country
   - d) speak loudly to each other
24. The underlined words "the island" refer to ....
   - a) India
   - b) Malaysia
   - c) Chinese
   - d) Singapore
25. Those who don't take care of the environment are ....
   - a) responsible
   - b) litterbugs
   - c) crime-free
   - d) fortunetellers
26. The writer of this article wants people to ....
   - a) take care of the environment
   - b) have trashcans in their homes
   - c) leave their rubbish in the street
   - d) be litterbugs
27. The synonym of the word "origin" is ....
   - a) ending point
   - b) people
   - c) source
   - d) population
28. Chewing gums in the streets is .... in Singapore.
   - a) allowed
   - b) permitted
   - c) prohibited
   - d) preferable

29 Translate into English:

3

- يتطلب الحفاظ على البيئة جهودا دولية كبيرة يتم تنظيمها عن طريق الأمم المتحدة، وذلك لأهمية تعاون الدول المتقدمة صناعيًا فى خفض انبعاثات الكربون للحفاظ على الكوكب.

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Hosting the World Handball Men's Championship during the corona pandemic showed the greatness of Egypt. It also paved the way for other sports international competitions.

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The company sent a driver to pick me .... from the airport at my arrival.
   a) up b) on c) away d) for
2. Mr. Essam has managed to .... his young good looks through a healthy lifestyle.
   a) damage b) pollute c) comply d) preserve
3. The new computer company set reasonable and .... goals for their first year.
   a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary
4. A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
   a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant
5. The film "*Jurassic Park*" is .... from a Michael Crichton novel of the same name.
   a) attributed b) adapted c) applied d) inhibited
6. As a result of the hard economic situation, there was a decrease in car sales .... this year.
   a) modules b) losses c) profits d) branches
7. You would be the first to .... that she is very difficult to work with.
   a) prohibit b) admit c) exhibit d) inhabit
8. The methods the Ministry of Education use to test secondary school students are very ....
   a) high-tech b) outdated c) recent d) old-fashioned
9. The Ministry of Monuments works to .... our most precious historic buildings.
   a) damage b) preserve c) waste d) harness
10. The new machine must have its own .... power supply.
    a) dependent b) intended c) independent d) prohibited
11. Samah and Farah .... funny right now. They keep telling me funny jokes.
    a) were b) are c) are being d) had been
12. By the end of the week, we .... 30 new English words.
    a) will have learned b) will be learning
    c) will be learned d) are learning

13 My brother has a .... softer voice than anyone in the class.

a) slight b) more
c) farther d) slightly

14 Magdy .... that car for 5 years before he sold it.

a) had been owning b) had owned
c) was owning d) owns

15 She was in grade 3 last year, ... she?

a) weren't b) won't c) didn't d) wasn't

16 This is the story of a man .... wife suddenly loses her memory.

a) who b) that c) whose d) whom

17 Industrial goods are often produced .... in developing countries.

a) cheapest b) cheaply
c) cheap d) more cheap

18 What a state my shoes are in! ....

a) They need repairing b) They need to repair
c) It needs repair d) It needs to be repaired

19 .... was it that you realised you had lost your keys?

a) Who b) What c) Which d) When

20 I don't think that Hany has .... travelled on a plane.

a) before b) still c) ever d) never

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming.



Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer granted, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams; they occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the person or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream does is to give them an outlet.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Changes in the brain take place ....

a) by day b) at night c) during sleep d) during meals

22 .... is a terrible dream.

a) A day-dream b) A nightmare
c) A dreamer d) Dreamland

23 The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) dreams b) dreamers c) nightmares d) feelings

24 We have been studying dreams for ....

a) more than a century b) 300 years
c) centuries d) 50 years

25 Which one of the following doesn't give the meaning of "upset"?

a) Worried. b) Sad. c) Unhappy. d) Optimistic.

26 The person's dreams are affected by ....

a) culture b) wealth c) health d) education

27 Which of the following aren't concerned to study dreams?

a) Physicians. b) Politicians.
c) Scientists. d) Psychologists.

28 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) Dreams and their effect
b) Nightmares
c) People who study dreams
d) The consequences of dreams

29 Translate into English:

3

- تولى الحكومة اهتماما كبيرًا للشباب عن طريق إعطائهم قروضا بفوائد ميسرة لتنفيذ مشروعاتهم الصغيرة والمتوسطة. بتلك الطريقة تساعدهم على أن يصبحوا رواد أعمال يساهمون فى التطور الاقتصادى لبلدهم.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Egypt's big transport projects will be a tremendous progress in the Arab world. They will move us to the future generation of environmentally-friendly means of transport.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"A review of a film you watched and liked much"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 4

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. One of the challenges of travelling abroad is that you must .... used to a different culture.
   a) grow b) get c) fall d) turn
2. There was much .... of online shopping sites during COVID-19 pandemic.
   a) damage b) application c) expansion d) pressure
3. The young athlete was awarded a .... to study at Boston University and play for its team.
   a) race b) fair c) scholarship d) tournament
4. Investors have made a 14% .... in just 3 months which was a great success.
   a) profit b) loss c) charity d) list
5. The BBC News hires a big team of .... in most countries of the world to cover the incidents.
   a) producers b) fans c) reporters d) consumers
6. The hard-working secretary was liked both by her .... and her bosses at the company.
   a) classmates b) colleagues c) partners d) interviewees
7. I didn't read the .... carefully, so that my children didn't like the pizza I cooked.
   a) prescription b) receipt c) article d) recipe
8. With the rising prices, many families have been .... to pay their bills.
   a) struggling b) delighting c) surprising d) copying
9. The National Bank has an information .... linked to more than 50 branches.
   a) route b) network c) skyline d) access
10. Because of the bad weather, the controllers were unable to make an accurate .... of the ship's position.
    a) prohibition b) consumption
    c)determination d) courage
11. They don't get on well. They ....
    a) argue b) 're always arguing
    c) arguing d) never argue

12. This time next week, I .... the final match in Spain.
 a) will watch b) will have watched
 c) will be watching d) watch
13. Your house is .... more beautiful than mine.
 a) bit b) far c) little d) almost
14. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody .... to bed.
 a) was going b) have gone c) had gone d) went
15. This is a .... report.
 a) monthly way b) per month c) month d) monthly
16. Salma came to the party in patched jeans, which surprised the guests, most of .... were wearing evening dress.
 a) that b) them c) whom d) who
17. Ola drives .... than her sister.
 a) careless b) carelessly c) more careless d) more carelessly
18. It's time you .... a visit to your grandparents.
 a) will pay b) paid c) should pay d) pay
19. My sister .... the doctor later today about her stomachache.
 a) sees b) has seen c) was seeing d) is seeing
20. Tim is my closest friend - we .... each other for a long time.
 a) were knowing b) knew
 c) have known d) have been knowing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The earliest lighthouses were simply bonfires built on hillsides to guide ships. The first lighthouse, located on the ancient island of Pharos, served the old-world city of Alexandria in 285 BC.

Of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was the only one that had a practical function in addition to its architectural elegance. For sailors, it ensured a safe return to the Great Harbour. For architects, it was the tallest building on earth at its time.

And for scientists, it was the mysterious mirror that fascinated them most. The reflection of the sun's rays could be seen more than 50 kilometres offshore. Legend has it that the mirror was also used to detect and burn enemy ships before they could reach the shore.

Shortly after the death of Alexander the Great, his commander Ptolemy Soter assumed power and established his capital in Alexandria. Off the city's coast lay the small island of Pharos. Due to the dangerous sailing conditions, the construction of a lighthouse was seen as being necessary.

For centuries, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was used to mark the harbour, using fire at night and reflecting the sun's rays during the day. It was even shown on Roman coins, just as famous monuments are depicted on currency today.

Although the Lighthouse of Alexandria did not survive to this present day, it left behind its influence. From an architectural standpoint, the monument has been used as a model for many prototypes along the Mediterranean.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. The lighthouse has a great importance for ....
 a) sailors, architects and scientists. b) astronomers
 c) psychologists d) Romans and ancient Egyptians
22. The antonym of the word "construction" is ....
 a) erection b) manufacture
 c) structure d) destruction
23. The old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events is ....
 a) wonder b) lighthouse c) legend d) mystery
24. The first lighthouse was built in ....
 a) England b) Egypt c) Asia d) India
25. What is the best title for the passage?
 a) The lighthouse, as one of the wonders.
 b) Alexander the Great and the lighthouse.
 c) The effect of the lighthouse at present.
 d) The world's interest in the lighthouse.
26. What was the Lighthouse of Alexandria used for?
 a) Marking the harbour.
 b) Using fire at night.
 c) Reflecting the sun's rays during the day.
 d) All of these.
27. Which of the following didn't have an interest in the old lighthouse?
 a) Sailors. b) Architects.
 c) Shopkeepers. d) Scientists.
28. The synonym of the word "established" is ....
 a) close down b) founded
 c) demolished d) set off

29 Translate into English:

3

- تحاول الحكومة تطوير القرى المصرية بتوفير التسهيلات الضرورية للوصول بالريف المصرى إلى مستوى معيشى لائق. لهذا أطلقت مبادرة القرن الحادى والعشرين «حياة كريمة» للشعب.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- The Ministry of Education has an ambitious plan to establish a large number of new technical schools to cope with the latest technological advance in the world.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Spreading the culture of volunteering and donation can help solve our social problems."

....

....

....

....

....

....

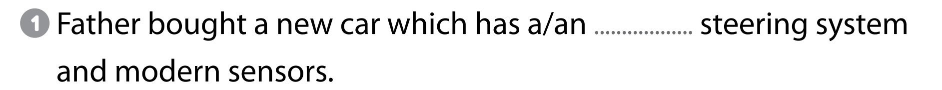
....

....

....

....

....



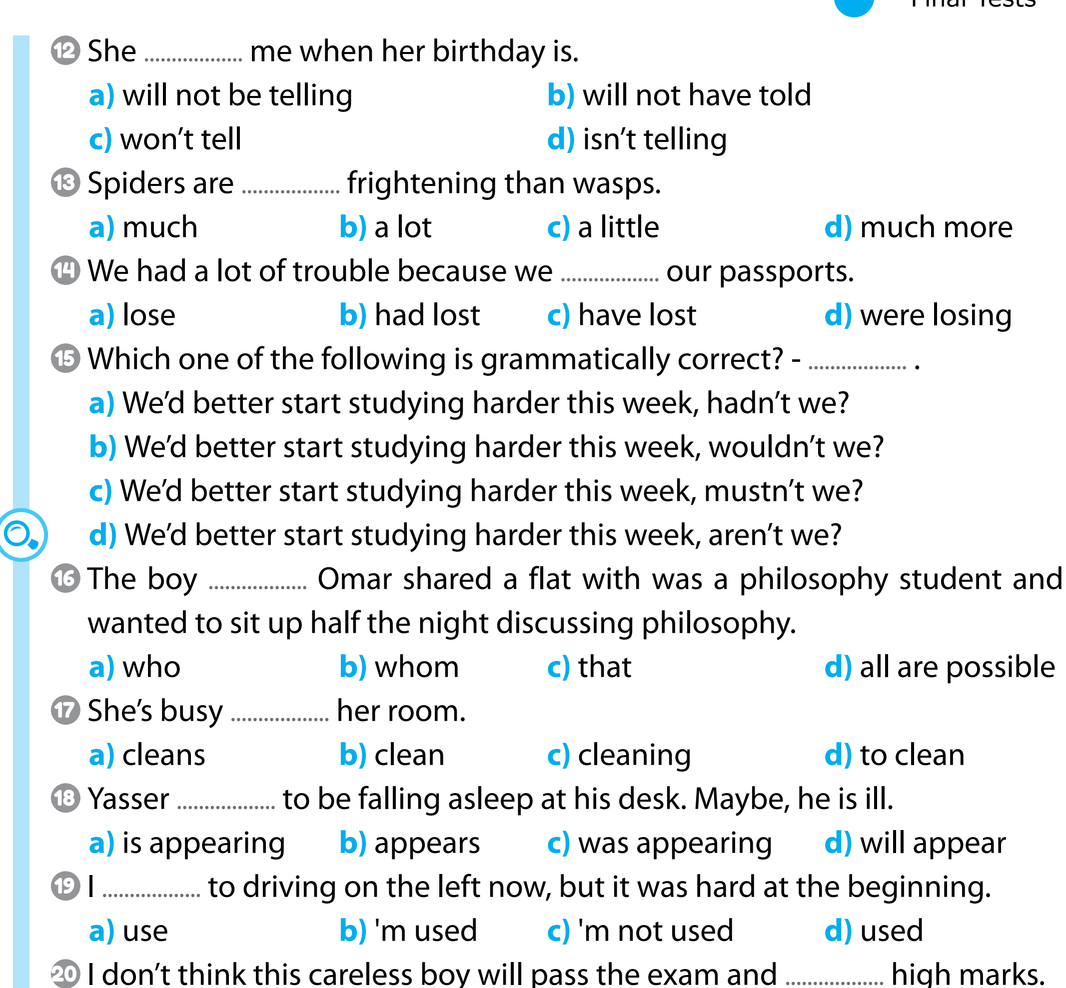
Final Test 5

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. Father bought a new car which has a/an .... steering system and modern sensors.
   a) outdated b) degraded c) old-fashioned d) high-tech
2. The steep road was .... for even the most experienced drivers.
   a) changing b) reflecting c) challenging d) associating
3. The islands near the Caribbean are characterised by high .... and so, they attract tourists.
   a) activity b) climate c) biodiversity d) similarity
4. The Egyptian Ful Medams is based on an ancient Egyptian .... thousands of years old.
   a) prescription b) study c) research d) recipe
5. The young scholar obtained a .... to get her PhD at Oxford University.
   a) scholarship b) championship
   c) hardship d) friendship
6. The young man's salary enabled him to become economically .... of his family.
   a) available b) dependable c) reusable d) independent
7. The brave soldier was shot down during a .... behind enemy lines.
   a) picnic b) fiction c) mission d) ride
8. It is a good idea to .... some of your free time to charity work.
   a) request b) perplex c) retrieve d) donate
9. There are several reasons for the .... political situation in Yemen.
   a) wave b) drought c) current d) imaginary
10. It is better to deal with some problems at .... or they will get more difficult.
    a) purpose b) source c) site d) location
11. The girl is watering the plants ....
    a) right now b) every day c) since 2 o'clock d) next year



12. She .... me when her birthday is.
    a) will not be telling b) will not have told
    c) won't tell d) isn't telling
13. Spiders are .... frightening than wasps.
    a) much b) a lot c) a little d) much more
14. We had a lot of trouble because we .... our passports.
    a) lose b) had lost c) have lost d) were losing
15. Which one of the following is grammatically correct? - ....
    a) We'd better start studying harder this week, hadn't we?
    b) We'd better start studying harder this week, wouldn't we?
    c) We'd better start studying harder this week, mustn't we?
    d) We'd better start studying harder this week, aren't we?
16. The boy .... Omar shared a flat with was a philosophy student and wanted to sit up half the night discussing philosophy.
    a) who b) whom c) that d) all are possible
17. She's busy .... her room.
    a) cleans b) clean c) cleaning d) to clean
18. Yasser .... to be falling asleep at his desk. Maybe, he is ill.
    a) is appearing b) appears c) was appearing d) will appear
19. I .... to driving on the left now, but it was hard at the beginning.
    a) use b) 'm used c) 'm not used d) used
20. I don't think this careless boy will pass the exam and .... high marks.
    a) gets b) got c) get d) getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees. As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the 'duties' of the old queen when the latter dies.

Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. They play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that ....
  a) its sting is stronger and deadly
  b) it can't live apart from its community
  c) it can live alone
  d) it can't live among trees and flowers

22 The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to ....
  a) look after the young bees b) collect nectar and pollen
  c) kill the worker bees d) lay eggs

23 The life of honeybees can teach us ....
  a) co-operation b) how to live among trees
  c) selfishness d) laziness

24 The word "latter" is the antonym of the word "................".
  a) last b) second
  c) former d) next

25 The synonym of the word "look after" is ....
  a) care about b) turn off
  c) take over d) give off

26 What is the best title for the passage?
  a) How honey is formed b) Honeybees' life
  c) Bees and other insects d) Bees and our ecosystem

27 Bees help the crops to ....
  a) disappear b) grow
  c) decrease d) reproduce

28 When the queen bee dies, ...
  a) the rest stay without a queen
  b) the other bees will be sad and cry
  c) another one takes over
  d) there aren't any more nectar

29 Translate into English:

3

- إن الجدل والخلاف بين أفراد المجتمع يؤديان إلى تدهور جميع مجالات الحياة. أما التفاهم والتعاون فيؤديان حتمًا إلى التنمية والتقدم؛ لذلك لابد من توعية أفراد المجتمع بأهميتهما لمستقبل أفضل.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Everyone of us should have a hobby within his or her means. Otherwise, life loses its charm, and becomes one long labour from beginning to end.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Hosting international sports competitions and conferences is a good way to encourage tourists to visit Egypt."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 6

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. There are four mobile phone .... competing in Egypt at the present time.
   a) lines b) networks c) disciplines d) authorities
2. The company director will have .... candidates for the job by tomorrow.
   a) offered b) tested c) searched d) interviewed
3. The central bank is responsible for .... interest rates in all national banks.
   a) cutting b) setting c) preventing d) destroying
4. Ahmed Helmy's last .... didn't make a great success although many people thought it was funny.
   a) fiction b) romance c) horror d) comedy
5. The economic reform plan has a lot of public .... in the country.
   a) report b) support c) export d) rapport
6. The UN biodiversity plan provided measures to protect endangered .... of plants and animals and protect the ozone layer.
   a) recipients b) recipes c) spices d) species
7. It's very important that parents .... the right school for a child with learning difficulties.
   a) select b) deny c) deploy d) purchase
8. There are animated .... of many of the famous novels so that children can learn about literature.
   a) views b) visions c) versions d) factions
9. You don't need any previous .... to work as a kitchen steward.
   a) experience b) experiment c) expert d) export
10. I always tell my sister that she doesn't have to .... my news to the whole world!
    a) cast b) broadcast c) film d) shoot
11. My boss .... so rude today. He has shouted at all of us.
    a) is being b) was c) is d) will be
12. My sister is on a world tour. By the end of the year, she .... more than 40 countries.
    a) will be visiting b) will have visited
    c) will have been visiting d) is visiting

13. Students .... rubbish in the school grounds, but now they keep the school grounds clean.
   a) were leaving b) leave
   c) used to leave d) didn't use to leave
14. They .... English before they moved to the USA.
   a) had studied b) have studied
   c) study d) were studying
15. Mostafa doesn't take risks when he's driving. He drives ....
   a) care b) careful c) too careful d) carefully
16. She climbed to the top of the monument to see the wonderful view .... she had been told about.
   a) when b) that c) what d) where
17. I've never seen such a .... film in my whole life.
   a) terrify b) terrified c) terrifying d) more terrified
18. When I got home, I .... that somebody had broken into my flat.
   a) discover b) have discovered
   c) had discovered d) discovered
19. I thought there was some coffee in the cupboard, but there's .... there.
   a) none b) some c) any d) many
20. I used to play badminton .... I was younger.
   a) since b) when c) while d) during



Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8



It is evident that, at present, people are spending a considerable amount of time on the Internet, and thus spending less time with real people. I strongly agree that although this use of the Internet has greatly increased the level of available communication, it has also had detrimental effects on the amount and type of social interaction that takes place.

The benefits of the Internet in terms of increased communication are clear, with people connected across the globe. In the past, communication was only possible by phone or mail, which entailed time and expense. It also usually meant just keeping in contact with those people already known to you. With the internet, this has changed dramatically. Email and social networking sites such as Facebook and MSN have created online communities that are global in scale, and they have fostered communication between people and countries that we would not have thought possible in the not-too-distant past.

People, especially the younger generation, spend hours of their time online, chatting and on forums. Although this can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings and does not involve the same skills. It is important that children have and maintain real friendships in order to develop their own interpersonal skills. Not only this, it can also have negative effects on local communities if people are spending most of their time communicating online and not mixing in their neighbourhoods, and possibly lead to feelings of isolation for those individuals who do not have a 'real' person to turn to in times of need.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The internet is a means of communication ....
a) globally b) nationally c) locally d) personally

22 Which one of the following is TRUE?
a) The internet friends are more useful than real friends.
b) Young people avoid spending much time on the internet.
d) The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication.
e) The internet helps us to develop our own interpersonal skills.

23 One word of the following gives the antonym of the word "beneficial": ....
a) harmful b) useful c) helpful d) constructive

24 Spending most of the time online and not mixing with real people may lead to ....
a) success in life b) feeling of isolation
c) avoiding bad people d) saving much money

25 Communication in the past used ....
a) MSN b) the internet
c) the phone and letters d) online means

26 People should use the internet ....
a) excessively b) day and night
c) at work only d) sensibly

27 Our friends on the internet are ....
a) real b) virtual c) effective d) hackers

28 The more we use the internet, ...
a) the less we visit our relatives and friends
b) the more we visit our relatives and friends
c) the more we have true and real friends
d) the less we know about the world

29 Translate into English:

3

- ما زالت الحكومة تحاول توفير المناخ المشجع لرجال الأعمال المصريين والعرب لاستثمار أموالهم فى المشروعات التنموية الكبيرة لخلق فرص عمل وحل بعض المشكلات الاقتصادية.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Reading romantic stories makes us forget about our worries and troubles. They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and thinking. That's why I always prefer to buy novels.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"What do you think the most important scientific discovery or invention of the last 50 years is?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 7

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. Unfortunately, ... libraries don't attract a lot of readers nowadays. Most people read electronic books.
   a) public b) special c) accepted d) awful
2. The government has a plan to stop the .... of live animals to prevent diseases.
   a) security b) computer c) transport d) education
3. The press room was a valuable .... of information for journalists during the championship.
   a) source b) result c) effect d) doubt
4. Many young people are keen on .... movies such as vampire and Zombie stories.
   a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic
5. The bank clerk was accused of selling business .... to competitors and he was dismissed.
   a) secrets b) achievements c) talents d) products
6. Because the salary for this job wasn't ...., I didn't accept the offer.
   a) awful b) horrible c) satisfactory d) unsuitable
7. I often wonder what technological devices future .... will have in addition to the present ones.
   a) inventions b) developments
   c) generations d) discoverers
8. Father says that our old car is becoming very .... as it breaks down more often.
   a) reliable b) trusty c) acceptable d) unreliable
9. Mona and I were chosen for the new jobs .... the same time.
   a) in b) for c) at d) by
10. The new engineers will work at the company's manufacturing .... in 6th October City.
    a) ability b) facility c) asset d) outfit
11. Don't talk to me now. I .... to the radio.
    a) listen b) am listening c) have listened d) listened
12. I'm sure that your English .... by the end of the school year.
    a) will have improved b) will be improving
    c) improves d) has improved

13. He .... walk along the beach every evening before bed.
    a) uses to   b) didn't used to
    c) would   d) all are possible
14. Salah knew many people at the club because he .... there many times.
    a) has been   b) would go   c) was being   d) had been
15. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
    a) There's a fly in your soup, is there?
    b) There's a fly in your soup, isn't it?
    c) There's a fly in your soup, isn't there?
    d) There's a fly in your soup, hasn't it?
16. I did .... I could, which wasn't much.
    a) when   b) who   c) which   d) what
17. Which artist was this portrait painted ....?
    a) for   b) with   c) by   d) from
18. She doesn't mind walking to work. She .... to it.
    a) isn't used   b) is used   c) used   d) uses
19. She's been ill for some time, but she's beginning to feel .... again.
    a) strongly   b) strongest   c) strong   d) more strong
20. Recent events prove the saying that twenty-four hours .... a long time in politics.
    a) is   b) has   c) are   d) have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Today, English is used widely. It has become the most popular language of communication between countries and in many fields of human endeavour. So, it is important that we learn to use English. Otherwise, we will be at a disadvantage.

The only effective way of improving my English is to use it, as often as possible.

In school, the only time when English is used is during English lessons. That certainly is not enough. So wherever possible I speak English with some friends and teachers who will or can speak English with me.

Reading books, magazines and newspapers are good ways of improving my English. On the whole they are grammatically correct. We may speak incorrect English and get away with it. Not so with printed words, they have to be correct. Through reading, I learned how to use correct English in writing and speaking, though at times I still speak the broken English that many of us speak here.

Watching television and listening to the radio are two more ways of improving my English. English as it is spoken by the English, Americans and others is distinctly different.

So I continue to use English, that is, hear, read, speak and write it. Some of my friends only hear and read it. They can hardly speak or write it, but I will not be like them. I will try my best to master it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 According to the passage, neglecting the English language is ....
- a) positive
- b) advantage
- c) strength
- d) drawback

22 As it is a world-wide language, learning English is a/an ....
- a) necessary
- b) option
- c) must
- d) disadvantage

23 .... English is the most effective way to improve it.
- a) Writing
- b) Using
- c) Reading
- d) Listening

24 The writer's only way to speak English is ....
- a) practising it at school with teachers and friends
- b) practising it at home with parents and brothers
- c) practising it at the club with other members
- d) practising it at the shops with foreign customers

25 Books, magazines and newspapers give ....
- a) fluent English
- b) correct pronunciation
- c) correct English
- d) bad English

26 According to the writer's opinion, many students speak ....
- a) fluent English
- b) broken English
- c) British English
- d) good English

27 We can improve our English through ....
- a) reading books and magazines
- b) watching TV and listening to the radio
- c) speaking with others
- d) all of these

28 The expression "get away with" means ....
- a) doing something bad and escape punishment
- b) passing something after doing it well
- c) running out after being punished
- d) doing something bad, but others consider it good

29 Translate into English:

3

- فى نظم التعليم الجديدة أصبح لزاما على المدرسين الإلمام بطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة التى أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من حياة الطلاب حتى فى المرحلة الابتدائية.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Online education is becoming more and more important. However, many experts believe that it shouldn't be an alternative to schools as the main source of education.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"How can education help improve our country?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 8

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The charity is looking for .... families for children who have to travel abroad for heart operations.
   a) guest b) host c) strange d) foreign
2. The secretary leaked the terms of the contract to a news .... and it was a scandal.
   a) consumer b) reporter c) officer d) inspector
3. This documentary was originally .... live last Friday.
   a) investigated b) shot c) broadcast d) taken
4. Time travel exists only in the genre of science .... modern movies.
   a) faction b) fission c) fiction d) fact
5. The young doctor is sometimes criticised for her .... opposition to using animals in experiments.
   a) patriotic b) passionate c) national d) cruel
6. This flat was supposed to be ...., but we used it for many months.
   a) contemporary b) temporary c) permanent d) gradual
7. The waterfall turbines in the High Dam supply Egypt with most of the .... power we use.
   a) electronic b) elective c) selective d) electric
8. Government inspectors will monitor the .... of the new transport project.
   a) progress b) reduction c) abortion d) reproaching
9. I just read the ....; I didn't have time to read the articles.
   a) addresses b) locations c) headlines d) details
10. The book can be read with .... by anyone who wants to understand how computer systems work.
    a) placement b) loss c) prohibit d) profit
11. She .... the soup in the kitchen when the telephone rang.
    a) was tasting b) has been tasting
    c) has tasted d) tastes
12. You need to drive more quickly, or all the food .... by the time we reach the party.
    a) will have eaten b) will be eating
    c) will have been eaten d) is eaten
13. The Nile in Sohag is exactly the .... width as in Luxor.
    a) different b) alike c) similar d) same

14. Sara passed the exam ....
    a) easy b) easily c) easier d) at ease
15. She .... a lot of meals, because she had been so hungry.
    a) cooked b) had cooked c) were cooking d) have cooked
16. As we passed the post office, Ali remembered the place .... he had lost his bag.
    a) which b) that c) when d) where
17. When I came back home yesterday, my children were .... watching TV at midnight.
    a) yet b) since c) still d) ever
18. He can .... see anything without his glasses.
    a) rarely b) hardly c) wrongly d) hard
19. Unluckily, the patient had died before the ambulance .... the hospital.
    a) had reached b) reaches c) reached d) has reached
20. **A:** Would you like to join us? **B:** No, thank you. I'd rather .... here.
    a) stay b) to stay c) staying d) stayed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

It is a disturbing fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. An endangered species is a type of animals that will probably become extinct. There are 3,079 animals and 2,655 plants that are endangered worldwide. Lots of countries have laws to protect endangered animals.

The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of the animal's natural environment and man's greed.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste matter in streams, canals and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modem agricultural methods include using pesticides, which effectively control insects classified as pests, but which also destroy many that are not.

Some animals are endangered because their habitats are being destroyed because of the increase in population, which has meant more buildings, more vehicles, more pollution... and with it the destruction of much of the countryside that provide shelter for wild animals. People are building cities, logging (cutting down trees) and mining in places where animals live. Other animals are endangered because people are hunting and killing them. When a new species starts living in a place, it can take food from and prey on the animals that lived there before.

Some of the endangered animals in the world include the black rhino found in Africa, the orangutan found in the country of Malaysia and the blue whale. Finally, other endangered species examples include the Bengal tiger, giant panda, mountain gorilla, sea lions, and others.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Countries can protect endangered animals by ....
a) building habitats for them
b) punishing people who build houses
c) making laws
d) stopping the immigration of animals

22 The underlined word "many" refers to ....
a) insects other than pests
b) agricultural methods
c) pests only
d) pesticides

23 Shelter is the same meaning as ....
a) someone to attack
b) something to eat
c) sometime to spend
d) somewhere to stay

24 When using pesticides, we kill ....
a) pests only
b) pests and harmful and harmless insects
c) harmful insects
d) none of these

25 "When a new species starts living in a place, it can take food from and prey on the animals that lived there before." This means that ....
a) man is the cause of animal extinction
b) animals are made endangered by the weather
c) animals are made endangered by other animals
d) the increase in population causes danger to animals

26 Man's greed is one of reasons that makes the matter worse. "Greed" means ....
a) man's desire to have things more than their need
b) man's desire to kill animals
c) man's desire to build cities and cut down trees
d) man's desire to mine in places where animals live

27 It has become common practice for factories to dispose of their waste in streams and rivers. This means that factories ....
a) deliver their waste to streams, canals and rivers
b) store their waste in streams and rivers
c) get over their waste in streams, canals and rivers
d) get rid of their waste in streams, canals and rivers

28 The best title to the passage is "................".
a) Endangering animals and man
b) The problem of the endangered animals
c) The problem of the endangering animals
d) Man's greed and other creatures

29 Translate into English:

3

- يفضل السياح الرحلات الصحراوية التى تنظمها شركات السياحة، وذلك بسبب رغبتهم فى الاسترخاء فى جو يسوده الهدوء والسكينة، الأمر الذى من شأنه أن يشجع السياحة فى مصر.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- The Egyptian Ministry of Health was one of the first authorities in Africa to provide the citizens with COVID-19 vaccine. It was also offered free of charge.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- To your friend telling her about the new development of laws concerning women's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email address is: kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email address is: jessy007@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 9

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The hotels in Sharm El Sheikh have many .... including a large indoor pool, jacuzzi and sauna.
   a) fabrics b) accessories c) abilities d) facilities
2. A/An .... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. or part of one, and who decides what should be included.
   a) editor b) reader c) investigator d) inventor
3. It is important to have a specific .... whether long-term or short-term.
   a) amount b) fiction c) training d) goal
4. A search .... is a computer program that is used to look for information on the Internet.
   a) engine b) power c) motor d) page
5. My teaching style is similar .... that of most other teachers in our school.
   a) at b) of c) in d) to
6. Family matters and work times are two main factors which limit women's .... of job choices.
   a) series b) serial c) range d) sequence
7. An important .... for any government is to find a way of providing affordable housing.
   a) change b) challenge c) faction d) fiction
8. There is no evidence to .... the young man to the murder.
   a) connect b) tie c) contact d) communicate
9. The film director says that they have to shoot the last .... before sunset.
   a) movie b) landform c) scenery d) scene
10. While watching the movie, I was .... back to the time of the Second World War.
    a) transmitted b) transported c) touched d) saddened
11. How is your German? .... better nowadays?
    a) Will it get b) Does it get c) Is it getting d) has it got
12. We .... the wheels before you come back from the shop.
    a) will be replacing b) will have replaced
    c) will be replaced d) have replaced
13. This yoghurt is .... as good as the one I bought yesterday.
    a) quite b) much c) far d) almost

14. We were driving along the road when we saw a car which .... down, so we stopped to help.
 a) had broken b) broke c) has broken d) was breaking
15. You do have sugar in your coffee, ... you?
 a) haven't b) aren't c) isn't d) don't
16. The day .... I started school was October 1.
 a) where b) which c) when d) in which
17. Nobody .... the cause of earthquakes.
 a) know b) knows c) have known d) was known
18. **A:** Would you mind closing the door, please? **B:** .... It's so cold.
 a) Yes, of course. b) Sure. c) Not at all. d) Yes, I do.
19. Two million feddans will have .... in the desert.
 a) reclaim b) reclaimed c) to reclaim d) to be reclaimed
20. ...., Ahmed got the best mark in class although he didn't study hard.
 a) Surprisingly b) Surprised c) To surprise d) Surprising

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The environment is everything that surrounds us: plants, animals, buildings, country, air and water. Ecology is the science of how living creatures and plants exist together and depend on each other and on the local environment. Where an environment is undisturbed, the ecology of an area is in balance, but if a creature is exterminated or an alien species introduced, then the ecology of the district will be upset. In other words, the balance of nature will be disturbed.

One of the main causes of the earth's troubles is that the world is overpopulated and this overpopulation is growing at an ever-increasing rate. At the same time, the earth is unable to provide enough food since the fertility of some of our richest soils has been lost and vast areas that were once fertile lands have turned into barren deserts. And the trouble with deserts is that they tend to creep outwards on to the fertile soils.

Man is a part of the environment and he has done more to upset the ecology during his short span on earth than any other living creature. He has done this by his ignorance, his greed, his thoughtless, his foolishness and his wastefulness. Since man has done so much damage, it is up to him to try to put matters right - if it is not already too late. If there is to be any remedy for our ills, that remedy ultimately lies in the hands of the young generations, and the sooner they start doing something about it, the better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. World population is threatened with starvation because ....
    - a) all our natural resources have run out with no hope of replacing them
    - b) vast areas of our fertile lands have turned into barren deserts
    - c) the deserts creep inwards on to the fertile areas
    - d) overpopulation is increasing and the rich soil is rising
22. Ecology is a science which studies ....
    - a) man's social activities
    - b) living creatures and the environment
    - c) plants and farming
    - d) the habitats of animals
23. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
    - a) The young.
    - b) The ill.
    - c) Different creatures.
    - d) The soils.
24. The writer of the passage that man disturbed the environmental balance through ....
    - a) his moral values
    - b) his culture
    - c) his good behaviour
    - d) his bad qualities
25. The more fertile the soil is, the ....
    - a) less food we have
    - b) more food we have
    - c) fewer people live on earth
    - d) more barren deserts there are
26. What made man upset the ecology?
    - a) His ignorance.
    - b) His greed.
    - c) His thoughtless, foolishness and wastefulness
    - d) All of the above.
27. The word "fertile" is antonymous to the word "................".
    - a) rich
    - b) productive
    - c) barren
    - d) fruitful
28. The most suitable title for the passage is "................".
    - a) Man's greed is the cause of upsetting the ecology
    - b) Ecology (in balance or upset)
    - c) It's too late to balance the ecology
    - d) Overpopulation and the earth's troubles

29 Translate into English:

3

- أثبتت التجربة العملية أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين؛ فهو نعمة إذا استخدم فى الخير وما ينفع الناس، ونقمة إذا استخدم فى الشر والدمار.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Recently we have been suffering from ill morals. People feel upset when they hear bad words and insults said in the street.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Solving the problems on earth is more important than exploring space. Do you agree? Why? Why not?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 10

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. A working woman is .... to cope with the demands of her work and her family.
   a) struggling   b) relaxing   c) relieving   d) dispensing
2. There's been some .... development in the economic situation in Egypt.
   a) valueless   b) harmful   c) significant   d) trivial
3. The school uses interactive displays to .... children to read and write for pleasure.
   a) aspire   b) inspire   c) respire   d) expire
4. The team's performance has made a/an .... improvement with the new coach and players.
   a) imaginary   b) measurable   c) valueless   d) unattended
5. Scientists could find ways to .... the power of the sea waves to create electricity.
   a) neglect   b) approach   c) waste   d) harness
6. Diplomacy is the most .... way to resolve any kind of dispute.
   a) sensitive   b) sensible   c) senseless   d) sensual
7. The couple behind us kept .... everyone by talking during the movie.
   a) distracting   b) districting   c) extracting   d) expecting
8. The company announced that the bridge project was completed ahead of ....
   a) way   b) step   c) schedule   d) silence
9. I applied .... several jobs and was offered one.
   a) at   b) about   c) for   d) in
10. The atmosphere in the room was absolutely .... because of the disagreement of the two economic delegations.
    a) electric   b) electronic   c) electrical   d) electrified
11. Why .... to my party tomorrow? Don't you like me anymore?
    a) have you come   b) will you come
    c) don't you come   d) aren't you coming
12. **A:** I'll meet you at four o'clock. **B:** At four? I'm afraid, I .... English.
    a) will be teaching   b) will have taught
    c) will have been taught   d) will teach
13. William Shakespeare is .... more famous than Charles Dickens.
    a) slightly   b) many   c) enough   d) exactly
14. You enjoyed the movie because you .... the book.
    a) were reading   b) have read   c) reads   d) had read
15. Rana has learnt to paint .... lately.
    a) well   b) good   c) best   d) the best
16. He wanted to come at 2 a.m., ... didn't suit me at all.
    a) when   b) that   c) which   d) at which



17 **A:** Has that letter been typed yet? **B:** No, but .... now.

a) it is typed b) it is been typed
c) it is being typed d) it is typing

18 You'd surely never go there again, ...?

a) had you b) would you c) do you d) didn't you

19 I'm so thirsty. I'll buy a big bottle of water .... I get home.

a) before b) as soon as c) until d) when

20 It's careless of Hassan .... the same mistakes again and again.

a) making b) makes c) to make d) that he make

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Our culture is the system we use to build our identity. All living creatures are part of a culture. Even animals have a culture! So, what is culture? It's the way we behave in a group. It begins with each individual family. Within our families, we do things to build relationships with each other. This can include routines for doing things. It also includes traditions. Traditions are activities that are repeated on a regular basis. Culture is not limited to individual family groups. The real strength of culture is in larger community groups. These larger groups are called societies.

Every society makes rules for itself. It decides how people should act in different situations. Some of these rules are written down. Some are just things that are automatically expected of all members of that society. Often, cultures can be identified by what the people believe. Cultures are also known by what they choose to include in their art. Sometimes a society forms around people who speak the same language.

Cultures may also be known for their customs, including the foods they make and the things they do. Our cultures help us understand who we are and what we believe. There are very strong emotions connecting us to our own society. Two different cultures may disagree on beliefs, especially if they both feel strongly about them. When that happens, war is a common result. People are learning better ways to communicate with each other. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Cultural rules made by a society are ....

a) all written down b) divided between written and expected
c) not at all written down d) made by old people

22 The writer suggests that culture starts with ....

a) an individual b) a society c) a tribe d) a family

23 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....

a) cultures b) rules c) beliefs d) feelings

24 According to the passage, culture can be identified by ....

a) what people believe b) what people do
c) what people draw d) what people believe and do

25 What role does culture play inside a family?
a) It helps build relationships.
b) It keeps the traditions.
c) It defends people's language.
d) It develops art.

26 Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
a) The culture in our community
b) Culture and life
c) Culture and language
d) Culture and customs

27 Culture is known by ....
a) what the people believe
b) the customs we have
c) the choices of art the society has
d) all of these

28 The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures. The word "appreciate" here means ....
a) to realise
b) to welcome
c) to go up in price
d) to be grateful for

29 Translate into English: 3

- كان شبابنا يسافر للخارج لاكتساب الخبرة والمعرفة والمعلومات التى تفيدهم فى مستقبلهم، لكنهم الآن يتطلعون للهجرة بسبب المشكلات التى يواجهونها.

....
....
....

30 Translate into Arabic: 3

- Many people misunderstand the true meaning of freedom. Freedom doesn't mean that we have the right to do just as we like as we don't live in this world alone.

....
....
....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: 6

"Due to the video games and social media, young people have left many useful hobbies. Do you agree?"

....
....
....
....
....

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١/٢٠٦٣٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤

